AN 14456.0.9

ACCOUNT

OFTHE

PRESENT STATE

OF THE

NORTHERN ASIA,

Relating to the NATURAL HISTORY of

Grand Tatary and Siberia:

ANDTHE

Manners, Customs, Trade, Laws, Religion and Polity of the different People inhabiting the same.

Together with

Some OBSERVATIONS concerning China, India, Persia, Arabia, Turky, and Great Russia.

THE WHOLE

Compiled out of the NOTES belonging to the foregoing HISTORY, and digested into Method by the TRANSLATOR.

VOL. II.

LONDON:

Printed for J. and J. KNAPTON, J. DARBY, A. BET-TESWORTH, F. FATRAM, J. OSBORNAND T. LONG-MAN, J. PEMBERTON, C. RIVINGTON, F. CLAY, J. BATLEY, and A. WARD. M.DCC, XXIX.



A

Obj

Rive



AN

ACCOUNT

OFTHE

PRESENT STATE

OFTHE

NORTHERN ASIA.

PART I.

CHAP. I.

Observations upon Grand Tatary, and the Tatars in general.

SECT. I.

Of the Extent, Nature of the Soil and Air of Grand Tatary.

RAND Tatary in its present State Extent. extends from the 75th as far as the 150th Degree of Longitude, reckoning from the Eastern Bank of the River Wolga, to the Shores of the Sea of Jaan, North of Corea, which makes no less

than a Length of 750 German Leagues; its Breadth is pretty unequal: for the it may be reckon'd almost from the 38th to the 52d Degree of Latitude, yet it is much more in some Places, and less in others: However we may venture to allow 200 German Leagues for it, without running the Risk of being deceiv'd.

Bounds!

A great Branch of Mount Caucasus, which begins at the Eastern Bank of the Wolga, about the 52d Degree of Latitude, and runs from thence almost directly East, as far as the Eastern Ocean, separates Grand Tatary on the North side from the vast Kingdom of Siberia: The Eastern Sea bounds it on the East, and the Caspian Sea with Russia makes its Frontiers on the West.

The Author of these Remarks omits the South Bounds of Tatary, possibly in doubt whether to reckon for such the two Bucharias or Persia and the Indies. But the the Bucha rias are possessed by the Tatars, I see no reason why they should be included under the Nam of Tatary, any more than China or Chowarazm which is also subject to them. For the same reason also, I think Turkestan should still b consider'd as a distinct Kingdom, tho it is n longer in the Possession of the People from whom it had the Name. It is indeed like the rest, a Part of the Dominions of the Tatars but not a Part of Tatary, which Name should be confin'd properly to the Country which the originally came from; fo that by Grand Ta tary, I would have no more understood, than Name to express in general the Countries sub ject to the Tatars, without confounding then together.

Grand Tatary, no doubt, makes a confiderable Part of the Country, which, according to the Orientals, fell to Japher's Share, and

and fon of

F

fi

of

bu

th

fo

m

Sp

tha

La

of

Ver

ters

age

We

havi

renc

abou

great

ver

Pekin

that

on, t

neare

Paces

Germ

Count

Th

its

be

Deme

ay

1t,

ich

out

om

ern

orth The

the

s on

the

oub

rias.

cha

afor

am

azm

fam

11 b

is n

fron

e th

atars 10ul

the

d Ta

han

fub

then

conli

rdin

an

which

German League:

which Abulgasi Chan calls Kuttup Shamach; a Kuttup Name so disfigur'd, as most of his Terms are, Shamach, that I can make nothing of it. The French Editor will have it to contain all the Lahds situate to the North and North West of the Caspian Sea, and North East of the Indies, comprehending at present China, Japan, Grand Tatary, Siberia, and its Dependances, Russia, Poland, Sweden and Norway.

As all this great Country is fituate in the Charming finest Climate in the Universe, it is every where Country, of an extraordinary Goodness and Fertility; fertil, but but it has this Misfortune, that as it is perhaps water in the highest of all the habitable Earth, it is many found in feveral Parts to want Water, tho al-Parts: most all the great Rivers of Asia have their Springs in the Mountains of this Country, fo that it is not habitable but near the Rivers and Lakes: For an instance of the great Elevation of this Country, you need only fee Father Verbiest thereon, who affirms in one of his Letters, that the late Emperor of China, in a Voyage which he made in the Year 1683, in the Western Part of the Country of the Mungals; having had the Curiofity to know the Difference between the Height of a certain Place, about eighty Leagues to the North of the The Land great Wall towards the Spring of the Ri-greatly ever Karga Muran, and the Ground about levated. Pekin, gave him Orders to measure it, and that he found, after a very exact Examination, that Place was higher than the Sea-Coast nearest the City of Pekin by 3000 geometrical Paces, which makes about three Quarters of a

This great Rising is the Cause that this Cause of Country appears to be very cold, in comparition of others which are under the same Lati-ceeding Cold.

A 3-

tude

Ch.

fixt

tim

Sea

Tri

to t

ter I

con

the

To

all,

the

war

hav

Chi

that

of

Pla

that

fifts

of a

of t

of

Paf

heig

Wa

De

cay

for

cho

ton

the

can

imi

(

tude with it; and Persons of Credit who have travell'd in it have assured me, that even in the Heat of Summer the North Wind is so piercing, that one had need to cover one's self in the Night to avoid being incommoded by it, because in the Month of August there is very often Ice the thickness of a Crown Piece, and sometimes of two, in a Night's time, which Father Verbiest would in some measure attribute to the Salt Petre; of which he affirms, the Land of this Country is so full, that there is found every where in Summer, by digging four or five Foot into the Ground, Clods of Earth quite congeal'd, and even intire Heaps of Ice.

and of its being so full of Stepps, or Desarts.

Goby. Shamo.

This fame extraordinary Elevation is also the Reason why so many Defarts are found within the Bounds of Grand Tatary. these Defarts, to which the Russians have given the Name of Stepp, are not altogether fo frightful as we fanfy them; for fet aside the grand Defarts of Goby, heretofore called Shamo, and some other small fandy Defarts, which are very few; all the other Defarts or Stepp, which are found in this Country, produce Grass in abundance, as high as one's Middle, so that they want only Water to make them the most fruitful Plains in the World. Nevertheless so much of this vast Country as is supply'd with Water, is sufficient for the Support of four times the Number of the present Inhabitants of Grand Tatary, if it was well cultivated and look'd after: But there are none besides the Mobammedan Tatars who till their Lands, and they till no more than just what is necessary to support them; for the Callmaks and the greater Part of the Mungals have not at all the Use of Agriculture, subsisting intirely upon their Cattle: This is the reason why they can have no

rt I.

nave

the

ing,

the

be-

of-

and

nich

oute

the

e is

our

irth

ce.

alfo

und

But

gi-

her

the

mo,

are

ich

1 a-

ney

ait-

ich

er,

the

ind

c'd

m-

ley

ip-

ter

of

at-

no ixt fixt Habitation, being obliged from time to time to change their Quarters according as the Seasons of the Year change. Every Orda or Tribe has a particular Canton which belongs to them, where they go in the Summer and inhabit the Northern Plains, and in the Winter those which lie to the South.

In the Southern Part of Grand Tatary; which No Towns contains the Countries of Turkestan, Chowarazm, except to-the Bucharias, and Tangut, there are found wards China and Towns; but in all the rest there are none at the Eastern all, except four or five towards the Coast of Ocean. the Eastern Ocean, and some few others towards China, which the Mungals of Nichieu have built since they have been in Possession of China.

Grand Tatary has also this Peculiar to it, No Forests that it does not produce a Wood of tall Trees in Grand of any kind whatsoever, except in some few Places towards the Frontiers. All the Wood that is found in the Heart of the Country consists in Shrubs, which never exceed the Height of a Pike, and those are very rare.

All the fandy Grounds of Grand Tatary are Sandy of the same Nature with those in the Province Grounds of Kuigan in Chowarazm, producing excellent Pasture. Pasture, seeing the Grass would grow to the height of a Man, if it was not for want of Water in many Parts; but on Account of that Defect; most of the Grass of those Plains decays presently at the Root, and becomes good for nothing. And as that wither'd Grass quite choaks up the Young, the Tatars are accustom'd at the beginning of Spring to set fire to the old Herbage, which extends as far as it can find Fuel, and sometimes in Grand Tatary spreads above a hundred Leagues round, and immediately after the new Grass shoots up e-

very where with fuch Force, that in less than fifteen days it reaches the height of a Span; which shews the great Fertility of the Soil of that great Country.

II.

TATARS, whence descended.

Tatars de-[cended from Turks.

A LL the Tatars pretend to be descended from Turk, the eldest Son of Japhet; and as they suppose that Japhet before his Death appointed him to be fovereign Head of his Family, which belong'd to him in fome measure in right of Eldest, they look upon themselves to be of a more noble Extraction than the neighbouring People, who are believed to be descended from the other Sons of

of Turks before Zingis Chan.

Name Turk ftill retained among themselves.

known by Japhet. At least 'tis certain, that they have the Name always borne the Name of Turks, until Zingis Chan having reduc'd all the Tribes of that Nation under his Obedience, the Name of Turks has by degrees been lost with regard to their Neighbours, who from thenceforth have call'd them by no other Name than that of Tatars, tho not with regard to themselves, seeing they always retain'd among them that of Turks, pretending also that no Nation besides themselves has a Right to bear that Name.

It is observable that in the Book of the Sharif al Idris, corruptly called the Nubian Geographer, there is no mention made either of the Moguls or Tatars, but all that Country which goes at present by the Name of the Eastern and Western Tatary, are made to be peopled by different Nations of Turks: And this is the more remarkable, because that Author wrote but a

little

Ch

littl

117

elfe

tak Tat ten

tha

fou

the

of

ly t

the

fabi

the

defe

ten

and

pof

us b

Stra

whi

Nat

that

if I

ther

owe

take

kno

verf

the

the

time

of t

And

little before the Time of Zingis Chan, viz. about 1170. However we hear of Tatars elsewhere.]

Tis from Tatar Chan, mention'd p. 7, and Named elsewhere, that the Tribe of the Tatars has from Tataken its Name, and not from a River called and not Tata, as the greatest part of Historians pre-from a tend, because we are now very well convinced River. that there is not a River of that Name to be found in all the North of Asia.

['Tis very probable the Tribe of Tatars took their Name from some of their Chiefs, as most of the rest did; but we cannot say particularly that it was from Tatar Chan, because all the History of the Original of the Tatars being sabulous, there is room to doubt whether ever there was such a Prince of that Nation as they describe him; especially at the time he is pre-

tended to have reigned.]

r I.

han

an;

l of

1-01

1

40)

ded

et;

Of

me

noc

cti-

be-

of

ive

ngis Va-

rks

eir

ľd

rs,

ley

re-

ves

ba-

eo-

ch

nd

if-

re

tle

The Country which the Tribe of the Tatars and the divers Branches of it have heretofore possessed, is precisely that known at present to us by the Name of the Country of the Mungals.

'Tis from the Tribe of the Tatars that How the Strangers have borrow'd the Name of Tatars, Name of which they give at present to all the Turkish Tatars To say positively on what Occasion prevail. that happen'd is an Impossibility; nevertheless, if I may be permitted to give my Conjectures thereupon, it feems very likely to me that we owe this Name, in the Extent it is at present taken, to the Nestorian Missioners, whom we know for certain to have extended their Conversions in the ninth and tenth Ages very far on the fide of Tangut, and the other Provinces to the East of that Kingdom, which were at that time possessed by divers Branches of the Tribe of the Tatars, and by the Allies of that Tribe. And as those Gentlemen undertook to give the

World

World a great Notion of the Advantage which would accrue to Christianity by their Labours on that Occasion, they did not fail to magnify the Power of those Tatar Princes at whose Courts they had Access, largely attributing to them Empires, Titles, and Riches, which existed no where but in their own Imaginations. But they have not taken care to inform us, that the Moguls, to whom they had not Access, had Princes at least as powerful as those of the Tatars; tho it may be in truth they had no certain Knowledge of that fo confiderable Branch of the Turkish Nation, which inhabiting at that Juncture to the North of the Tribe of the Tatars, might be look'd upon by them, fo far as they knew of them, as a favage and barbarous

People. Be that as it will, in all Appearance, the World being prepossessed by the Infinuations of those good Missionaries, by degrees fell into the Custom of giving the Name of Tatars to all the People inhabiting the North of Asia, and that this Custom came to be establish'd from the time of the Invasion of Zingis Chan in the Southern Afia; for when it was known that the Prince of the Mogult was at the same time Sovereign of the Tatars, 'twas no longer doubted but that all the People of those Quarters were Tatars: and without inquiring farther into the Difference between those two Names, they chose rather to retain that of the Tatars already known to them, than that of the Moguls of which they had heard no mention before, and which they suppos'd for that reason to have a less extensive Signification. At least it is certain, that the Chin-se, who don't trouble themselves about what passes among their Neighbours, are accustom'd to give the Name

peara prob Trib and the 9 like ! parti

Ch.

of s

only

Bor

with

rabl

with

nera

their

bein

best

ther

the f

reaf

ther Mog

Prov

and must

Kno

then

when

Miff

blish ticks,

pure

those

sians,

quiry

ed b

the S

[

tI.

ige

eir

to

at

ou-

ich

ns.

us,

eis,

he

er-

ch hat

Ta-

as ous

he

of

nto to

nd

m

he he

ne

ot-

ers

in-

es,

ars 10-

e-

on

aft

ole

eir

ne of

of Tatars to all the Turkish Nation in general. only because that Tribe which dwelt upon their Borders is the only one they were acquainted with, and with which they had often confide-

rable Disputes. [The aforesaid reason may pass well enough Another

with regard to Strangers giving them the ge-Reason. neral Name of Tatars, but not with regard to their Neighbours, the Chinese excepted, who being nearest them might give their Name as best known to them indifferently to all the other Turkish Tribes, whom they consider'd as the fame People with the Tatars: But the fame

reason will not hold with regard to People farther off, for then by that Rule the Name of

Moguls should be better known to the Southern Provinces of Afia, as being nearer to them, and on this fide the great fandy Defart, which

must in a great Measure have kept them from a Knowledge of the Tatars, if they had not made themselves famous some other way. Besides,

where is the Probability that the Nestorian Missioners should have Credit enough to establish their Name among the rest of the Asia-

ticks, or that these latter should be beholden purely to them for their first Knowledge of

those People? The reason therefore in all Appearance should be fought for elsewhere. probable, that till the time of Zingis Chan the

Tribe of the Tatars was the most considerable and best known of all the Eastern Branches of

the Turkish Nation, on account of their warlike Exploits, to the rest of the Asiaticks, and in

particular to those West of India, as the Persians, &c. who are chiefly concern'd in this En-

quiry; and that the Name of Moguls prevailed but so long as their Dominion lasted over

the Southern Provinces of Asia, which ending,

Ch.

the I

Bran

parta

medi

Bran

are,

Buck

Riv

Nor We

bod

Eaf

part

the

Cal

the

of t

Kir

kir.

tail

to

and

of

pia

I.

preh and the

T

the Name of Tatars took Place again. And this Conjecture is supported not only by the preceding History, in which we find the Tatar after many Struggles prevailing over the Moguls, and the very Name as well as the Empire of the last utterly destroy'd under Siuntz Chantill their issuing forth from Irgana-kon; but also by the Arabian and Persian Histories, which often speak of the Tatars, but never mention the Moguls before Zingis Chan.]

SECT. III.

Of the several Branches of the TATARS, particularly so called.

Moguls
and Tatars
divided into three
Nations.

HE[Posterity of the Moguls and] Tatars posfess all the North of Asia, and are divided at present into three different Nations, viz. 1, Tatars, particularly fo called, who are Mohammedans and inhabit the West about the Caspian Sea; 2. The Callmaks, who possess the middle; 3. The Mungals, who dwell in the East towards the Oriental Ocean: For as to the other Pagan People who are disperfed throughout Siberia and along the Shores of the Icy Sea, tho without doubt they are descended from the Tatars, they are not consider'd, at present, as making a Part of them, but as favage People: With regard to whom it may be faid, they do not differ among themselves, but are all of a Kind; and if any are found more civiliz'd towards the Frontiers of the Callmaks and Mungals, they should be consider'd rather as Branches newly separated from those two Nations, than as making any Part of the antient Inhabitants of Siberia.

The

art I

And

the

atan

Mo.

npir

ban, talfo hich

rtion

5

pof-

ded

. 1

Mo-

the

Tels

in

as er-

res

are

TOT

of to

ng

ny

ers

be

ed 1y

16

The Tatars, particularly so called, all profess Tatars, the Mohammedan Worship; tho there are some properly so Branches of them whose Religion seems to subdivided partake much more of Paganism than Moham-into 12 medism. They are subdivided again into divers Branches, Branches, of which the most considerable are,

1. The Usbeck Tatars, who inhabit Great I. Usbeck Bucharia. Tatars.

2. The Tatars of Chiva, who are usually com-2. Tatars prehended under the Name of Usbeck Tatars, of Chiva. and inhabit the Country of Chowarazm about the Mouths of the Rivers Amu and Khesell.

3. The Cara Kallpakks, who dwell along the 3. Cara River Sirr to the East of the Caspian Sea, and Kallpakks. North of the Tatars of Chiva, possessing the West part of Turkestan.

4. The Casatsha Orda, which have their A-4. Catas-bode about the River Yemba, to the North ha Orda, East of the Caspian Sea, and possess the East part of Turkestan.

5. The Tatars of Nagai, who dwell betwixt 5. Tatars the Rivers Wolga and Jaic to the North of the of Nagai. Caspian Sea.

6. The Bashkir Tatars, who inhabit towards 6. Bashthe Foot of the Mountains of Eagles, to the East kir Tatars. of the River Wolga.

7. The Tatars of Uffa, who live in the 7. Uffa, Kingdom of Casan, to the North of the Bash-kirs, between the River Wolga and the Mountains of Eagles.

8. The Circassians, who inhabit the Country 8. Circasto the West of the Mouth of the River Wolga, sians. and the North West of the Caspian Sea.

9. The Daghestan Tatars, who lie to the South 9. Daghestof the Circassians, and to the West of the Castans.

Ch.

and

Prin

Prin

thof

and

Prin ng

s th

his]

the

the

Cha

cien

Titl

reig

grea

reig

Ho

be,

cont

ong

Nev

folu

that

near

the

Do

ver of t ther

10. Of Kouban.

10. The Kuban Tatars, who extend themfelves along the Banks of the River Kuban, between the Palus Meotis and the Black Sea, at the Foot of the Mountains of Caucasus.

11. Crim Tatars.

11. The Crim Tatars, who possess the Peninfula of Crimea, and the Northern Shores of the Palus Meotis and the Black Sea, between the Rivers Don and Borystbenes.

12. Of Budziach.

12. The Tatars of Budziack, who inhabit between the Rivers Borystbenes and the Danube, to the West of the Black Sea.

All the Tatars re-

All these Mobammedan Tatars are usually of a middle fize, but very strong; they have semble one very swarthy Complexions, their Eyes large, black and lively, their Faces very broad and flat, with a great hawked Nose; insomuch that they may be eafily diftinguished by their Features from the Callmaks and the Mungals.

Differ in Habits.

Their Habits differ according to the different Countries they posses; for those who dwell upon the Borders of Persia and the Indies imitate those Nations in their Way of Dress. Others who inhabit towards the Borders of Russia go clothed much like the Russians: and to conclude, those amongst them who border on the Turks, conform much to that Peoples Manner of Dress.

Live by Robbing.

It may be faid in general of all the Mobammedan Tatars, that they live purely by robbing and preying on their Neighbours, as well in Peace as in War, wherein they differ much

Callmaks from the Callmaks and Mungals; who, tho and Mun-Pagans, live quietly on the Produce of their gals live Flocks, and do no harm to any one except they peaceably. first do harm to them.

SECT.

rt I.

be-

, at

Pen-

reen

abit

ube,

ally

ave

ge,

and

uch

neir

ls.

ffe-

ho

In-

ess.

of

nd

ler

les

m-

ng

in

ch

10

ir

ey

Γ.

SECT. IV.

The Government of the TATARS.

HE word Chan is in use only among the Tule of Tatars, as well Mohammedans as Pagans, Chan. and fignifies properly a Lord, or reigning Prince: They give this Name indifferently to Princes who reign over vast Provinces, and to hose who possess a small Extent of Country, and also to those who are tributary to other Princes. Thus the Emperor of China, as beng of Tatar Extraction, is called Chan, just is the Chan of the Calcha Mungals, who is under his Protection, and divers other petty Chans of he Mungals are, inhabiting near the Springs of he River Jenisea, who are tributary to the Chan of the Calcha Mungals. And it is sufficient amongst the Tatars, in order to bear this Title of Honour, to be acknowledged the Given to reigning Prince of some certain State, be it none but great or small; , but excepting the Prince ing Prince. reigning, 'tis not permitted any Prince of his House, how powerful and rich soever he may be, to take the Title of Chan; they must be content with the Title of Sultan, which be-Princes of ongs to the Princes of the Family of the Chan. the Blood Nevertheless as the Right of Force reigns ab-called Sulfolutely with this People, one fees very often that a Chan is deposed and put to Death by his hearest Relations, without any one looking on the new Chan as an Usurper; wherein the Doctrine of absolute Predestination (which every one knows to be the favourite Doctrine of the greatest part of the Mobammedans) stands them in great stead; and 'tis for this reason,

Ch

as P

of t

the :

nion

at th

Char

a ne

elde

with

the

he

ail t

ess

foun

when

ng t

But

nong

alls

Princ

ity :

Dcca

ll t

Veve

nong

ars.

Ti

he C

amm

f Zu

ie C

end

y Ar ban,

eltan.

VO

W

that these sorts of Violences are observed to happen much oftner among the Mobammedan Tatars than the Callmaks and Mungals which are Pagans. From what has been faid it appears evident enough, that the Distinction which some Authors have been pleased to make between the Title of Chaan and that of Chan, (pretending that the former imports a great

between Chaan

Distinction

and Chan. Superiority over the latter) is nothing but fancy; it being at present no longer a Doubt (at least among those who have any Knowledge of the Customs of these People) that the Tatars know not any other Title of Sovereignty or

Lordship than that of Chan.

All the Oriental Authors take no-

The Annotator probably is mistaken here, fince the Distinction between Chaan and Chan is mention'd by all the Authors we know of. tice of it. who have given an Account of the Affairs of the Tatars from the Oriental Historians. And M.

Pag. 380. de la Croix, in his History of Gengbiz Chan, not only affures us, that great Emperor, when he named Octai for his Successor, declar'd him Chan of Chans by the Title of Chaan, which he gave him, and that the Successors of Ostai retain'd that Title, but delivers this Alteration as one of the Laws of Zingis Chan, in which it is forbidden to give his Successor any Title but that of Chaan with two a's. This Circumstance would put the Question beyond dispute, had M. de la Croix cited Fadlallab or any credible Historian for his Authority; for nothing can be concluded against this Distinction from the Silence of an Author, especially one who declares himself a Stranger to the History of the Successors of Zingis Chan in the Empire of the Moguls, after Coplay.]

Idem. Pag. 81.

Among

t L

to

dan

nich ap-

ban,

or

ere,

ban

of,

s of

M.

not hen

nim

n he

re-

tion

n it

but

ınce

had

ible

can

the de-

of

of

ong

Among the Tatars, as well Mohammedan The Elecas Pagans, when the Chan dies, all the Princes tion of a of the reigning Family, and all the Heads of Chan. the feveral Tribes which are under the Dominion of that House, meet at an appointed time ake at the Place of usual Residence of the deceased chan, where they proceed to the Election of reat a new one; examining only who may be the Falls alledeft among the Princes of the reigning House, the eldest without having any regard to the Seniority of of the eldest the divers Branches which compose it, or to reigning the Children of the deceased; and they never House. ail to elect him who appears to be oldest, unes some extraordinary personal Defect be found in him.

What I have observ'd, is to be understood, when Affairs are in a fettled State, and accordng to the antient Customs of that Nation: But as Order is a thing rarely to be found anong the greater Part of the Tatars, it often Force of alls out, that the most powerful among the fide that Princes of the reigning House usurp that Dig- order. ity from the lawful Successor; and on those Occasions, they do not fail putting to death ll those who dare oppose the Usurper: Vevertheless this Case happens seldomer ahong the Pagan than the Mobammedan Ta-

ars. 'Tis worth observing in this Place, that all All the ne Chans who reign at present over the Mo. Chans of ammedan Tatars are sprung from the Posterity the Mof Zuzi Chan, eldest Son of Zingis Chan; for dan Tale Chans of the Country of Chowarazm de- tars sprung end from Sheybani Chan, Son of Zuzi Chan, from Zu-Arab Shah, paternal Uncle of Abulgair 2i Chan. ban, Grandfather to the aforesaid Shabacht ultan.

The Chans of Great Bucharia, and Country of Balk, are descended of Togai Timur, youngest Son of Zuzi Chan, by his Grandson

of

of

rig

fre

Br

to

the

and wh

Ar

cor Gra

Mi

cult

amo

Boo

in ti

yet

a o

mus

refer

Cou

must

here hat

Tith

nust

ther

hree

atar Relat

ecure

nent, er o

Cu

A

The Chans of Turkestan and Tashkant are likewise sprung from Togai Timur, youngest Son of Zuzi Chan, by Dsanish Sultan; and

The Chans of Crimea, descend from Hagi Geray Chan, of the Posterity of the fame Togai Timur, youngest Son of Zuzi Chan.

[De la Croix supposes the Posterity of Zingis Chan, are preserv'd only in the Chans of the lesser Tatary, or Crim, and in the Branch of the Uzbek Chans, who reign in Ma

wara'lnabr.]

Abai.

Title of Chan, why found among the Governors of Sultan Mohammed.

As our Author gives the Title of Chan to feveral of the Generals and Governors who ferv'd Sultan Mohammed Chowarazm Shah in Great Bucharia; it must be observ'd, that the greatest Part of them were actually the Head of some petty Turkish Tribes settled in Turki stan and Great Bucharia, to whom Sultan Me hammed was willing to leave the empty Title of Chan which they bore before, whilst he wa in Possession of their little States.

[He gave * Inalzick the Title of Chan which he had not before, calling him Gagi

Chan.

Sultan, Title given to the ela Chan.

Among the Mobammedan Tatars, the Tit of Sultan is appropriated to the eldest Son of the dest son of Chan; and the Title of Sultan is also give to the other Sons of the Chan in speaking t themselves, yet it is not given to them who one speaks of them to a third Person, is done, speaking of the eldest Son of the Chan.

* Vol. I. P. 33.

L

n-

er,

on

are

eft

om

the

uzi

ngis

the

nch

Ma

2 to

who b in

the

eads

urke

Mo

Title

e wa

Chan

Gagi

Tit

of th

give

ing !

Who

n,

Th

The Brothers of the Chan also bear the Title Also the of Sultan, just like the Sons of the Chan; but Brothers. of the Children of a Sultan, only the eldest has right to be called Sultan, and that Title paffes from eldest Son, to eldest Son, so long as the Branch remains.

The Tatars pay the Tithe of all their Effects Tatars pay to their Chans, and this Tithe extends among their the Mobammedan Tatars, not only to the Cattle Chans, and Corn, but also to Slaves, and other things which they may acquire, whether by way of Arms or Traffick. Nevertheless the Chan is commonly fatisfy'd with the Tithe of the Cattle, Grain and Slaves: And as the Callmaks, and the Mungals of the West, have not the Custom of cultivating their Lands, this Tithe is reduc'd among them to that of the Beafts, and of the Booty which they may get from their Enemies in time of War.

After the Chan has had his Tithe, they pay And to yet an other Tithe of the Remains to the Mur-fas. a of their Tribe; so that every Tatar Family must pay yearly two Tithes, which has no bad resemblance of the double Tithe which the Country People of the greatest part of Europe must pay to the Church and to the Parson. But herein we find this remarkable Difference, hat the Tatars are quit on paying these two Tithes, tho our Peasants, besides those two Tithes, nust pay Contributions, Imposts, and so many ther Charges which amount to the Value of hree or four others at least.

Custom has very wifely regulated among the Tithes atars the Condition of Princes, Brothers and paid by Relations of the Chan; for as on one fide it dren of ecures in some fort the establish'd Govern-the Chan, nent, by the Disability it lays the Princes un-as well as ler of the House of the Chan of forming. In-other Subtrigues, jells.

B 2

C

ta

m

m

fa

OI

T

ho

W

ho

A

litt

Re

wh

Gi

Ea

or

Kn

wh

pre

ner

of

div

Bra

thai

lish

pre

Tri

fam

and

oug

elde

of f

pect

Succ

F

trigues, and maintaining Factions in the State, it secures on the other side the Lives and Effects of the same Princes against the Jealousies of the Government; and 'tis for this reason that there is never feen among them those Actions of a barbarous Policy which are fo common in the other Courts of the East, where a Prince is no fooner mounted upon the Throne, than he begins by cruelly facrificing his Brothers and other Relations to the Security of his Person and his Reign: Nevertheless as with the Tatars, as well as with all other Nations, as civiliz'd as they pretend to be, there is no Law or Custom fo holy as to reftrain them against the Violence and immoderate defire of Reigning; we fee Instances enough in the foregoing History, of one Brother thrusting another headlong from the Throne into the Tomb: and also of Children doing the fame by their Fathers, to mount therein in spite of the Laws and the most facred Obligations.

Account of I know not from whence Marco Polo has to the Tatars ken what he advances, that in his time the Tatars ken what he advances, that in his time the Tatars were accustom'd at the Funerals of the they meet they Chans, to slay all those they met in the way the go to bury took to carry the Corps to the Place appointed their for the Sepulture of the Successors of Zing Chans, far Chan; and that a little before his Arrival bulous.

Grand Tatary there had been 20000 Performance of the Successors of Performance of the Performance of the

Grand Tatary there had been 20000 Person massacred in that manner, at the Interment of Mangu Chan, Grandson of Zingis Ghan, when is certain nothing like it is at present practis among any Branch of the Tatars; and as among all the Eastern Authors who have written of the Tatars, there is not one found that charge them with so abominable a Custom; one has reason to doubt the Truth of so strange a Fast Especially if it be considered, that in so vast

Country as Grand Tatary, where the Inhabitants live dispers'd here and there in Huts, one might travel feveral hundred Leagues without meeting a thousand, I will not say twenty thoufand People, unless one supposes they affembled on purpose to enjoy the Pleasure of having their Throats cut on fo folemn an Occasion; at which however, there is no likelihood that the Throng was ever very great.

This joined to feveral other manifest False-M. Polo hoods which are found in the Writings of that full of Author, makes me look upon him as one very hoods. little to be depended upon, how well foever his Reputation may have been hitherto establish'd. when we had not any diffinct Knowledge of Grand Tatary, and the other Countries farthest Fastward.

All the Tatars in general, of what Country Aimaks, or or Religion soever they be, have an exact Tribes. Knowledge of the Aimaks or Tribes from whence they are descended, and they carefully preserve the Remembrance of them from Generation to Generation. Altho also in process of time some Tribe comes to divide itself into divers Branches, yet they always reckon those Branches as belonging to fuch a Tribe: Infomuch that one shall never find any Tatar, how unpolish'd soever, in other Matters, who cannot tell precisely from what Tribe he is sprung.

Every Tribe or Branch separated from a Mursas or Tribe, has its particular Chief taken out of the Chiefs. fame Tribe, who bears the Name of Mursa; and it is properly a kind of Majority, which ought to descend regularly from eldest Son to eldest Son, in the Posterity of the first Founder of fuch a Branch or Tribe, unless some unexpected and violent Cause disturb this Order of Succession. Every such Mursa ought to have

B 3 annually

the ere of a

ite,

ects

the no

be-0-

and , as

d as tom

ence

fee

of

rom Chil-

ount fa-

s ta-

Ta

thei the

nte

Zing

ali rfon

nt 0

en

etis' non

ft

argo

Fad

raft

unti

Cl

(

fin

to

the

ple ver

pai tha

by

tha

wh thi

anc

fho

at 1

rity

elfe

fup

the

An

Ped

the

falf

cep

car

teri

less diff

fpri

annually the Tithe of all the Beafts of those of his Tribe, and the Tithe of the Booty which his Tribe gets when they go to War. All the Families which compose a Tribe usually encamp together, and do not separate themselves from the Body of the Orda without acquainting their Mursa, to the end he may know where to find them when he has a mind to recall them.

In them

These Mursa's are of Account to their Chan, confists the only in proportion to the Number of their Power of Ordas, or Tribes; and the Chans are formidable the Chan, to their Neighbours only as they have many Tribes, and as those are compos'd of a great Number of Families under their Obedience, in which confifts all the Power, Riches, and Grandeur of a Chan of the Tatars.

Orda, Sig. It must be observ'd here, that the word Ornification. da is in use among all the Tatars, to express a Tribe which is affembled, whether to go and fight their Enemy, or for other particular Rea-

fons.

Tatars have no but the Murfa.

By the Lords and Vassals of the Chan, must be understood the Heads of the feveral Tribes Degrees of which are under his Obedience; for the Tatars have no other Lords but their Mursas, who are at the fame time born the Generals and Counfellers of the Chan. Riches don't make Lords among them, because they are almost all equally divided that way; so that 'tis Birth alone which raises a Man to the Rank of Mursa: And there is no other difference between one Murla and another, but that of the Merit of the Perfon, or the Number of the Families, at the Head of which a Mursa is posted.

SECT.

is delenated been everyone expectation

t I

e of

the mp

om

to

an.

eir

ble

ny

eat

111

n-

)r-

a

nd

ca-

W

aft

es

75

re

n

ds

1

ne

nd

Sa

۳-

10

SECT. V.

Of the Manners and Customs of the TATARS.

de eninder do bedrable out ton-THO a wandring Life has been all along wandring proper to the Tatars, and tho all that we Life led by find in the foregoing Hiftory, from Ogus Chan the Tatars. to the prefent Times, perfectly agrees with the Manners, Worship and Customs of the People who at present possess Grand Tatary: Nevertheless several Historians, as well of the Tatary past Ages, as the present, have been of Opinion never inthat this Country had been heretofore inhabited babited by by other more civiliz'd People; but it feems, a more cithat neither the one nor the other know well people. what they fay on this Occasion: For fince to this present time we have had only confused and fabulous Accounts of this Country, how should they be able to judge if the People, who at present inhabit Grand Tatary, are the Posterity of the antient Possessors of that Country, or elfe new Comers?

Thus as the Reasons which they alledge to All the Infupport their Opinion are only airy Conceits, habitants they do not deserve the Trouble of particular from the Answers; the sole outward Form of all the Japan re-People of the North of Asia, from Japan to semble one the River Wolga, might serve against all those another. salse Criticisms for a Resutation beyond all Exception. Forasmuch as Nature itself has taken care to establish such a Resemblance in the Exterior of all these People, as they are more or less remov'd from one another, that it is no difficult Matter to perceive that they are all sprung from the same Blood.

B 4

Ct

tic

CO

otl

to

mo

Ar

Na

bu

gu a I

of fan

in

de

Na

the

is

of of

of

gre

by Tai

but

afte

affe

jeć

fon Me

as

abo

wh

the

Fight fly-

The Tatars have been ever very expert in the way of fighting flying. Quintus Curtius and the other Authors who have spoke of the Scythian Ancestors of the present Tatars, report them to have been well acquainted with it. As the have not the Method of fighting in Lines and Ranks, and they have the fittest Horses in the World for running, they have on that Occasion

No Order in fightir g.

have not the Method of fighting in Lines and Ranks, and they have the fittest Horses in the World for running, they have on that Occasion a Dexterity which other Nations have not; so upon going to Action, they divide themselve without any Order into as many Troops as there are Ordas which compose the Army; and it this manner they go to charge the Enemy with Lance in hand, each Orda having its Mursa, or particular Chief, at its Head.

No In-

They fight all on Horseback, and have no the use of Infantry; the Bow and Arrow an their best Arms, which they draw with as mud Skill flying, as advancing, which is the reason they do not care to come to close fight with their Enemies, unless they have much the Ad vantage; finding it much more convenient for them to provoke them at a distance, in which the swiftness of their Horses stands them i great stead; for very often when one conclude them intirely routed, they do not fail to return and fall upon their Enemy with as much Vigou as before; and when one is eager to purful them without preferving the necessary Order or that Occasion, he runs terrible Risks in the En counter.

Most of the Tatars hang their Bow at the left side, in a fort of Case, when they take Horse; but they carry the Quiver upon their Backs.

The left Hand the Place of Honour. The left hand, as observ'd p. 211, is the Place of Honour with most of the Oriental People particularly among all the Mohammedan Tatars

ad

Ch. I. Grand Tatary and the Tatars.

art

in the

d th

bians

then

s and

n the

; for

felve

then

nd i

with

a, 0

e no

mud

eafor

with Ad

nt for

vhid n i

lude

etur

gou

er on

En

tak

thei

Place

ople

tars. Each 401

Each Tribe or Orda of the Tatars has its par-Enfigns or ticular Enfign belonging to it. These Ensigns Colours of consist ordinarily in a Piece of Kitaika, or some medan other colour'd Stuff an Ell square, set up on the Tatars. top of a Lance twelve Foot long.

The Mobammedan Tatars put no more commonly in their Colours than the Name of God in Arabic [which is Allab] and underneath the Name of the Tribe for whose use it is design'd; but the Callmaks and Mungals exhibit the Fi-Callmak gure of some Animal, as a Camel, a Cow, or and Muna Horse, &c. and below that Figure the Name gal Enof the Tribe. And as all the Branches of the sans. fame Tribe always retain the Figure represented in the Enfign of the Tribe, of which they are descended, adding thereto only the particular Name of the Branch for whose use it is design'd, these Ensigns serve them in some measure instead of a Genealogical Table. When an Orda is in March, the Enfign proceeds at the Head of all the Troops immediately after the Chief of the Orda.

The Tatars have always made Hunting one Tatar of their principal Exercises, and to this Day the hunting: greater part of that Nation support themselves by their Cattle and by Hunting. The Pagan Tatars make use of no fort of Dogs in the Chase, but they make their hunt by the Help of Men, after the following manner.

The Chan or Prince who proposes a Hunting, assembles for that End as many of his Subjects as the Time and Occasion permit, which sometimes amounts to ten or twelve thousand Men, according as he is powerful. These Men as they arrive are distributed in different Posts about the Place design'd for the Chase, and when the whole Circumference is order'd to the Prince's Satisfaction, they begin from each

Poft

Ch.

ver

n 1

Eaf

I'o

with

wen

im

am

ron

at

hat

tee

s C

ctu

COW

fit

n tv

o ar

ery

n t

000

o m

The

Vitæ

Veig

by t

Gran

hen

oon one

The

eein

sa]

Ufe

'7

N

Post to extend themselves both to the Right and Left, as if they were going to attack those of the neighbouring Posts, observing to keep nearly an equal distance of about ten or twenty Foot from one Man to another, which forms an exact Circle about the Place mark'd out for the Centre of the Chafe, and amolo and anylhom

This Disposition being made, they begin to march all at once at a certain Signal towards the Centre of the Circle; and as the Circle lessens, the Men approach each other till they begin to close; then all alight and continuing afterwards to march at an equal Rate towards the Centre, the Circle is reduc'd at length to a convenient Compass, doubling and trebling also the Ranks when there is much People. The Game which at the fight of the Men fled at the beginning from all fides towards the Centre, finding themfelves at length too closely pent up, begin to think of breaking somewhere thro' those who furround them; but which way foever they turn, they are receiv'd with a dreadful Noise of Drums, Horns, and fuch like Instruments of the Martial Musick of that Nation, which at last fo aftonishes and confounds those Beasts that they fuffer themselves to be taken or slain without offering the least Resistance; and in this manner they take, as in Nets, all the Game which is found inclosed within the Limits of that Circle (which is fometimes four or five Leagues Diameter at the beginning) amounting often to several thousands of all forts of Beasts.

> The Callmaks and Mungals, and even all the Pagan People of Siberia, who dwell about the Frontiers of Grand Tatary hunt in this manner: after which they dry the Flesh of the Game in the Sun, which they reckon makes it keep the longer. The late Emperor of China went e

very

Ch. I. Grand Tatary and the Tatars.

urt J.

ight

hofe

ceep

enty

s an

the

om

n to

the

ens,

a to ards

tre,

ient

nka

nich ning

em-

1 to

who

hey

e of

the

t fo

hey

out

ner

1 5

cle,

Di-l

to

the

the

er:

10

the

e.

ery

103

TRIBER

2/33

very Year till his Death to hunt in this manner n the Country of the Mungals, to the North East of Pekin; and also for that end caus'd a I'own to be built on that side call'd Feedball. with a magnificent Caftle, where he usually went to pass the pleasant Season, taking from ime to time the Diversion of Hunting. To flot

All the Tatars are accustom'd to draw the Tatars ame Nourishment from Horses, which we do Diet. from Cows and Bullocks: for they commonly at nothing but Horse-flesh and Mutton, seldom hat of Bullocks or Cows, which they don't e-

teem fo good by a great deal. Of vision Him

Mares-Milk ferves them for the fame Uses Maress Cows-Milk does us, and we are affor'd 'tis Milk ufed Cows Resides that they make an that of Cows. Cows. Besides that, they make an Agua Vita fit: First, they have a way of making it four n two Nights time, after which they put it ino an Earthern Pot, which they take care to stop ery close; and having put a Tunnel to it, set it in the Fire. And this Aqua Vita is as clear and as good as that which we distil from Grain; but o make it so, it must be fet twice over the Fire. They give the Name of Arach to this Aqua Arak. ita, after the Example of the Indians their Neighbours, who call all their strong Liquors y that Name.

'Tis to be observ'd, that almost all over The Cows grand Tatary the Cows fuffer none to milk won't fufhem; they fuckle indeed their Calves, but as fer themoon as they are taken from them, they fuffer milked. one to come near them to draw their Teats: They also immediately lose their Milk upon teing their Calves no more; infomuch that it a kind of Necessity which has introduced the

Ife of Mares-Milk among the Tatars.

Ch

the

the

No

less

ber

Ch

Ped

hat

tha

Pro

the

Ar

Pa

the

err

mo

Kr

ple

be

ly

an

Pa

To

the

m

fw

in

w]

Or

Pe

CC

W

m

P

al

20

Tatars Drunkenmess.

All the Tatars in general love Liquor well e. nough, and if they be not complete Drunkards, 'tis rather for want of Opportunity than Will; for when they can get strong Liquors, they no ver cease drinking of them while they are able to stand, wherein they differ extremely from the rest of the Orientals who generally have Drunkenness in detestation. When the Tatars have a mind to make merry among themselves they bring together every one of them as much strong Liquor as they can collect, and fet them. felves to drink Night and Day, without stirring till every Drop is out. Nevertheless the Ma bammedan Tatars are obliged by the Rules of their Religion to behave therein with more Caution than the Heathen Tatars are by theirs; and 'tis for this reason that this Vice is not practis'd fo much among the Uzbek Tatars, the Cara-kallpakks, and the Tatars of Crimea and of Budziak, as among the other Tatars who live under the Protection of Rusha, and who are but lukewarm Mobammedans; in which thereis reason to believe that the Climate where the former inhabit, far more temperate than that of the others, is of great Affistance to them: For we fee that by a natural Inclination all the thern Peo-Northern People are addicted to strong Liquor, and that, some more than others, according a

ple more drinking than the

addicted to they inhabit more towards the North. 'Tis for the same reason that the Spaniards and Italians southern, are less given to Liquor than the Germans and English; those less than the Poles, Danes, and Swedes; and these last less than the People of Norway, Finland, and Russia. The same Rule also holds good in Grand Tatary, where the Uz beks and Callmaks, who inhabit Tangut, are less given to this Vice than the Mungals and Callmaks who dwell to the North of China and the

art !

rell e.

ards.

Vill;

y ne.

able

n the

run-

have

elves,

nuch

hem.

rring

Mo

es of

nore

eirs;

not

the

d of

live

are res

the

that

em:

the

ors,

g as

for

ians

and

and

01

ule

12

less

all

ind

the

the Dominions of the Great Mogul, and than the other Mohammedan Tatars who live to the North of the Caspian Sea; and these last much less than the Tatars who dwell in Russia and Siberia. Which must be the Effect only of a greater Chilliness in the Constitution and Blood of the People of those Nations, in proportion as they inhabit nearer the Pole: this is so certain a Truth, that we find also the same Defect, and in the same Proportion, among the Nations who inhabit on the other fide of the Line towards the South. And as the Hottentots who dwell in the South Part of Africk, and the Inhabitants of Chili and their Neighbours who dwell towards the Southern End of America, are the Nations most remov'd to the South that we have any exact Knowledge of at present; these also are the People most addicted to Drunkenness, who dwell beyond the Line.

Besides Aqua Vitæ all the Tatars are extreme- Tatars ly fond of Tobacco, which they all smoke, great love Toand small, Men and Women, to excess. Passion for Smoking is so great among the Tongusians, Ostiaks, Samoyeds, and other Heathen People of Siberia, that, to the end they may not lose the Smoke of the Tobacco, they fwallow it all: which makes them fall, after taking some Mouthfuls, into great Convulsions, which hold them a quarter of an Hour, more or less according to the Constitutions of the Persons; then being come to themselves, they commonly throw up a great quantity of Phlegm, which helping much to discharge their Stomachs fill'd with bad Nourishment, which those People are accustom'd to take, serves them for an excellent Medicine.

Braga is a Drink which the Uzbek Tatars are Braga Drink of accustom'd to make of Rice or Millet, turning the Uzit beks.

Cb

tis

by

med

lyg

ma

con

rify

mo

the

Pol

whi

hav

but

duc

the

lyg

Eaf

gre

ing

vin

leaf of

exp

for

nag

tle,

fub

ban

his

riag Nat

and

not I be

ther

F

it four: This Drink becomes as clear as Wine, and is pretty agreeable to the Palate, because it is fomewhat sharp. They make several forts of it, some of which intoxicate like Aqua Vita, tho they do not prepare them by Fire.

The Tatars, as well the Mobammedans as the

Tatar Marriages, Polygamy.

Children

by the

berit.

Callmaks and Mungals, take as many lawful Wives as they will; to which also they add very often a great number of Concubines, which they commonly choose out of their Slaves. There is only this difference between the Mohammedan Tatars and the others, that the first observe fome Degrees of Kindred, within which 'tis forbidden them to marry; whereas the Callmaks and Mungals, excepting their natural Mothers, have no Regard to Proximity of Blood. The Concubines Children born of the Concubines, as well as the equally in- Wives, are equally legitimate and capable of inheriting; but always with this Exception, that if the Father has been Chan or Chief of fome Tribe, the Issue of the lawful Wives succeed him before those born of Concubines: a Custom which has been so long establish'd, that

But not those by Prostitutes. abolish it.

Neither have those born of common Prostitutes the fame Privilege with the Children of Concubines, every body looks upon these first with a fort of Contempt; and it is very rare to fee them fucceed their Fathers, especially if they be People of Distinction, because there is no knowing whether the Person such a Creature lays the Child to, be the Father, or some body elfe.

neither Violence nor Intrigue has been able to

In this Custom of the Plurality of Wives, the Pagan Tatars only follow natural Reason, which dictates to them that the Man and the Woman being made for the Multiplication of Mankind,

tis

'tis manifest that one may have more Children by many Wives than by one; but the Mohammedan Tatars are oblig'd in some measure to Polygamy by the Principles of their Religion; which making one of the principal Duties of Man to consist in procreating Children, in order to glorify the Creator, it necessary follows, that the more Children a Man gets, the more he answers the End of his Creation, which leads directly to Polygamy.

Nevertheless it appears that these Reasons, Sensuality which ought only to sway them in this practice, the true have the least share in it; and that it is nothing Polygamy. but Debauchery and Sensuality which has introduced the Use of it among the greater part of

the Eastern Nations.

1

ne,

it

of a,

he ful

ze-

ch

an

ve

or-

zks

rs,

he

he

of

n,

of.

IC-

a

at

to

ti-

of

rft

to

ey

10

re

ly

ne

h

ın

d, is The Pagan Tatars find this Advantage in Po-Polygamy lygamy, that whereas all over the rest of the inconvenishast the Maintenance of the Wives makes the others, greatest Article in the Expence of House-keep-a greating, because they are kept shut up without ha-conveniving Occasion to employ themselves about the ency to the least Business; their Wives, on the contrary, are of great Assistance to them, and very little expensive; in regard the young onesserve them for bearing Children, and the old ones to manage the Housewisery, to take care of the Cattle, and in a word, to provide entirely for the subsistence of the Family; so that the Husband has nothing to do but sleep and follow his Diversion.

Relationship is no great Obstacle to the Mar. Parentage riages of the Pagan Tatars, because they have no bar to have so their Mar. Nature solely to guide them in all their Actions; riages, and if, as I just now observed, they all observe not to join themselves to their natural Mothers, I believe that happens rather from hence, that they are commonly old when their Sons think

•

1

ave T ne ! he . ft vhic f th

Ch.

nd

he rin il t ne .

ttle oul oat fth

R

refs ery d (

ry. TI

non hief ey

> Pie alue

> > 7F

T

ay n

VC

er

of Marriage, than from any Law or Custom to the contrary introduced among them. What leads me to be of this Opinion is, that there i nothing extraordinary in it among the Callman and Mungals for a Father to take his own Daughter to Wife, if he likes her, tho that does not happen every Day: Consequently, I see nothing which could hinder a Son among them to marry his Mother but her advanced Age And it is a constant Rule among all the Tatars who look for nothing but Youth in their Wives, to give over lying with them when they draw near forty Years, reckoning them no more than old Housewives, to whom they give their Victuals for taking care of the House, and tending the young Wives who may occupy their Place in their Master's Bed.

Power of Fathers.

As among all the Tatars the Father is in some measure sovereign Master of his Family, nothing equals the Respect which the Children, of what Age or Condition foever they be, are accustom'd to give their Fathers; but with regard to Mothers 'tis not the fame thing, feeing they are made very little account of in Families, unless the Children have particular Reasons to be under Obligations to them.

Fathers

verenced.

Mothers

bittle re-

garded.

When the Fathers happen to die, the Chilgreatly re-dren must employ many days in lamenting his Death, and during that time forfake all forts of Pleasures whatsoever; the Sons must even on these Occasions abstain from the Company of their Wives for several Months: More than that, the Children are indispensibly obliged to fpare nothing to render the Funerals of their Father as honourable as possibly they can, according to the Customs of the Country: And after all, they must at least once a Year, go pay their Devotions at the Tomb of their Father,

and

nd call to mind the infinite Obligations they ave to him.

The Pagan Tatars fulfil Duties fo facred, with he greatest Exactness; but those who profess he Mohammedon Religion are not so observant f them, especially in what regards the Honours which they are obliged to pay to the Memory f their Father after his Death.

Red is the Colour in particular Esteem with Red he Tatars, and how ill cloathed soever their Colour rinces may be in other Respects, they never the Tatars. il to have a Scarlet Robe for State Occasions: ne Mursas themselves, who mean never so tle to distinguish themselves from the Vulgar, ould rather be without a Shirt than a Scarlet oat: and the Women of the first Quality f that Nation don't think themselves well res'd if the Scarlet Gown be wanting. The ery meanest among the Tatars affect to wear d Clothes, tho the Cloth be ever fo ordiry.

This Humour for red Cloth has spread even Red Cloth nong the Pagan People of Siberia, whose a valuable hiefs think themselves nobly equip'd when Commodity ey can compass a red Suit: insomuch that all Siberia er the North of Asia, one can do more with and Tata-Piece of red Cloth than with four times its ry-

lue in Silver.

rtl

tom

Vhat

re s

nak

OWI

does

fee

nem

Age

ars,

ves,

raw

han

Vic-

ling

e in

ome

no-

ren,

are

re-

fee-

f in

ular

hil-

his s of on of

han

to neir ac-

Ind

Day

er,

and

SECT. VI.

Of their Building, Trade, and Sciences.

Enerally all the Tatars, even the Heathen Buildings I People of Siberia, observe to this very of the Tai ay nearly the same Form in their Buildings; tars. VOL. II.

0

fo

P

SI

br

fer

fo

Fi

Sn

ab

otl

dei

ver

Tal

Do

fro

all

riot

our

ligh

moi

one

put

the

fore

into

thro

Whe

fide

Cord

Hor

like :

of ou

have

Woo

in a c

on bo

for whether they live in Huts, or have fixt Habitations, they never fail to leave an Opening in the middle of the Roof, which serves them at the same time for a Window and a Chimney. The Huts of the Callmaks and Mungals are made round with a Parcel of great Poles of some light Wood, the height of the Hut, join'd together with Leathern Thongs, for the more eafily fitting up and removing them. They cover them on the outfide with a good thick Felt, for defense against the cold and bad Weather: The Fire-place is in the middle of the Hut, directly under the faid Opening at Top, and the Sleeping-places round the Hut against the Wall.

The Mursas, and other Persons of Distinction among them, have Huts larger and more convenient; they have also in Summer great Tents of Kitayka, and in Winter, Sheds made of Boards, and cover'd with Felt, which they can easily set up and take down in less than an

Hour's time.

Houses fixt or movable, built all alike.

Except shole of the Mungals of Nieucheu.

Those few of the Callmaks who have fix Dwellings, build them round in imitation of the Huts of those of their Nation, with a Rod in Figure of a Dome, which altogether may be about two Toises in height, and within resembles in every respect the Huts already describe having neither Chambers, nor Windows, no Garrets; the whole confifting of one fingle Room of the Height and Circumference of the intire Building. But the Mungals of Nieucha, whom the Correspondence they have with the Chinese begins by little and little to reform have Houses larger and more convenient; the build them fquare, and allow about ten Foo for the height of the Side-Walls: The Roof are not much unlike the Roofs of the Houle

ct

les

be

at

it,

ey

ck

22-

he

p,

nft

ac-

ore

eat

ade

hey

an

fixt

of

00

y b

em-

p,q

nor

ngk

the

bes

the

orm, the

Fod

Cool

ould

of our Peasants. They also contrive, in some Places, great Windows of a sort of filken Paper very thin, made for the Purpose, and Sleeping-places built two Foot high, and four broad, which run quite round the House, and ferve them at the same time for a Chimney; for they have invented a way of making the whim sical Fire without on one side of the Door, and the Chimneys. Smoke circling by means of this Canal round about the House, has no Passage out but at the other fide of the Door, which conveying a moderate Heat to the Dormitories, is of great Conveniency in Winter. All the Habitations of the Tatars, whether fixt or movable, have their Doors facing the South in order to be shelter'd from the North Winds, which are very piercing all over Grand Tatary.

The Tatars have two Shafts to all their Cha-Tatar riots, which are neither so thick nor so long as Chariots.

our Shafts, and of a Wood very pliable and light: They make fast these Shafts to the foremost Axle-tree of the Chariot, by means of one of their Ends which is turn'd back, and they put them between the Body of the Chariot and the Wheel, tying a Span's Distance from the fore-most end [of the Shafts] a Cord which goes into the End of the Axle-tree, which passes thro' the Nave of the Wheel; fo, that the Wheel which is pretty small, plays on each side of the Chariot, between the Shaft and its Cord: 'Tis between these two Shafts that the Horse which draws the Chariot marches, much like as our Horses do between the two Branches of our Sleds; but with this difference, that they have an other Branch of an exceeding pliable Wood, which passes over the Back of the Horse in a continued Semi-circle, and which is fasten'd on both fides to the Harness of the Horse, to

C.

the

ch.

ies,

nce

bly

rho

A

Life

lav

ars n tl

er

eec

ot Moi

T Mui

heir

em

non

Vur

Rev ame

vith

vith

0 1

erv

ell t

he (

hat

le t

ann

ing fa

nis V

ells

y.

Beau

when

T

chants.

the two Ends whereof they make fast the Shafe They pretend, that in this manner, the Horn is much eased; and indeed, tho their Horse do not appear to be very strong, yet one Hon will draw a Chariot, well loaded, above a hun dred Leagues: But it must be observ'd also that their Chariots are not very large. Whe they have a mind to put more Horses to a Cha riot, they commonly fasten them to the hinder most Axle-tree, or place them before the fir Horse. This Description will help to explain a Passage, Pag. 76, where an Allusion is mad to the Shafts of these Chariots. The Rushia and Coffacks make use of much the same for of Carriages.

all Grand Tatary is not in the Trade cannot flourish Hands of one sole Prince, as it was in the in Tatary time of Zingis Chan, 'tis impossible that Com at present. merce should ever flourish there; for now the

the Country is divided among feveral Prince how inclinable foever one or or other of the may be to favour Trade, it is not in his Pow to do any thing in it, if his Neighbours happe

to be of contrary Sentiments. The Mobamin Mohammedan dan Tatars especially, have an extraordina Tatars hate Trade Aversion thereto; and as they are prejudic

in favour of the Nobleness of their Extraction and Merthey look on Traffick as an Occupation unwo thy of them, they glory in spoiling as man Merchants as fall into their Hands, or hold the

Ranfom at so high a Price, that they new have an Inclination to return that way again which is the thing that renders Grand Tatary

No. Safe Passage for most altogether inaccessible to the Merchants Merchants the West; who, in order to enter into it, thro' the obliged to pass either thro' the Lands of Moham-

Mohammedan Tatars, or thro' their Frontis medan But on the fide of Siberia, China and the States.

2

rt 1

iafu

or

orfa

Iori

hun

alfo

Vhe

Cha

nder

fir plai

mad

Man

fon

n th

Com

v th

ince

the

OW

ippe

mm

lina

idid

Etio

nwo

man

the

nev

gain

ry

nts

t, a

ntia

he l

nce the Callmaks and Mungals trade very peacebly with the Subjects of the neighbouring States tho are not in War with them.

As the Heathen Tatars lead a very harmless No Slaves life, they do not so much mind procuring among the laves for their Service as the Mohammedan Tatars, for seeing all the Substance of the first consists a their Cattle, which they have commonly unter their Eye, and to guard which they have no eed of more than their own Family, they do ot care to burthen themselves with useless souths.

There are none then but the Chans and the Except Mursa's who keep Slaves for the Service of what beneir Families, when they take any of the E-Chans and emy; and the rest of them are distributed a-Mursa's nong their Subjects in order to augment their Number, which at the same time increases their Revenue: But the Mobammedan Tatars do not the slaves ame, Slaves being an Object of great account among the with them. They even make War very often Mohamwith their Neighbours, on no other score but medan Tators of make Slaves, whereof they keep for their tars. Service as many as they have occasion for, and ell the rest where they can.

This Commerce is even carry'd so far among Circassians, the Daghestan and Nagai Tatars, and and hat for want of other Slaves, they don't scrussians sell ble to steal Children and sell them; and if they their Wives cannot get other Peoples Children, they wils and Childingly sell their own to the first they meet with dren. If a Circassian or Daghestan Tatar is weary of his Wise, or otherwise displeased with her, he sells her without more ado the first Opportunity. And if he has a Daughter who has some Beauty, he does not fail to carry her every where with him, in order to sell her to the best

Ç 3

Ch.

one

Aff

betv

ther

pos

gur

are

info

any

Sho

wit

He

Iro

in h

a fi

Ri

fin

hin

of

be

the

tin

thi

pe

ce

gr

Bi

th

th fa

m H

W

de

he

CC

li

Advantage. In short, the Trade of Slaves is all their Wealth, and that is the reason that wherever they fee a favourable Opportunity of making a good number of Slaves, neither Peace nor Alliance is able to make them withstand so dangerous a Bait.

Tatars said to be

The Tatars have always had the Name of be. ing great Magicians, and the Eastern Histo-Magicians, rians, who have spoken of them, accuse them of it as well as our Writers. These last charge Batu with gaining more Victories in his Expedition into Russia, Poland and Hungary, by the Witchcraft he made use of, than by the Bravery of his Troops; and that it was by the Affistance of that diabolical Art that he penetrated into Silesia, and defeated the Army of the Christians in the Year 1241. But as the Writers of those Times were very ignorant and superstitious, one must not depend much on their Account.

Some Tatars addicted to Sorcery at prefent.

At present, the Mohammedan Tatars, the Callmaks, and those of the Mungals who profess the Worship of the Dalai Lama, don't addict themfelves much to Magick, altho they observe with the greatest exactness many superstitious Ceremonies which do not differ much from Sorcery: But the Mungals of the East, the Tungules, and generally all the Pagan People of Siberia, pretend to be very knowing in Magick, which is to be look'd on rather as an Effect of their gross Ignorance, than a probable Token of their being really possessed of the Knowledge of performing any thing by the help of the Devil.

Shainmans or Conjurers way of divining.

In regard the Shammans, or Sorcerers among the Tunguses, pass for being most skilful in this Art of all the Pagan People of this Continent, I shall here give an Account of the Ceremonia they make use of on this Occasion. When any

one

ert I

es is

ty of

eace id fo

be-

isto-

hem

arge

xpe-

the

into

ians nofe

one

all-

the

m-

rve

or.

un-

Si-

ck,

of

en

ge he

ng

I

one comes to confult the Conjurer upon any Affair, he must first be paid the Price agreed between them for his Trouble before he begins; Conjurer's then the Shamman puts on a fort of Robe com-Habit. pos'd of all forts of old Iron, and also of Figures of Birds, Beafts, and Fishes of Iron, which are held together by Links of the same Mettle, infomuch that this Coat of old Iron plies eafily any way; he covers his Legs and Feet with Shoes and Stockings of the like Stuff, his Hands with Bear's Paws made also of Iron, and his Headwith a Covering of the same fort, having Iron Horns in the Front: After which he takes RareGamin his Left Hand one of their fort of Drums, and bols. a small Stick cover'd with Field Rats-skins in his Right Hand, then Leaping and Skipping, croffing his Legs fometimes before, fometimes behind, he shakes himself so that the old Iron of his Robe, join'd to the Noise which he makes, beating the Drum with the aforefaid Stick, and the frightful Howlings which he from time to time fets up, make a dreadful Tintamar. this while his Eyes are fix'd up towards the Opening which is a-top of his Hut, and he never ceases Crying and Leaping, and making the greatest Noise he can till he has seen a black Bird, which he pretends comes and fits upon the top of the Hut. As foon as he perceives this Bird, which vanishes the Moment after, he falls to the Ground as if he was dead, and remains in that Condition for a Quarter of an Hour, without either Reason or Sense: After which he comes to himself, raises himself by degrees, and gives his Answer to the Question he was confulted about.

They pretend these Answers never fail of coming to pass exactly, at least the Tunguses believe them as so many infallible Truths: But if

C 4

one

C

by Re

fix

th

Ye

tho

tri

the

Pe

Ye

Re

ha

the

Cu

po

of fu

cal

no

bu

va

Y

fai be

an

 C_{α}

na

in

Co

col

Sk

12

Ca

th

ha

Isbrand

censur'd.

one takes notice of the Precaution of paying before-hand, and of the black Bird which vanishes the Moment it has fat on the Top of the House, not to be perceived by any but the · Conjurer who has his Eyes continually turn'd that way; he may eafily fee that this is a Trick to impose upon Dupes. See thereupon the Travels of the Sieur Ysbrant Ides to China [thro] Ide's Tra- Siberia and Tatary] whose Relation, by the way, is just enough in what he reports to have seen himself; but in that what he relates upon the Credit of others, it is very confused, and confe quently not much to be depended upon.

Moha-The Tatars, who have embrac'd the Mobatars use tine medan Worship, make use of the Almanack of

Calendar the Arabians; of whose Months here follow the of the Ara- Names in their proper Order: * 1. Maharan, 2. Sefar, 3. Rebbi-ewel, 4. Rebbi-achir, 5. Tz. madi-ewel, 6. Tzemadi-achir, 7. Refeb, 8. Sha bahn, 9. Ramesan, 10. Shawal, 11. Dsilkada, 12. Dalbotza. It must be observ'd here that the Tatars have chang'd some of these Names, and have accommodated them to their Language. They reckon their Weeks, beginning with Saturday, and ending with Friday, which they

Saturday begins their Week. call † Adina, or Tzumah; that is to fay, the Day

bians.

taking any thing on that Day, let be of ever h little Consequence. As to the rest, tho all the Mohammedans are indispensibly oblig'd to reckon [* These Months, according to their true Orthography, an, 1. Moharram, 2. Safar, 3. Rabia'lawal, 4. Rabia'lachir, 5. Gomada'lawal, 6. Gomada'lachir, 7. Ra'gab, 8. Shaban. 9. Ramadan, 10. Shawal, 11. Dhu'lkaada,

of Assembly, because that is their Day of Devo-

tion: They look upon Wednesday the most un-

lucky Day of the Week, and they avoid under-

12. Dhu'lheggah.7

It Adinah, or Gumah. Adinah in Persian, as Aid, " rather Jd, in Arabic, signifies a Feast, and Gumah is Arabit for an Affembly. Yawm al Gumah, is the Day of Affembly.

rt [

ying

Va-

the

the

rnd

rick

the

hro'

vay,

feen!

the

nse-

oba-

< of

the

am

720

ba

eda,

the

and

ige.

71th

hey

Day

VO-

un-

er-

10

the

107

art.

oia1

ab, Ida,

abie

by by

by Lunar Years in every thing that relates to Religion and their Festivals, because they are fixt to certain Days of the Month; yet for all that, there are many who make use of Solar some use Years in all the rest of their Accounts, and Year in those begin the Year at the Instant the Sun en- secular tring the Sign Aries, makes the Equinox, which Matters. they observe with a great deal of Care. The Persians, among others, make use of the Solar Years in every thing which does not relate to Religion; and some will have it, that they have had the same long before the Romans, which Persians they pretend to prove by a Passage of Quintus Had is be Curtius, lib. 3. cap. 3. where, describing the fore the pompous March of the Army of Darius King Romans. of Persia, he says, that next the Magi, who fung Hymns after the Custom of the Country, came 365 young Boys clothed in Purple to denote the Number of the days in their Years; but as that Author is the only one who has advanced that Fact, and that all Appearances are against him, 'tis probable he borrow'd that Paffage from some of his own Nation.

Tho the Mohammedan Tatars reckon their Tatar Years from the Hegra; yet they preserve at the Years. same time the Almanack of the Moguls, which has been in all times peculiar to the Turkish Nation, and which is at present the only Calendar of the Callmaks and Mungals; it consists of twelve Lunar Years which have each its particular Name, in the following Order: 1. The Mouse, 2. The Cow, 3. The Tiger, 4. The Hare, 5. The Crocodile, 6. The Serpent, 7. The Horse, 8. The Sheep, 9. The Ape, 10. The Hen, 11. The Dog,

12. The Hog.

As I have not been able to procure a Tatar Calendar, such as is at present in use among the Mungals and Callmacks, after all the Pains I have taken to that purpose, I have been obliged

Ch.

The

No

mir

mak

Coi

par

p. 3

the

Ken

tis

De

the

Caj

Le

it i

of

wa

the

it,

we

the

tho

fur fia

to give the Reader the Names of the Tata Years in the Order they are placed by the Sieur Petis de la Croix, in his History of Zingis Chan; tho it does not agree with that which our Au-

thor gives.

[Tho M. de la Croix's Table of the Tatar Years does not agree, as the Author of the Remarks observes, with the Order found in our Tatar Author; yet it is to be presum'd he has placed them in the Order which is at present observ'd among the Tatars, because we find it corresponding with Hyde's *Account of the Cycle of the Oriental Turks and Tatars, and with the Jetta, or Twelve Signs of the Japonese (which are taken from the Tatar Cycle) lately given us by Kempfer † in his History of Japan, both which place the Tatar Years in the fame Order that de la Croix has done; so that it should seem that our Tatar Historian has some times mistaken his Dates; and indeed upon Examination, I found that the fame Year often fell in a different Place, and consequently, that two different Years met together, as the Crocodik and the Hare, &c. fell in the third Place of the Cycle, which is the Year of the Tyger, according to those other Authors.]

Telling the a Copper Basin.

It feems as if the Rushans had taken this Culfirking on tom from the Tatars, for all over Russia they are used to have Guards of the Night in Houses of Note, who strike from time to time, during the Night, upon Copper Basins, to give notice that they are upon the Watch: They also mark the Time every half Hour by as many Stroke as they strike upon this Basin.

* Relig. vet. Perfar. p. 225.

+ Pag. 156.

CHAP

atar

ieur

Au-

atar

the

OUT

has

fent d it

Cy.

with

nele

tely

ran,

ame

tit

me-

Ex-

fell

two

odile

the

ord-

Cuf-

hey

ules

ring

tice

ark

ke

L P.

CHAP. II.

A Description of the Kingdom of CHOWARAZM subject to the Tatars.

SECT. I.

The Situation, Extent, Antiquity and Government of Chowarazm.

THE Country [or Kingdom] of Chowarazm Dounds. in its present State, is bounded on the North by the Country of Turkestan and the Dominions of Contaish, Grand Chan of the Callmaks; on the East by Great Bucharia, or the Country of Ma wara'lnahr [from which it is separated by the Mountains of Irder, mention'd b. 364.] on the South by Persia, and particularly the Provinces of Astrabat and Chorasan [which Kempser' consounds with Chowarazm] from which it is separated by the River Amu, and by sandy Desarts of a vast Extent; and on the West by the Sea of Masanderan, otherwise called the Caspian Sea.

It may be about 80 German Leagues in Extent. Length, and near as much in Breadth; and as it is fituate between the 38th and 43d Degree of Latitude, it is extremely fertil wherever it is

water'd.

[I use the Arabian Orthography in writing Name. the Name of this Country, being loth to change it, or admit Innovations of this Kind, unless we could be certain Charass'm, as 'tis written in the Translation is exactly agreeable to the Orthography of the Natives, which we cannot be sure of, considering it comes to us from a Russian Translation; the Carizme, or rather Ca.

Amoenit. exot. p. 135.

ar

ek d

in

pc

um

et

an

Dp

Sha

But

who

raz

ne '

ru

mir

His

bir

and

in .

hin

of

in l

as

or

ind

bat the

Che

the

fon

bec

Ya

the

of i

raz

ren

Hift p. 1.

Balkatekin his Predecessor, but advanced by Ma-

* Teixeira, p. 260. + Abulfar. p. 220. D'Hert # Hift. Genghiz Chan 129. D'Herb. p. 276. D. 534.

420

by the

Arabs.

h. Il

ix in

lem

anti

Was

nces

find

l by

for

Go.

ner'd

Cho-

ly a

n the

e, we

Matime

. for

2 Go

nom.

ultan

who

 $H_{\ell q}$

from

his

e of

Sel

Talex

ultan

Heg.

e to

Ma-Herb

276.

. Ich

k Shab in the Government of Chowarazm, taing Advantage of the Broils which enfued pon the Death of that great Monarch, afumed the Title of King: But that Title was etter establish'd by his Son and Successor Moammed, furnam'd Atfiz*, tho not without great Opposition from Sultan Sangar, Son of Malek dissid by bab, who often reduc'd him to a Dependency. EBATTON But it was Tacash, the 6th Sultan of this Dynasty, Below who firmly establish'd the Empire of the Chowaazmians by the Fall of that of the Turks, which ne put an end to in Persia by the Death of To- An. Dom? rul Arslan in 590 or 593, and added the Do-1193. minions of that unfortunate Prince to his own, 1196. His Son Kothb aldin Mohammed extended the Empire yet further by the Conquest of all Persia and Ma wara'lnabr, and was the greatest Prince Conquer'd n Asia, at the time that Zingis Chan invaded again by him in Heg. 615. A.D. 1218. and depriv'd him Zingis of his Dominions.

As Zagatai Chan had but part of † Chowarazm in his Share of his Fathers Dominions, it looks as if the whole Country had not been subdued, or that at least part of it revolted and became independent. Be that as it will, 'tis very probable, that on the Declension of the Power of the Chans of Zagatai, upon the Death of Gazan An. Dom. Chan, Heg. 749. if not before, Chowarazm ei- 1348. ther set up a King of its own, or fell a Prey to some other Power; for in the Time of Timurbec, we find it posses'd by Hussain Sofi, Son of Yanghaday, of the Hord of Gonkegrat, perhaps the same with the Congorats or Kunkurats, one of the four Uzbek Tribes which possess Chowarazm and Great Bucharia; and what is more remarkable, it is called a great Empire *, and

^{*} D'Herb. at Atsiz. † Timur-bec, p. 307. Geneal.
Hist. p. 165. ‡ Hist. Timur-bec, p. 147. * Idem,
p. 148.

but three Years after he restored the City and

Kingdom to the Condition it had been in before

Ch

sta

of

cal

un

we

ria

ne

tar

fau

if t

Of

Tu

C

Tu

co

ha

Br

In

th

try

ter ca

Ta

Chowarazm fubdued by the Uzbeks.

Chowarazm continued afterwards under the Descendants of Timur-bec in Ma wara'lnabr and Chorasan, till the famous Shabacht Sultan subduing those two Provinces with his Uzbeks about Heg. 904. Ann. Dom. 1498. that Kingdom, which at that Juncture was dependent on Chorasan, fell of course into the Hands of the Conqueror. Soon after Shabacht being defeated and flain by Shah Ismael Soft, Heg. 916. A.D. 1510. Chowarazm fell once more under the Dominion of Persia: But about two Years after the Inha-

who are fill Mafters of it.

Bythe

Persians.

Revolts to fent for Ilbars Sultan, who coming with his Uz. zheUzbeks beks, was proclaim'd Chan at Vasir, * Heg. 918, A.D. 1512, as is related, p. 226. of the former Vol. and his Descendants have continued ever fince in Possession of the Country of Chowarazm.

bitants revolting against the Persian Governors,

Divided among feveral Princes subject to one who has the Title of Chan.

This Country is usually divided among divers petty Tatar Princes of the same House, of whom notwithstanding there is only one who bears the Title of Chan, with a kind of Superiority over the others, just as he has Skill to improve it: he has his Residence in the City of Urgens, the during the Summer he commonly encamps on the Banks of the River Amu; his Camp is called Chiva, from whence the Tatars of Chowarazm are commonly called the Tatars of Chiva. This Chan is Sovereign in his own Dominions, and does not in any wife depend upon him of Great Bucharia, notwith-

Standing

^{*} In the Original 'tis the 911th Year of the Hegra, but I doubt the Author mistakes.]

rt [

nur.

olta

ey;

and

ore,

the

and

lub-

sa-

om,

oraionited

10.

nom

haors,

Uz-

18,

ner ver

m.

rers

of

7ho

De-

kill

the

M-A.

the

the

his

de-

th-

but

ng

Mean

Tarks,

ands to

ral other

STORYSON.

STREET, &

standing the Persians confounding the Tatars of Chowarazm with those of Great Bucharia, call them by one common Name Uzbek Tatars.

[The Author of these Remarks is not to be understood here, as if the Tatars of Chowarazm were not Uzbeks as well as those of Great Bucharia, for the contrary appears from him in the next Section, where he speaks of the Inhabitants of this Country; he only seems to find fault with the Persians, who speak of them as if they were both subject to the same Master.]

SECT. II.

Of the Inhabitants of Chowarazm, particularly the Turkmanns and Uzbeks.

CHowarazm is inhabited at present by three forts of People; 1. The Sarts, 2. The Turkmanns, and 3. The Uzbeks.

I. The Sarts.

The Sarts are the antient Inhabitants of the Sarts. Country, and support themselves, as well as the Turkmanns, by their Cattle and Husbandry, [It could be wish'd the Author of the Remarks had given us some farther Account of this Branch of the Inhabitants.]

II. The Turkmanns.

The Turkmanns, or Turcomans, as our Geo-Turk-graphers call them, are sprung from the antient manns Inhabitants of Turkestan. They separated from corruptly the Kanklis, with whom they dwelt in that Country, towards the Eleventh Century with an intent to seek their Fortune some where else, and came to settle in Chowarazm long before the Tatars, as Abulgazi Chan relates, p. 85.

Thev

bl

11

rec

Sta

Pla

he

of

Sha

tee

hat

Par

hat

hic

of t

n t

ro

avi

of th

hen

T

kins

um

he C

nen

erfo

heir

ordi

ay]

blig

hen v

ney (

n th

lumn

clos

rards

The

urkill

lupbr.

The European
Turks,
a Mixture
of them
and several other
Nations.

They divided into two Parties, of which one went round the North side of the Caspian Sea, and settled in the Western Parts of Armenia, which is at present called the Country of the Turcomans. 'Tis from this Branch of the Turkish Nation that the Subjects of the Ottoman Port must prove that they draw their Original, if they pretend a Right to the Name of Turki which they bear. But I have observed elsewhere that they have no more right to assume the Name of Turks, than that of Sarazens, Arabs, Greeks, or Sclavonians, seeing they are only sprung from the Scum of all those Nations mingled together.

[The Author of these Remarks seems to be mistaken here, since it is, I think, generally agreed by Historians, that the Ancestors of Othman, sirst Founder of the present Turkish Empire, came into Persia with the Family of Selguk, and settled at Makhan or Mahan near Manu Shahi Gehan in Chorasan, from whence upon the Irruption of the Moguls under Zingis Chan about

An. Dom. 611, into the Southern Asia, they remov'd to wards Natolia, where their Kingdom first began under Orthogrul, or rather the aforesaid Othman, in the Year of the Hegra 687, A.D. 1288.]

Occidental
Turkmanns
very powerful formerly.

The Descendants of that part of the Turkmanns, who may be called the Occidental Turkmanns, became very powerful in the Ages past; they were also for some time Masters of all Persia, after they had driven out from thence the Children of Tamerlan, with all the Tatars, which was completed a short while after the death of that Conqueror, by the great Ussum Cassan [Uzun Hassan] chief of that Branch of these Turkmanns, called the Family of the white Sheep; but since the Shahs have possessed themselves of the Throne of Persia, and the Turks are become Masters of

aich

ian

Ar-

y of

the

nan

al,

irks

ere

the

rbs.

nly

ons

be

lly

tb-

m-

el.

ru

the

out

to-

an

m,

k-

k-

t;

7-

ne

ch

of

414

LS,

CC

10

ot

educed the Occidental Turkmanns to a very low reduced State: Nevertheless they still possess the sinest very low. Plains about the Euphrates, but from Masters, as they were before, they are become the Subjects of the Turks, who have left them but a faint shadow of Liberty; and 'tis from thence proteeds their great Aversion for the Turks.

Their manner of living is much the same now Dwell unthat it was when they came to settle in these der Tents.
Parts, seeing they have no fixt Habitations, and
that they always dwell under Tents made of
hick Felt, after the Fashion of the greatest part
of the Turkish Nation. They subsist wholly up-Dies.
on their Cattle, of which they have numberless
Troops: They are tall of Stature and robust, size.
having the Complexion swarthy, and the Shape
of their Face square and slat; but the Women of women
hem are very fair, and of a becoming size.
handsom:

They wear in Winter long Gowns of Sheep- Cloathing. kins, with peeked Bonnets of the same, and in ummer they wear Vests of Callico shaped like he Caftans of the Turks. They are good Horse-Good nen and brave. They profess Mobammedism, but Horsemen erform the Duties of it but little; they have and brave. heir particular Chiefs, who govern them acording to their Laws; nevertheless they must ay Tribute to the Ottoman Port, and they are Tributary bliged to furnish a certain number of Horse to the Othhen whenever the Port requires it. In Winter man ney come and feek Pasture along the Euphrates Port. n the fide of Mesopotamia and Natolia, and in ummer they encamp in the Valleys which are sclosed within the Mountains of Armenia, toards the Springs of the Euphrates and Tigre.

They are naturally great Robbers, but the Great urkish Bashas, who command towards the Brigands. Supprates and Tiore, take care to bridle them

Suphrates and Tigre, take care to bridle them VOL. II. D

as much as possible, because they are interested in fecuring the Roads; the frequent Passage of Travellers and Caravans making a confiderable Article in their Revenue.

The Occidental Turkmanns are able to arm a Can bring 4000 Men bout 40000 Men; they are always fighting with the Curds, who are their Neighbours to the into the Field. East, and with the Arabs, who border upon them on the South, because these two neighbouring Nations often come and break the Horns their Herds, and carry away their Wives and Daughters.

Oriental Turkmanns.

The fecond Party of the Turkmanns turn's directly South, and went and fettled about the Banks of the River Amu, and the Shore of the Caspian Sea, where they still possess a great Number of Towns and Villages in the Country of Astrabath and Chowarazm.

This Branch of the Turkmanns or Turcomann has been hitherto unknown to our Historian and Geographers, notwithstanding they an much more numerous at this Day than that the Oriental Turkmanns, who inhabit Armenia,

Hitherto graphers.

It may justly enough be faid, that the Orin unknown tal Turkmanns have been hitherto unknown to to our Geo- our Historians and Geographers; for the some learned Men in this and the last Age have give us large Extracts of their History from the Eastern Authors, yet they take no notice of them as if no fuch thing had been done; but put off their Readers with the Gleanings of fud abfurd and imperfect Accounts as have been handed down to them, thro' a numerous Sur cession of Authors from the Byzantine and other Western Historians, who lived at too great distance to know exactly what pass'd from time to time in the Eastern Countries.

h.

7

ur

ffe

0 1

yn in

ra

ie :

me

un

thn

T

fo

ft

un

T

ay

t

ey

mt

ear

hd

C

nce

s:

ges

nor

b a

e b

T

y o cct

F C

enti

ne c

TI

Hic

There forung from this Branch of the Turks or Formerly urkmanns (for the Turkmanns and Turks feem to possess'd all ffer only as the wandring Arabs, call'd Bedwins, tries from o from those who dwell in Cities) three great the Archiynastys of Princes, who had under their Do-pelago to inion all the Countries from the Archipelago as the Indies. r as the Indies; I mean the three Branches of e Family of Selguk, who reign'd at the fame me in Iran, or Persia at large, Kerman and um, or Natolia; to the last of which the thman Sultans owe their Greatness.

The Turkmanns of Chowarazm are mention'd fo by fome Voyagers and Travellers in the It Age, as shall be observed in our farther Ac-

ount of Tatary.]

rt L

efte

e o

rable

m a

ntino

O th

then

ring

1S 0

and

urn'd

t the

f the

great

untr

ann

rian

r an

at o

nia.

rien

vn to

fome

giva

th

e, d

but

fud

bea

Sur othe

at i

time

her

The Turkmanns of this latter Branch, which Resemble ay be call'd the Oriental Turkmanns, are much the Western the same make with the first, excepting that Turkey are much fwarthier, and have a greater Remblance of the Tatars. In Summer they ear long Gowns of Callicoe or thick Cloth; nd in Winter the like Gowns of Sheep Skin.

Cattle and Husbandry afford them Subfif-subfifnce according to the different Parts they pof-tence. s: In Winter they dwell in Towns and Vilges about the River Amu, and towards the hores of the Caspian Sea; and in Summer they o and incamp here and there, where they find e best Pastures and good Water.

Those of them who are settled in the Coun-conform y of Astrabath follow for the most part the in Religion ect of Aly, but those who dwell in the Country to the Chowarazm conform with the Uzbek Tatars in they are entiments of Religion, tho neither one nor festled in.

e other give themselves much trouble about

They are exceeding turbulent, and with great Exceeding fficulty accustom themselves to the Yoke of the refless.

D 2

Uzbeks

Ch

Tat Na

Ea

Gr

Alf

to (

hav

the

reig

by

nei

tail

was

and

pof

the

far

whi

duć

Cho Uzl

fam Urg

Uzb

Nu

char

four

and

whi

wer

and

the

ftra:

tain

1

beks,

Brave and Uzbeks and Tatars. They are very brave, and good Horfe are at least as good Horsemen as the Ush Tatars, but they are not fo great Robbers. A

the Tatars of the Country of Chowarazm tree the Turkmanns as conquer'd Subjects, they in obliged to pay them Tribute, and to fuffer & to the Uzveral other Impolitions from those troubleson Masters, which is partly the true Cause of the great Animosity which reigns continually be

tween the one and the other; but the Time Amount to manns who dwell in the Country of Aftrabal about under the Dominions of the Perfians, are mud 100000 better treated. Both together may amount Families. about 100000 Families.

The Occidental Turkmanns as well as the On Divided into Tribes. ental are still divided into divers Tribes, after the manner of all the other Branches of the Turkish Nation, and the Chief of each Trib enjoys the same Prerogatives among the Tun manns, as among all the other Tatars. St what has been observ'd thereupon, Page 397.

III. The Uzbek Tatars.

Uzbeks from Uzbek Chan.

The true Derivation of the Name of Uzbe which the Tatars of Great Bucharia, and the Country of Chowarazm bear at prefent, is from Uzbek Chan, as related Page 197: And the Custom of assuming the Name of the Pring to denote the universal Affection of his Subject for him, has always been in use with the People; witness the Name of the Mogulia Mungals, and that of Tatars, which that Pa of the Turkish Nation, which was subject " Mogull or Mung'l Chan and his Brother Tall Chan, took in old times from those two Print their Masters.

and

Jahr

A

tre

y an

er is

form

th

y be

Tun.

abell

mud

nt to

On

after

fth

Trik

Turk

Sa

77.

zbek

l th

from

l di

ina bjed the

ds a

Pat

et o

inco

TH

The same Custom is still retain'd among the same custatars their Descendants, as appears by the same custom still in Name of Mansueurs, which the Mungals of the East have adopted from Mansueu Chan, Great Grandsather of the late Emperor of China. Also very lately the Callmaki Dsongari, subject to Contaish or the Grand Chan of the Callmaks, have taken the Name of Contaish, to testify their inviolable Affection for their lawful Sovereign; insomuch that at present they call them by no other Name in Siberia, and the other neighbouring Countries, than that of Contaishians.

When Ilbars Sultan, as is related Pag. 226. Country was invited by the Inhabitants of Urgens to come possessed by and take Possession of Chowarazm, the Uzbeks beks. possessed all the Country of Kipzak as far as the River Irtis Eastwards, and Southwards as far as that of the Sirth, besides Great Bucharia, which they had newly subdued under the Conduct of Shabacht Sultan; but in the Country of Chowarazm there were but a small Number of Uzbeks then, who had settled there since the same Shabacht Sultan had taken the Town of Urgens [till Ilbars Sultan brought the rest of the Uzbeks out of Kipzak, and increas'd their

Number in Chowarazm.]

The Body of Uzbek Tatars in Great Bu-Uzbeks charia and Chowarazm, is compos'd out of the Tribes. four Tribes of the Vigurs, Naimanns, Durmanns and Kunkurats. [The two first were of the four, which, as Abulgazi Chan observes, Pag. 207. were given to Sheybani Chan Son of Zuzi Chan; and if all the Inhabitants of Dasht Kipzak took the Name of Uzbeks from Uzbek Chan, 'tis strange none but those four Tribes should retain it. Nor is there any accounting why the

D 3 Tatars

Tatars of Crimea are not call'd Uzbeks, but by fuppofing either that the Name extended only to those four Tribes, or that the rest of the Tatars changed it according to a Custom among them, as observed above: For my part I incline to the last Opinion.

The Sarts and Turkmanns support themselves The Uzbeks live by their Cattle and Husbandry, but the Uzbeks by Rapine. live for the most part by Rapine, and as they are the same People with the Uzbeks of Great Bucharia, they have also the same external Appearance, the fame Religion, the fame Inclinations and the fame Customs with these last, excepting that they are far less polite and more reftless.

Dwell in Towns in Winter.

They dwell in Winter in the Towns and Villages which are towards the middle of the Country of Chowarazm, and in Summer the greatest part of them go and incamp about the River Amu, and in other Places where they can find good Pastures for their Cattle, waiting fome favourable Opportunity to rob and kill,

Perpetually marroding.

The Uzbeks of Chowarazm are perpetually making Incursions upon the neighbouring Territories of the Persians, as well as of the Uzbek of Great Bucharia, and neither Peace nor Truce can restrain them, seeing the Slaves and other valuable Effects which they carry off on those Occasions are all their Riches.

Forces.

When the Forces of this State are not divided it may eafily arm 40 or 50000 good Horfe men.

Tho the Uzbek Tatars have fix'd Habitatheir Effects tions, yet in travelling from one Place to an with them other they carry all the Effects they may haved wherever value with them, which is a Remains of the they go. way of living of their Ancestors before they had

Ch

hac

tho

pre

M

wh

on!

Inf

pro

bef

qui

the

reta

go

oth

Ar

and

the

are

ina

as 1

tar

try

mu

ofte

anc

Fac

reig

this

tho

Cor

of

Bar

rare

me

tha

ct [

by

only

the

Ong line

lves

beks

hey

real

In-

aft.

ore

Vil.

the

can

.

ally

er-

beks

uce

her

ofe

ed,

rfe.

ita-

an-

e of

the

rey

rad

had fettled Dwellings; for the Callmaks, and those amongst the Mongals who have exactly preserved the manner of living of the antient Mogulls, their Ancestors, carry still with them whatever they have, as well in going to War as only changing Abode.

What Abulgazi Chan reports (pag. 457.) of Uzbeks Infantry and Musketeers, shews us that he had begin to profited by his Imprisonment (in Persia;) for arms. before his Time that Way of making War was quite unknown to the Uzbek Tatars; nevertheless they don't seem to have thought fit to retain that Usage, seeing that at present they go to War only on Horseback just like the other Tatars, and that 'tis very rare to see Fire-Arms with them.

As the Turkmanns are the first Occupants, Turkand the Uzbek Tatars the last Conquerors of manns the Country of Chowarazm, those two Factions and Uzare continually opposite to one another; and beks always at inasmuch as Ambition reigns among the Tatars variance. as well as other Nations of the World, the Tatar Princes of the reigning House in that Country, know to a Nicety how to make use of that mutual Jealoufy which reigns between them, as often as they are defirous to fet them at Variance, to draw over to them that of the two Factions which thinks it felf neglected by the reigning Chan; and 'tis in a great measure to this extreme Facility of making a Party, that those Troubles which continually distract the Country of Chowarazm owe their Original.

The one finds excellent Pasture in divers Parts Excellent of the Country of Chowarazm towards the Pasture. Banks of the River Khesell, the Uzbeks very rarely repair thither with their Cattle in Summer, because there is nothing to plunder on that side, seeing the Cara Kallpakks, who are

D 4

thei

C

N

Ti

B

To

la

w

VI

W

T

on

ot

of

th

of

ha

Pe

cia

Ch

tio

lor

COI

Wi

the

for

bu

IS C

See

ren

the

ally

exc the

of

lon

Fru

ma

another

War.

their Northern Neighbours, are as dextrous that Business as themselves, and that what the can steal from one another is not worth the trouble of going for; besides that, the Moban Mohammedan Tatars are not accustom'd to make h medanTaroads upon one another unless they are at ope invade one War together. And as for the Callmaks, who border on the North-East with the Uzbeks except at the Country of Chowarazm, they remove on dinarily towards the beginning of Summer from the Frontiers of the Mohammedan Tatars, the they may not be exposed to their Incursion and don't return till the Winter, when the Rain and Snow have rendred the Roads impassable that fide.

Sarts and Turkmanns onthe Paftures.

Wherefore none but the Sarts and the Turk manns reap the Benefit of the Pastures which is ly reap the Eastward, towards the Frontiers of Great B. Benefit of charia; and the Turkmanns go in quest of then which are to the West, towards the Mouth of the aforemention'd River and the Shore of the Caspian Sea: But the Uzbeks often incamp about the Sides of the River Amu, where they are a hand to throw themselves into the Persian Pro vinces on the first Occasion which offers, an carry off wherewithal to make good Cheer i Winter, which they have much more at hear than the Care of feeding their Cattle.

Armenians Trade there.

The greatest Abuse one can put upon am Mohammedan in general, is to treat him like on of a Religion different from the Mosleman and as the Armenians are almost the only Set of Christians which is known to the Inhabitant of Chowarazm, by the Trade they carry of with them from time to time, 'tis not furprizing that the Name of Armenian should be em ploy'd, (Pag. 330.) as injurious, just as the

art

us i

3 the

e la

opa

Who

e or

from

that

ions

Rain

leo

Turk.

h le

then

h d

the

bou

re a Pro

and

rı

reart

am

ont

Sed Sed

anti

01

2.mg

em

the

ame

Name of Christian is every Day used by the Turks.

There is a Piece of Money current in Great Tanga Bucharia and the Country of Chowarazm called Piece of Tanga, mention'd Pag. 234. and it is the Coin. largest, and, I believe, the only Silver Money which the Chans of the Tatars of these Provinces coin; 'tis pretty fine Silver, and may be worth near the fourth part of a Crown in Specie: This Money is of a round Figure, having on Impression. one fide the Name of the Chan, and on the other the Name of the Country with the Year of the Hegra. The rest of the Money made in Copper Mothis Country confifts in small Pieces of Copper ney. of different forts, which answer to our Pence, half Pence and Farthings. The Money of Money of Persia passes also in these Provinces, and espe-Persia curcially towards the Frontiers of the Country of rent. Chowarazm.

Chowarazm is famous for the Arbuses men-Arbuses tion'd Pag. 284. which are the true Water Me-the true lons of the Size of ordinary Gourds: They are Water commonly round, and green on the outside, but within they are of a much deeper Colour than the common Melons; nevertheless there are fome also, the Meat of which is perfectly white, but they are not the best: The Seed of them is quite black, much of the Figure of Gourd Seed, excepting that it is rounder and transparent; this Seed is not found in the Heart of the Fruit, as that of Melons and Gourds usually is, but is dispersed all over the Fruit; also, excepting the Rind and the Seed, every part of the Fruit is equally good for eating: The Meat of it is much firmer than that of ordinary Meions, and of a more agreeable Relish. Fruit refreshes the Blood exceedingly, and one may eat as much of it as he has a mind, with-

Out

out running the least Risk of being dif

w

th

fig

Ri

of

pr

ve

do

W

Co

is

An

So

ra/ fen

wa

Co

this

one in

Gos

An

bef

Riv

of (

the

the

of

two

gitt

order'd.

Best in great Bucharia and Chowarazm,

The most delicious Arbuses are those which grow in Great Bucharia and the Country of Chawarazm; nevertheless they grow also in great Quantities about Astracan, which they pretend come very near the Taste of these of Great Bucharia. This Fruit keeps a long time, and they carry of them from Astracan to St. Petersburg for the Court of Russia, which are as good in the middle of Winter as they can be in the Season they ripen in; but we must take notice also that they gather them before they are quite ripe, and that they ripen after they have been gather'd.

[Anthony Jenkinson, who mentions them,

calls them Carbufes.]

SECT. III.

A Description of the Provinces and Towns of Chowarazm.

[CHowarazm is divided into many Provinces feveral of which as they are mention'd by Abulgazi Chan in his History, have been briefly described by the Author of the Remarks as follows.]

PROVINCES.

Ogurza.

Ogurza is a large Province situate towards the Coast of the Caspian Sea, which was very fertile heretofore, when the Northern Branch of the River Amu cross'd it in its way to the Caspian Sea; but since it has taken another Course this Province is become a Desart, because it now wants the Water necessary to moisten its Lands.

'Tis from the great Quantity of Cucumbers signifies a which this little Country formerly produced Cucumber it took its Name, for the Word Ogurza fignifies a Cucumber both in the Tatar and Russian Language.

Pishga is a little Country situate to the East Pishga of the Town of Urgens, but thinly inhabited at thinly inpresent, since the Northern Branch of the Ri-habited. ver Amu passes no more thro' it, as it used to

do formerly.

rt I

dif

hich

Cho-

reat

end

Bu-

and

ter[-

ood

the

tice

uite

een

em,

s of

nces

on'd

een

arks

the

tile

the

nan

irle

its

Tis

West of the Town of Urgens, between the Country of Pissa and that of Ogurza, which is grown very thin of People since the River Amu passes no longer by Urgens.

Gilkupruk is a small Province situate to the Gilkupruk. South of the Southern Branch of the River Amu, in the Confines of the Provinces of Chorasan and Astrabath, and is deemed at present to make a Part of the Country of Chowarazm.

Gordish is a little Province situate between the Gordish. Country of Pishga and that of Kumkant. As this Province is water'd by the River Amu, 'tis one of the most fruitful and best cultivated in all Chowarazm: 'Tis in the Country of Gordish that the Northern Arm of the River Amu has quitted its old Channel, which passed before the Town of Urgens, to go and join the River Khesell.

The Country of Kumkant is a little Province Kumkant of Chowarazm, to the East of Gordish, towards the Northern Bank of the River Amu: 'Tis on the Confines of this Province, and the Country of Gordish, that the River Amu divides in wides. two Branches, about the 88%. 30% of Longitude.

Jangi-

436 The Kingdom of Chowarazm Parti

Ch.

par

11

bro

vin

of .

or

1

Cur

bof

the

que Kip

vin

on

Ea

Co

fitt

W

in

pre

vin

Ri

the

of

Vil

Bu

70

Ck

pia

Al

M

Jangishar. Jangishar is a little Province near the right Bank of the Southern Branch of the Rive Amu, which is of no great Consequence a present.

Burma The Country of Burma is one of the large Provinces of Chowarazm, to the East of the Town of Vasir, towards the Frontiers of Great

Melons the Bucharia. 'Tis very fertile and populous, and vest.

groduces the most delicious Melons in all the Country of Chowarazm.

Baijalkiri. Baijalkiri is a little Province to the North of the Town of Urgens, which is very fandy and defart, because it wants Water.

Resilvabat. Kesilvabat is a little Province towards the Banks of the River Khesell or Kesill, to the North-West of the little Town of Tuk: The little Country is very populous, and produce plenty of all sorts of delicious Fruits.

Gardanchast.

Gardanchast is a large Province of Chowaraza
situate between the Towns of Chajuk and Has
sarassap, where their is pretty good Pasturage.

The Country of Gardanchast is almost whole
inhabited by the Sarts.

Jangiarick. The Country of Jangiarick is a small Province on the Frontiers of Great Bucharia, at the Foot of the Mountains which separate those two Dominions, to the North of the Rive Amu.

of the Country of Bakirgan is a large Province of the Country of Chowarazm, upon the North fide of the River Khefell, towards the 42 Deg of Latitude, to the North East of the Town of Tuk.

Kuigan. The Country of Kuigan is a large Provinced Chowarazm, to the North of the River Kheld and the Country of Bakirgan. This Province extends as far as the Frontiers of the Cara Kalpakks and Callmaks, and confifts for the most part

part in nothing but vast Plains of the Nature of ill the other sandy Grounds of Grand Tatary, producing excellent Pasture.

The Country of Ikzi-Kumani is a little Pro-Ikzi-Kuvince of Chowarazm, towards the Southern Bank maniof the River Khefell, to the West of the Terri-

ory of Chajuk. The bas

art

righ

Rive

e a

argo

fth

Great

and the

th o

r and

the

the

This

duca

razn

Hal

rage

nolly

Pro

2, 2

hok

Liva

rince

orth

Deg

n of

ced

beld

ince

Kal

noft part [This feems to be a Remains of the Comani or Cumani, a warlike Nation who for a long time possess'd the Country along the North side of the Caspian Sea as far as the River Don, till conquer'd by Zingis Chan and his Successors in Kipzak, from whom in all probability this Province took its Name.]

The Country of Chika is a little Province Chika, on the South fide of the River Khefell, to the East of the Territory of Tuk, and West of the

Country of Ikzi Kumani.

The Country of Tarchan, is a little Province Tarchan, situate to the North of the River Khefell, to the West of the Country of Bakirgan, it abounds in excellent Pastures; but 'tis not cultivated at present.

The Country of Bamaburinak, is a little Pro-Bamaburivince of Chowarazm, fituate to the North of the nak. River Khefell, towards the Southern Coast of the Lake of Arall, to the West of the Country

of Tarchan.

The Country of Kogertlik, is a large Pro-Kogenvince, situate on the Frontiers of Great lik. Bucharia, to the North of the Province of

Jangiarik.

The Country of Arall is a large Province of Arall. Chowarazm, towards the Shore of the Cafpian Sea, extending from the Mountains of Abulchan and the North side of the old Mouth of the Northern Branch of the Ri-

h.

g ind

fer uli

aft

for

Iof

ad f C

e T

ave

rve

em hic

road

ier,

jur

r t

T

efe

ter'

tan

rou

ionl

ut i

iver

e C

ime

Th

otwi

tuate

ezvo

etwe

ne V

Ierc

edan

ver Amu which is now dry, as far as the Fron

tiers of the Cara-kallpaks.

This part of the Country of Chowrazm is at prefent almost solely inhabited by Turkmann, who find there, in many Places, excellent Pasture for their Flocks; but generally this Province is mountainous, sandy and barren: It draws in Name from the Lake of Arall, hereafter described.

Besides the Provinces above described, you find others in our Tatar Historian, particularly those of Abulchan and Debistan, p. 235. and i was to be wish'd that the French Editor had diftributed Memoirs of this kind a little more libe rally, from the same Store-house out of which he hath given us these. However there is reason to hope he will not long detain them from the Publick, because he has declar'd himself an E nemy to that Practice, wishing some body would publish Mr. de la Croix's Translation of that part of Fadlallah's History of the Mogulls and Tatan which is in the French King's Library, which being drawn from the Fountain-head must, as that Gentleman well observes, in all likelihood be an excellent Book in its kind.]

TOWNS.

Urgens, Urgens is at present the Capital of the Councapital of try of Chowarazm: This Town is situate in a great Plain to the North of the River Amu, in 39° 50' Lat. and 25 German Leagues from the Eastern Shores of the Caspian Sea.

Formerly considerable.

The City of Urgens has been very considerable in the Ages past; but since the Tatars have possess'd it, and the Northern Arm of the River Amu, which formerly ran by the Walls of this Town, has taken another Course, as we shall observe in the next Section, it is much decay'd; so that at present it is no more than a pitiful great scambling Town about a League in compass, have

ing

rtj

ron

is a

mns.

tur

ina

its

de-

you

arly

nd it

dif-

ibe

a he

ison

the

E

buld

part

tars and

ead.

all

un-

in a , in

the

able

pof-

ver this

ob-

; fo

reat av-

ing

g Walls of Brick bak'd in the Sun, with a ind of Ditch very narrow and full of Rubbish feveral Places; the Houses are no better than aultry Cabbins of Earth: 'Tis true there is a Castle ruiaftle built with Brick, but so ruinous that scarce nous. fourth Part of it is tenantable; and the Brick Iosques which are seen there are almost in as ad Condition; for the Tatars of the Country Chowarazm, as well as all the other Tatars, e very good at destroying Buildings, but they ave very little Inclination to build or only prerve them, unless a greater Force compels em whether they will or not. The only thing hich they take any care of at present, is a great road Street towards the middle of the Town, hich is cover'd above from one end to the o-Cover'd er, to preserve the Goods sold there from the Bazar. jury of the Weather, because this Street serves r the Market of the whole Town.

The Country about Urgens is very barren at Neighter'd its Course, which has depriv'd the Inha-barren. tants of the Conveniency of watering their rounds.

The Chans of the Country of Chowarazm com-Chan reonly reside in Winter in the Town of Urgens; sides here ut in Summer they incamp on the Banks of the in Winter. iver Amu, or in some other agreeable Place of e Country, according to the conjuncture of ime and the disposition of their Affairs.

There is at present very little Trade at Urgens, Little ptwithstanding that Town is very conveniently Trade at tuate for that purpose, because it is the Ren-present. ezvous of all the Business which is carry'd on etween the Buchars and the Provinces situate to he West of the Caspian Sea; but as foreign lerchants find no Security among the Mohamedan Tatars, neither for their Persons nor Effects.

Ch.

orn

uec

Gorg

ern

Man

im

hen

oul

Dyna

vith

pon

prob

whic

his v

heir

Capit

the C

zir,

the C

bek C

was o

all th

582,

the Ir

Takaj

much

Gates

after,

A,D.

20000

gens (f

Chowa

Famil

Timur

* T

‡ Herb VC

As

Effects, as we have already observed elsewhere it must be a very extraordinary Case which can prevail on them to expose themselves to so great Hazards. The ordinary Duties which Merchann pay at Urgens are only 3 per Cent. but the extra per Cent. ordinary amounts very often beyond the whole

Merchandizes.

440

Duties 3

Chowa-

razm ai-

ways fa-

mous 2

[What Urgens was before the Arabian Conquest, does not as yet appear, for want of fulle Histories of those Times; only as we know Chowarazm was then, as it always had been from Antiquity, a noted Country, and possibly an Independent Kingdom, and not in the Hands of fo destroying a People as the Mobammedan Tatan, we may suppose the Capital to have been in

flourishing Condition.

Urgens called Chowarazm, Corcang, Orcang.

Urgens feems to be the fame City which was formerly called Chowarazm; for M. de la Croix * observes that Charizme (as he writes it) was after the time of Zingis Chin called Corcang by the Persians, and Oreang by the Moguls. In the Tables of Abu'lfeda, Nassir al-din and Ulugh Beg, published by our Graves, we find two Corcang, Great Corcang, or Nucorcang and Corcang the Left, or Jorjaniyab of Chowarazm, to diftinguish it, likely, from Jorganiyab of Persia. The first was Capital of Chowarazm t, and both were fituate on the West side of the Gibun, ten Miles asurth Jenkinson calls it Urgence, and in the Notes collected by Richard Johnson, his Fellow Traveller, from the Bogbar Merchant, 'tis call'd Urgensh and Urgense, which comes near the Name given by our Tatar Author.

Urgens has not always been the Capital of merly Me-Chowarazm, Abu'lfeda | tells us that Cath was propolis.

> * Hift. Gingh. p. 240. tt Purchas, Vol. 3.

† Abu'lfeda, p. 23,20 Pag. 23.

formerly

rt I

here,

Can

real

anu

etra-

hole

Con-

ılla

nov

rom

In-

fio

arı,

in a

Was

raix

af-

the

Fa-

Reg,

ıgı,

est,

was

ate

an-

the

DW

ľď

ne

d

25

ly

ormerly the Metropolis: How long it contined fo is uncertain. When the Governor of Gorgan in Persia surpriz'd Abu Abdalla, * Goernor of Chowarazm in the Reign of Nub ibn Mansur, of the Family of Samman, he found im in Kat; but we must not conclude from hence that it was the Capital: nor, if we did, ould we affirm it continued fo under the first Dynasty of Chowarazmian Kings, contemporary with Mabmud Gazni. Nor can we be positive pon what occasion the Royal Seat was remov'd; probably it was on account of the Inundation which Abu'lfeda † tells us once ruined it: But his we are fure of, that the second Dynasty fixt heir Seat at Urgens, and it has continued the Capital ever fince, except now and then that he Chans thought fit to reside for a while at Wazir, Chajuk, or some other Place, as we find in the Course of the foregoing History of the Uzbek Chans of Chowarazm.

As poor a State as it is reduc'd to now, it Formerly was once a very rich and populous City, as were great and all the other Cities of this Country. In the Hegra An. Dom. 582, when Sultan Shah went to befiege it \$\pm\$, 1186. the Inhabitants who had submitted to his Brother Takash were so numerous, that to shew how much they despised his Power, they kept their Gates open in his View; and thirty six Years after, when Zingis Chan || took it in Heg. 618, A.D. 1221, the Moguls put 100000, some say 200000, of the Inhabitants to the Sword. Urgens (for I take it to be the same with the City Chowarazm) began to slourish again under the Family of the Sosis, and was a great City when Timur-bec having taken it from Yusuf Sosi, and

^{*} Teix. p. 160. † Desc. Chow. apud Hudson. Pag. 23. Herbelot in Tacash. || Hist. Geng. 256. VOL. II. E conquer'd

C

bu

the

thi

alf

No

La

ble

of

the

To

tice

Lat

fell,

Tis

no (

over

the

the 1

Nor

Lat.

confi

of th

of C

Sea,

Sout

Lat.

confi

no be

one t

TI

M

H

Tuk.

Chajuk.

conquer'd the Kingdom*, caused it some Year after He'z. 790, A.D. 1388. to be raz'd to the very Foundations and sowed with Barley: 'The likely it was repair'd three Years after, when by Timur's Order the Country was re-peopled and restor'd to its antient Splendor; but from that time we may conclude Urgens never was able to recover it self; and the Government of the Uzbeks, which it has since fallen under, so hurst to Trade, joined to the Inconveniencies arising from the Course of the River Amu being turned off from the Town, has reduc'd it to the poor Condition which it is in at present.

As to the Situation of Urgens, tho I should be inclined rather to place it with the Author of the Remarks in 39° 50' Lat. than according to Inkinson in 42° 18; yet it must be owned the latter agrees best with the Reports of Traveller, which place it at an equal distance of about she teen days Travel from the River Jaik and Bichara; whereas by the Situation given it by the French Editor, it appears to be almost as faragain from Urgens to the Jaik, as to Bochara,

tho the Road is not near fo good.]

Tuk is a little Town of the Country of Chewarazm, situate six Leagues to the N. E. of Urgens, at a small distance from the Southern Bank of the Piver Kheell

of the River Khefell.

Chajuk is a Town towards the Borders of Great Bucharia, situate in 40° 45' of Latitude, half a Day's Journey from the River Khofell. 'Tis the best Town of all the Country of Chowarazm, next to Urgens; yet 'tis not considerable, in regard all the Houses are no best than miserable Cabins, as inconvenient within as without.

The

^{*} Hist. Timur-ber, p. 306. † Ibid. p. 7201-0021

The neighbouring Country is fertil enough, but very ill husbanded; nevertheless one sees there some Vines which the Sarts who dwell in this Town take care to cultivate: They make also a fort of red Wine, which is pretty good.

The Town of Wasir is situate towards the Wasir. Northern Bank of the River Amu, in 39° 45' Lat. and 88° 30' Long. 'Tis very inconsiderable at present, as well as all the other Towns

of that Country.

t

ean

the

Ti

hen

pled

rom

able

the

rtful

fing

Lu,q

1000

d be

the

Fen-

lat-

lers,

fif.

Bo-

the

ra-

ara,

Cbo-

Ut-

lank

s of

nde,

Kbt-

7 of

ide-

tter

The

Kumkala is a small Town in the middle of Kumkala, the Country of Chowarazm, to the North of the Town of Wasir, which is not worth taking notice of.

The Town of Kabt is situate in 41° 45' Kaht. Latitude, on the North side of the River Kbe-sell, towards the Frontiers of Great Bucharia: Tis in a very pitiful State at present, and is of no Consideration but on account of its Passage over the River Khesell [tho formerly it had been the Capital of Chowarazm before Urgens became the Royal Seat, as we have already observ'd.]

of the Uzbek Tatars.

Mankishlak, is a small Town of the Country Mankishof Chowarazm, upon the Shore of the Caspian lak.
Sea, on the North side of the Mouth of the
Southern Branch of the River Amu in 38° 30'
Lat.

The Town is nothing confiderable in it self, consisting of about 700 Houses built of Earth, Excellent no better than miserable Cabbins; but its Port Port. on the Caspian Sea is magnificent, and the only one to be found in all that Sea: 'Tis large, se-

E 2 NOV OTTO

Ch

the

Ch

tw

fuir

the

Co

Cr

Ri

the

to

of

its

wh

its

int

litt

ne

dr

bit

wh

to

the

at bo Sid up

all

are

an

bu

A

sia

to

th

ca

ve

cure and deep: and in any other hands but those of the Tatars, this would be a Place where in a very little time a considerable Trade might be established, but at present 'tis very rare to see any trading Ships arrive there. As the Tatar do not care for the Neighbourhood of the Sea, this Town is inhabited at present only by Turk manns, who accustom themselves more easily to the Inconveniencies of the Water.

Jenkinfon's Error about the Latitude. Anthony Jenkinson places very erroneously the Port of Mankishlak, which he calls Mangusslave, in 45 Deg. of Lat. which is a great Objection to the Fidelity of his Relation of the Uzbek Tatars.

[There are several other Towns in Chowa-razm, as are to be met with, p. 235 of the sormer Part, and elsewhere; besides the Uzbeks of this Country have some Towns to the South of the River Amu, in Chorasan; as Durubn, Nasa, Iburd, Mahana, Bagabat, Jaursurdi and Mern, which they have from time to time conquer'd from the Persians.]

SECT. IV.

A Description of the Rivers Amu and Khefell, and of the great Lake of Arall.

River Amu. THE River of Amu is the famous Oxus of the Antients, it has its Source to the N.N.E of the Kingdom of Cashmir, toward the Borders of Little Bucharia, in those high Mountains which separate the Dominions of the Great Mogul from Grand Tatary in 39° 30° of Latt. This River traverses all Great Bucharia, running from East to West, and continuing its Course in

art [

those

in a

O fee

atars

Sea,

Turk-

ily to

y the

lave,

Ction

zbek

0004-

for-

ks of

h of

a fai,

Teru,

ier'd

and

V.E

Bor-

UI-

reat

att.

ing

the same Line. It divides in the Country of Divides. Chowarazm, 40 Leagues from its Mouth, into into two two Branches; whereof that on the Left pur-Branches. fuing its Course Westward, discharges it self in the Caspian Sea towards the Borders of the Country of Astarabad, which belongs to the Crown of Persia, in 38° 20' of Lat. but the Northern Right Hand Branch which pass'd heretofore by Branch the City of Urgens, and threw it felf likewise in-changes to the Caspian Sea twelve Leagues to the Northits Course. of the former, having eighty Years ago quitted its antient Channel fix Leagues from the Place where it separated from the other Arm, turn'd its Course to the North West, and threw itself into the River Kbesell on the other side of the little Town of Tuk; infomuch that its old Channel before the City of Urgens is at present quite dry: which has very much diminished the Inhabitants of that Town, and the Parts about it, who by that means cannot find Water fufficient to moisten their Lands; which as fruitful as they were, when well water'd, produce nothing at all fince the River has fail'd. This River a-Full of bounds with all forts of excellent Fish, and its Fish. Sides are the most charming in the World. 'Tis upon its Banks that those excellent Melons and Melons. all those other delicious Fruits do grow, which are so much in request in Persia and the Indies, and which they carry even into Russia.

This is the same River which is called Dsaybun [gaybun or Gibun] p. 119, and elsewhere; Amu, the Name by which the Uzbeks and Persians call it at present, being intirely unknown to the Oriental Historians that have written of the Affairs of these Provinces [who generally call it the Gibun, which Name possibly was gi-

ven it by the Arabs.]

Ch.

nas v

ver :

azn

o th

nian

at h

mea

on

perc ria

trib

best

whi

fing

fall

der'

acco

thei

pian

Riv

fide

pian

the

Riv

the

the

kne

wer

a g

tha

to

cor

of .

Bri

Wit

trai

T

paks.

Branch of 'Tis into the River Khefell, on the other fide
the Amu of the little Town of Tuk, that the Northern
trans into
Branch of the River Amu hath discharg'd it self.

Branch of the River Amu hath discharg'd it self for about these eighty Years past, after quitting its antient Channel which pass'd before the City Urgens, as we have observed elsewhere, which has

ut [

zbek

nade

Ome

D'd

hich

l fe-

ban

out

. Ib

run

s it

35

ern

tti

teft

rho

her

ent

m,

ley

WI

all

ıle

1-

ds

F

has extremely increas'd the Waters of that River; but of late Years the Tatars of Chowaazm have also turn'd the Course of the Khesell, to that it empties it self no longer into the Casian Sea, which happen'd in this manner.

The late Emperor of Russia having it much the Occaat heart to render his Dominions flourishing by turning means of Trade, bent his Thoughts continually the Course on whatever might facilitate that Design; and of the Riperceiving that a Communication betwixt Sibe-ver Kheria and the Southern Parts of Afia would conribute exceedingly thereto, he judged it might best be carry'd on by means of the River Sirth, which water'd the Country of Turkestan; suppofing, as it was very natural to do, that it must fall into the Castian Sea. To that end he order'd several People, skill'd in Sea Affairs, to accompany the Cosaks of Jaik in several of their Expeditions along the Coafts of the Cafpian Sea, in order to find out the Mouth of the River Sirth. These People finding that no confiderable River discharg'd it self into the Caspian, between the Yemba and the Amu, except the River Khefell, concluded that must be the River they look'd for; and what confirm'd them in the Mistake, was, the Cosaks assuring them that River was called Daria, which they knew also to be the Name of the River they were in fearch of, without knowing that it was a general Name for all Rivers.

Wherefore having founded the Entrance of Expedition that River, and observ'd several Marks whereby of Beckoto know it again, they made their Report active cordingly, and thereupon the deceased Emperor Daria. of Rusha resolv'd at last in 1719, to send one Brigadier Beckowitz by the way of Astrachan with 2500 Men to possess himself of the Entrance of that River. He pitch'd upon that

E 4 C

bo

th

P

h

21

ti

fa

al

P

b

n

r

e

0

ti

p

h

W

r

b

b

n

t

0

r

Officer purposely, because being a Circassian by Extraction, and understanding thorowly the Tatar Language, he seem'd more likely to succeed than another.

Tatars divert the
Stream of
the Khefell into
the Lake
Arall.

Nevertheless the Tatars growing jealous to fee him come feveral times to observe the River Khefell, and perceiving on the other hand by the Openings which they were obliged from time to time to make in that River for watering their Lands, that it would be easy to turn it. and cause it to fall into the Lake of Arall, by means of certain low Lands which lay on that fide, they refolv'd to fet about that Work at all hazards; and to that end they let out the River in fo many different Places, that at length they found means to convey it by three feveral Branches into the Lake of Arall, which fo exceedingly weaken'd the Force of the true Stream of the River, that they afterwards eafily stop'd the Entrance of it; so that Beckowitz arriving fome time after with his Veffels to the Mouth of the River Khefell, found it quite dry. Nevertheless in obedience to his Orders, he landed his Troops, and began to build some Forts thereabouts, as well as the Ground which he found there exceeding fandy would permit: But they were scarce in a Condition of making Resistance, when the Chivinski Tatars [or Tatars of Chiva] who are the same with the Uzbeks of Chowarazm, came down upon him with great Numbers of Troops; but Beckowitz defended himself with such Reso lution, that despairing at last to conquer him by Force, they had Recourse to Fraud. To that end the Chan of the Tatars who commanded that Body in Person, had him privately informed, that in his Heart he was sincerely affected to the Russians, and that he desir'd nothing more than to fee them fettled in his Neighbourhoodi

Beckowitz builds Forts about the Entrance of the Khefell. t]

by

the

uc-

to

ver by

om

ing

It,

by

hat

all

ver

ley

ral

ex-

p'd

ng

ot

er-

his

re-

nd

ley

ce,

ho

ne

os;

by

at ed

n-

ng

h-

and Mara

. 60 tus

bourhood; but that he was oblig'd to oppose them on that Occasion, because of the Tatar Princes his Relations and Neighbours, that he had resolv'd to make a last Effort next Day; and in case he succeeded no better than before, he would try to bring about an Accommodation.

As that Chan had caused Protestations of the Beckofame kind to be made at the Court of Russia, by witz enan Envoy which he had fent thither for that hared by purpose, Beckowitz thought he might give the of Choeasier Credit to it, and resolv'd to see what would warazm. become of it. In the mean time the Tatars did not fail, according to the Advice given him, to renew the Fight with him next Morning, nay, even contrary to their usual Custom, Numbers of them lighted off their Horses in order to attack him more vigorously; but having been repulsed at length with much Loss, the Chan sent two of his Mursas to know on what account he had landed an Army in his Dominions, and what he wanted. Whereupon Beckowitz demanded that the Sluices made in the River should be stop'd up, and that the Mouth of it should be open'd, that the Current might take its ordinary Course: The Tatars thereupon remonstrated, that they might indeed open the Entrance of the River, but that it would be of no use, because the Water of the River ran all into the aforesaid Channels which carry'd it into the Lake of Arall, and that with fuch Rapidity, that it would be absolutely impossible for them to stop them: Whereupon Beckowitz propos'd that they should give him a certain Number of Hostages, and he would go and do it with his own Troops. As that was just what the Tatars wish'd, they did not fail to agree to all his Demands, after hav-

The Kingdom of Chowarazm Parti

Ch.

Pro

try

Riv

Col

Cho

the

in l

as 1

all

wh

for

To

fee

Spil

W

fo

tar

or

mi

w

Wa

of

Co

W

Ca

fu

m

th

fa

C

th

hi

ing however done all they thought necessary to draw him into the Snare.

Beckowitz and his Men cut off.

Purfuant to this Agreement, Beckowitz fet for. ward with his Troops to go and open the Mouth of the River, having left some Men to guard his Forts: But the Hostages which had been given him, and who ferv'd at the same time for Guides, led him by Places quite defart, where there were only some Holes of standing Water, neither were they sufficient for all his Men; for that after five days March, Beckowitz and his Troops found themselves quite destitute of Water: and then their Guides propos'd, as of them. felves, to divide into different Bodies, and to march by different Roads, that they might the more eafily find a Supply. Beckewitz feeing himself so far engaged, was obliged to confent to this Proposal, tho he foresaw what might be the Consequences of it; and the Russians being separated into different Bodies, the Tatars came and furrounded them one after another, and flaying Beckowitz with most of his Men, carry'd the rest into Slavery. After which, those who were left to guard the Forts, did not fail to reimbark as fast as they could, and return to Astrachan.

Gold Sand ver Daria a political Fiction.

This is all I have been able to learn touching of the Ri- that unfortunate Expedition; for as to the gold Sand which the World has been made believe is carry'd down that River, 'tis a Report which the Court of Russia has its Reasons for not qualiing; but in reality it hath been known ever fince that time what that Gold Sand was, which twas pretended was found in the River Sirth. 'Tis by this Accident that the River Khefell comes to have no Communication at present with the Caspian Sea, and that it carries all its Waters, and great part of those of the River Amu, into the Lake of Arall.

The

tt 1

y to

for-

uth

ard

een

for

ere

er,

fo

his

Ta-

m.

ta

he .

18

nt

00

g

7-

The Lake of Arall, which gives name to the Lake A-Province, is a Lake of Salt Water in the Coun-ral. try of Chowarazm, situate to the North of the River Khefell. This Lake which separates the Country of Arall from the Eastern Provinces of Chowarazm, is one of the largest in the Northern Afia, being above thirty German Leagues in length from South to North, and about half as much in breadth from East to West, and in all above eighty German Leagues in compass.

Its Waters are exceeding falt, notwithstanding Waters which they breed great Quantities of the fame falt. fort of Fish which is found in the Caspian Sea. To judge by what appears, this Lake does not feem to have any Communication with the Cafspian Sea; and yet it receives not only all the Waters of the Rivers Sirth, and Khefell, but alto those of several other Rivers of less importance, without over-flowing its ordinary Bounds, or having any apparent Channel whereby it might discharge that great Quantity of Water which is continually running into it so many ways.

The Cara Kallpaks, who possess the Northern Salt made Coast of the Lake of Arall, towards the Mouth of the Waof the River Sirth, and the Turkmanns of the Country of Arall, convey in the Summer the Waters of this Lake, by means of certain small Canals into the neighbouring fandy Plains, to fuch a height as they think proper, and the moisture of the Waters exhaling by degrees with the Heat of the Sun, leaves at length all the Surface of those Plains cover'd with a fine Crust of Crystalline Salt, where every one goes and gathers as much as is necessary for the Occasions of

his little Family.

The Tatars of Chowarazm, as well as those of the Casatshia Orda, and the Cara Kallpaks have no other Salt but what is drawn in this manner from the Lake of Arall.

Ch

it,

So

th:

jui

tru

bo

th

the

po

to

R

gı

th

Ti

10

N

an

H

of

A

is

fa

of

fic

Si

it

tr

新教育教育教育教育、教育教育教育教育教育

CHAP. III.

A Description of GREAT BUCHA.
RIA or MA WARA'LNAHR,
subject to the Uzbeks.

SECT. I.

The Name, Extent, and Situation of Great Bucharia.

Name.

THE Country of Great Bucharia is the fame which the Arabians call'd Ma wara'lnahr, which fignifies what lies beyond the River, and is little other than a Translation of Transoxana, the Name given by the Romans to These were indefinite the fame Provinces. Terms, including the Countries those Powers possessed beyond the River Oxus or Gibun, which at different times were of different Extents, tho generally Mawara'lnabr signified all the Lands between that River and the Sibun, which feparated them from those of the Turks, who during the Dominion of the Arabs in those Parts spread very far over Grand Tatary. Great Bucharia is also comprehended under the Name of Turan, which is likewise given by the Arabi and Persians to the Countries North of the River Amu or Gibun, and includes a confiderable part of what, before the Uzbeks conquer'd it,

it, took its Name of Zagatai from the second Son of Zingis Chan.]

The Country of Turan is taken (p. 171.) in Turan. a Sense opposite to the Country of Iran, and in that Signification it includes all the Countries which lie to the North of the River Amu, just as the Country of Iran denotes all which lie to the South of the same River; but in its true Signification, the Country of Turan comprehends only that space of Country which is bounded by the Icy Sea, the River Jenisea, and the Mountains of Caucasus; which is precisely that which we at present call Siberia, as ap-

pears from Page 209.

t I.

eof

lave

iner

10

R,

he

va-

Ri.

of to

ers

ch

ts,

he

ch

ts

11-

of

bs

10

[.

Turan and Iran, which are commonly op-Turan and posed to one another, are general Terms made Iran. to express the Dominions on each side of the River Amu; but in a proper Sense Iran seems to fignify no more than Persia when in its greatest Extent: tho some think it only includes the Countries between the River Amu and the Turan, Tigris. And Turan implies the Country of Tur Country of or Turk, which strictly takes in only Turkestan, Turke-Ma wara'lnahr and some of the neighbouring stan. Countries, which were known to the Arabians and Persians before Zingis Chan; in whose Histories that Name, which comes from them, often occurs. So that I cannot agree with the Not Sibe-Author of the Remarks, that by Turan (p. 141.) ria. is meant Siberia; tho (p. 209.) something is faid which feems to favour it, viz. That Kutzium Chan was driven by the Russians, in 1595, out of the Country of Turan, where he reigned: And it appears by Chap. xiii. Sect. 1. that he refided at Siber now Tobolskoy, then the Capital of Siberia. But perhaps instead of Turan there, it should be written Tura, to denote the Country about the River Tura; and this Opinion feems

ric F

Fi M

ar

of

in

te

al

T

tu P

a

tı

9

to

t

0

feems confirm'd by (p. 131.) where the Country of Tura is expresly mention'd together with Rusha and Bulgaria, without doubt, to fignify the Country about the River Tura, which falls into the Oby over against Tobolskoy: And Iam fo well fatisfy'd of this, that I have made no Scruple in the aforesaid Place (p. 209.) to write Tura instead of Turan.

Great Buproperly called Uzbek.

Some, but very improperly, call this Counchariaim- try Uzbek, as if the Name of the Conqueron must necessarily pass to the Country. If any part of this great Continent ought to be call'd fo, it should be that between the Rivers Tail and Sir, from whence the Uzbeks came, and to which Mirkond refers when he tells us * Shaibek Khan came out of Uzbek and drove Mirza Babor, the first Great Mogul, out of Ma wara'lnabr : But these are Names given by foreign Historians and Geographers to Countries, and which are intirely unknown to the Natives.]

Great Bucharia, what ancludes.

Great Bucharia, in its present State, comprehends precisely Sogdiana and Bastriana of the Antient Coun-tients, with their Dependence. [That, I am atries it in- fraid, is what we are not able to determine, nothing being more uncertain than the Limits affigned to foreign Countries in the antient Authors.

Situation.

'Tis fituate between the 34 and 44 Degrees of Latitude, and the 92 and 107 Degrees of Longitude. The Country of the Callmaks bounds it on the North; Little Bucharia or the Kingdom of Cashgar on the East; the Dominions of the Great Mogul and Persia on the South; and the Country of Chowarazm on the West. So that it is not less than 150 German Miles in its greatest length, nor does it want much of it in its greatest breadth.

Extent.

Bounds.

^{*} Teixeira, p. 319.

rt [

ntry

with

nify

falls

am

no

rite

un-

ors

ny

ľď

aik

10

21-

24

an d

It must be confest'd Nature has denied no-The best thing to this fine Country to make living in it Part of agreeable: The Mountains abound with the richest Mines; the Valleys are of an astonishing Fertility in all forts of Fruits and Pulle; the Fields are cover'd with Grass the height of a Man; the Rivers fwarm with excellent Fish; and Wood, which is fo fcarce all over the reft of Grand Tatary, is found here in great Plenty in several Parts: In short it is the best cultivated and inhabited of all the Grand Tatary. But all these Blessings are of very little use to the Tatar Inhabitants of this Country, who are na-habitants turally fo lazy that they would rather go fteal, lazy, pillage, rob and kill their Neighbours, than apply themselves to improve the Benefits Nature so liberally offers them.

SECT. II.

Of the Inhabitants of Great Bucharia.

THE Inhabitants of Great Bucharia are, I. The Buchars or Tagiks, who are the antient Inhabitants. II. The Zagatais who are Tatars that fettled there under Zagatais fecond Son of Zingis Chan. And, III. The Uzbek Tatars, who are the present Possessors.

I. The Buchars or Tagiks.

All the Towns both of Great and Little Bu-Tagiks or tharia, from the Frontiers of Chowarazm as far as Burgers. China, are inhabited by the Buchars, who are the antient Inhabitants of those Provinces with regard to the Tatars, who are at present Masters of them. 'Tis for this Reason that thro'-out the East they are call'd Buchars; but the Tatars

ng

re

A

ip.

om

we

uch

rac

ofe

er

ng re

hem

amn

rou

a,

anta Al

rov

hy a

heir Izbek

Count

or ev

on th

hem

blery

We

raw t

then

ition

nd th

her ar

nd m

hose v

vith p

he Bu

ribes VO

Tatars commonly call them Tagiks, and that Word in their Language signifies nearly the

fame as Burgess.

Form.

The Buchars are commonly of the ordinary Size, but well set, and very fair complexion'd considering the Climate they live under; they have for the most part large Eyes, black and lively; are Hawk-nosed; their Faces are well shap'd; their Hair black, and very fine; their Beards thick: In short, they partake nothing of the Desormity of the Tatars, among whom they inhabit.

Their Women are commonly large and well-

Women.

Habit of

shaped, having the Complexion and all the Features very beautiful. Both Men and Women wear Shifts and Drawers of Calicoe; but the Men wear besides a Castan of some quilted Silk or Calicoe, which reaches to the Calf of the Leg, with a round Cloth Bonnet shap'd much after the Polish Fashion, having a large Fur Border: Some of them also wear Turbans like the Turkish. They tie these Caftans about the Middle with a Girdle of a kind of filk Crape which goes feveral times round the Body, and when they go abroad they throw over the Caftan a long Cloth Gown faced, and even lined in Winter with Fur. Their Boots are made like the Persian Buskins, but not altogether for neat; and they have the Art of preparing Horse Hides for the Purpose after a very fingular manner.

Womens Habit. The Women wear long Gowns of Calicot or Silk, which are pretty full, and hang loose about the Body. Their Slippers are shaped like those worn by the Women in the North of the *Indies*; and they cover their Heads with a little flat, colour'd Bonnet, let-

tt

that

the

ary

n'd

hey

and

well

neir

ing

om

ell.

the

nen

the

ted

of

p'd

rge

ans

out

filk

dy,

the

ned

ide

fo

rfe

lar

:00

ng

are

he

eir

et-

ng

ng their Hair hang down the Back in several resses adorn'd with Pearl and other Jewels. All the Buchars profess the Mobammedan Wor-Buchars ip, and, except in some few Ceremonies, Mohammeme near the Tradition of the Turks. They dans. well in the Towns and Villages of both the ucharias; and subsist intirely by Commerce or rades, which they follow. The Trade of Trade to ose Provinces is wholly in their Hands, nei-all Parts. er the Callmaks nor the Uzbek Tatars medng with it in any manner: And as it is very re to see foreign Merchants arriving among em, especially in those Parts where the Moammedan Tatars are Masters, the Buchars go in rouds to China, the Indies, Persia, and Sibea, where they trade to very confiderable Adantage.

Altho they possess all the Towns of those Never rovinces they never meddle with Arms upon meddle my account, and trouble themselves only about or Politieir own Affairs, paying the Callmaks and ticks. Izhek Tatars, who are in possession of the lountry, a certain Tribute, regulated yearly or every Town and Village; for which Ream the Tatars despise them extremely, treating them as cowardly, simple People, as may be

blerved in several places of this Book.

We are utterly at a loss whence the Buchars original of the Buraw their Original, and they are ignorant of chars unthemselves; nevertheless they know by Tra-known edition that they are not originally of Bucharia, ven to and that they came thither from a far off. Neithemselves her are they divided into Tribes like the Tatars, and many other Eastern People: Upon which, hose who labour to reconcile facred History with profane, take occasion to surmise, that he Buchars are the Descendants of the Twelve libes of Israel, which Salmanasser, King of VOL. II.

supposed to Assyria, carried into the Kingdom of the Meda, be the re- agreeable to what the Scripture informs us mainder of 2 Kings xviii. And as 'tis observ'd that the the Twelve Buchars have much the Appearance of Jews, and that they have many Customs which seem to have much Conformity with certain Ceremonies of that Nation, it goes exceeding far to confirm them in that Opinion; but for my part I dare determine nothing thereupon, be cause those Presumptions appear to me to weak for convincing Proofs in so nice a Point.

II. The Zagatai Tatars.

The Tatars, who were Subjects of Zagata the Subjects Chan, second Son of Zingis Chan, who had for of Zagatai. his Share Great Bucharia and Chowarazm [rather a part of it, with the Country of the Vigurs or Oighurs, and Cashgar] retain'd, after the Death of their Master, the Name of Zagatais, which they had affum'd during his Life; infomud that those Provinces from that time bore the Name of Zagatai, and the Tatars which inhabited it, that of Zagatai Tatars; till Shahacht Sultan, at the Head of the Uzbek Tatars, ha ving conquer'd those Provinces after he had driven out the Descendants of Tamerlain, the Name of Zagatais gave place to that of the Uzbeks; so that there is no more mention a present of the Name of Zagatai Tatars in Grad Bucharia and the Country of Chowarazm, on to preserve the Genealogy of divers Tatar Tribo which are fettled in these Provinces, and to ditinguish the Tatars who first posses'd that Com try, from those who are the present Masters of it; for, as to the rest, these two Branches of Tatars are so well mix'd together now, that the make but one individual Body, which is comT rally

Ch.

rife

ur

o g

ho

Var

T

lfo

hey

uer

grea As cloud after

cleve Plum bans.

T

of th

Land dinar Stren fome Per fin great

and Strok

felves all the a cou are n

fure a

prised under the Name of Uzbek Tatars; which Negligence our Geographers don't observe, continuing still of our Geographer of Dagatai to Great Bucharia, graphers. ho'tis more than two hundred Years since that Name has been abolish'd.

The Troops of the Great Mogul of India are lso call'd Zagatais by the Orientals, because hey were the Tatars of this Province which con-

quer'd it.

tE

des,

US,

the

WI,

em

ere.

far

Ey be

too

atai

for

tha

SOL

eath

hid

uch

the

iha-

acht

ha-

had

the

the

1 at red

only

iba

4

our

rs of

s of

they

omrifed

III. The Uzbek Tatars.

The Uzbeks who possess this Country are gene-Uzbeks ally reputed the most civiliz'd of all the Mo-civiliz'd. hammedan Tatars, notwithstanding they are great Robbers, as all the rest of them are. As low as their Boots, which they wear very Habit. cloutterly, they are clothed, Men and Women, after the Persian Fashion, but not at all so cleverly; and the chief among them wear a Plume of white Heron's Feathers on their Turbans.

Their Arms are much the same with the rest Arms. of the Tatars, viz. the Sabre, the Dart, the Lance, and the Bow of a larger Size than ordinary, which they make use of with much Strength and Dexterity. They have begun for Arquebussome time past to use Arquebusses after the ses us'd of Persian manner. When they go to War, a late. great part of their Cavalry wear Coats of Mail, and a little Buckler to defend them against the Strokes of the Sabre.

The Tatars of Great Bucharia pique them-Robust and selves on being the most robust and brave of brave. all the Tatars, and without doubt they must be a courageous People, seeing the Persians who are naturally very brave, are yet in some measure afraid of them.

F 2

The

0

el

tr

b

H

th

bi

in

ar

ro

by

W

ar

for

of

tro

A

Cit

ly

Women The Women also of this Country value themcourageous. selves for an approved Bravery; and the Sieur

Bernier relates to that purpose a very romantick Account, which was given him by an Embassador of the Chan of Samarkant, who came to selicitate Aureng Zeb upon his Advancement

of the Throne of the Great Moguls. The truth War. of the Matter is, that the Tatar Women of Great Bucharia, go often to War with their Husbands, and do not fear coming to Blow

upon Occasion.

Well made The Women are for the most part very well and hand-made, and passably handsom, and there are to be found some who may pass for perfect Beau-

ties in any Country.

The Horses of these Tatars make but a som Horses of an odd At- Appearance, having neither Breast nor But pearance, tocks; the Neck long and strait like a Stick, but swift and the Legs very high, and no Belly; they and ferviceable. are besides of a frightful Leanness: nevertheless that does not hinder them from being a ceeding swift, and almost indefatigable; and they are easily maintain'd, a little Grass the ever fo indifferent, and even for want of Grass a little Moss satisfying them in case of need, it may be faid these are the best Horses in the

World for the Use the Tatars make of them.

Diet of the Pillaw, which is boil'd Rice, after the Fashion of the Orientals, and Horse-Flesh, are their most delicious Meats: and Kumisse and Arack, both made of Mare's Milk their common Drink.

Language Their Language is a Mixture of the Turkish, of the In-Persian, and Mogul Tongues; nevertheless they habitants. are able to understand the Persians and the Persians them.

The Subjects of the Great Mogul and the Parfians, commonly call the Tatar Inhabitants of Great Bucharia, Uzbeks, and they usually comprehend

art

hem-

Sieur

man.

Em-

Came

ment

truth

o TE

their

Blows

well

re to

Beau-

forty

But-

tick,

they

the-

ex-

nd as

tho rafs,

eed,

1101

nost

oth

1/0,

hey

er-

er.

of

mnd prehend the Tatars of Chiva inhabiting the Country of Chowarazm under the same Name.

The Uzbeks are continually at Wars with the Uzbeks Persians, and on that Occasion the fine Plains aiways at of the Province of Chorasan lie very convenitive Perent for them; but they cannot possibly pene-sians, trate into the Dominions of the Great Mogul, because of the high Mountains which separate them, and are inaccessible to their Cavalry.

Those of the Tatar Inhabitants of Great Bu-Very sew charia, who feed upon their Cattle, live under dwell in Huts like their Neighbours the Callmaks, and Towns. go encamp sometimes on one side, sometimes on the other, according to the Conveniency of the Season, and the Necessities of their Flocks; but the others, who cultivate the Lands, live in the Villages and ordinary Hamlets, for there are very sew who dwell in the Towns or Boroughs of the Country; which are all posses'd Towns all by the antient Inhabitants of those Provinces, posses'd by who have no Connexion with the Tatars who the antient Inhabitants are at present Masters of Great Bucharia.

SECT. III.

The Provinces and Cities of Great Bucharia.

Reat Bucharia is subdivided into three Divided I great Provinces: Of which (1.) that of into three Mawara'lnahr, which has the City of Samarkant for its Capital, is situate to the North. (2.) That of Great Bucharia properly call'd, whose Metropolis is the City of Buchara, in the middle. And, (3.) that of Balkh to the South, the chief City whereof is Balkh.

Each of these three Provinces hath common-Each goly its particular Chan, but at present the Chan vern'd by

F 2

Ch

and

tion

ing

Sto

To

ac

T

T

m

m

C

C

fe

C

n

a

of Bucharia is in possession of the Province of Ma wara's lash; in such wise that all which is the North of the River Amu, and also the Easten Part of what lies to the South of that River in his Hands, which makes him a very powerful Prince.

[As our Tatar Author has had occasion to mention but few of the lesser Provinces of Great Bucharia, we have an Account only of the five

following from the French Editor.]

Duruganata. The Country of Duruganata is a large Province of Proper Bucharia, which borders up on that of Jangjarik, of the Country of Chowarazm.

Gordish. The Country of Gordish is a large Province of Proper Bucharia, towards the Frontiers of Chawarazm, to the West of the Province of Bucharia. This Province is one of the most agree ble and fruitful in Great Bucharia; 'tis also very populous and well cultivated.

Cuzin and Cuzin and Carmina are two little Provinces Carmina. of Proper Bucharia, situate towards the middle

of the Country.

Jaizi. The Country of Jaizi is a large Province of Ma wara'lnabr, situate to the North West of the City of Samarkant, towards the South side of the River Khesell.

Towns in the Province of Ma wara'lnahr.

Samar-

The City of Samarkant is situate in the Latitude of 41° 20' [Ulugh begh found the Latitude to be 39° 37' 23"] and 95 of Longit seven Days Journey to the North of the Town of Buchara. It falls short at present of being so splendid as it was in times past; nevertheless 'tis still very large and well peopled: 'Tis fortify'd with strong Bulwarks of Earth, and

Patt

nce of

chisp

Casten

iver is werful

on to

Great

e five

Pro-

up-

OWA-

ce of

Cho.

cha-

eea-

rery

ices

dle

de

and its Buildings are much in the same Condition with those of the City of Buchara, excepting that one finds several private Houses built of Stone, there being some Quarries about the Town.

'Tis faid the City of Samarkant furnishes the silk Paper beautifulest Silk Paper made in Asia, and 'tis on Asia. account of that Quality that the Paper of that Town is so much in request all over the East.

The Academy of Sciences which is in that Famous Academy Town is at present one of the most famous a-of Science mong the Mohammedans; and those who have a ces. mind to be instructed in the several Parts of Learning, come from all the neighbouring Countries to perform their Studies there.

The Castle appointed for the Residence of the Castle Chans, is one of the most spacious; but as at present the Province of Mawara'lnabr has no partisided for cular Chan, it falls insensibly to ruin; for when merly. the Chan of Great Bucharia comes in the Summer to pass some Months at Samarkant, he usually encamps in the Meadows near the Town.

The Country round this City produces Pears, Fruits. Apples, Raisins and Melons of so exquisite a Taste, and in such plenty, that it surnishes all the Empire of the Great Mogul, and a part of Persia with them.

The little River which passes by the Town Rivers and falls into the River Amu about the 92° of Longit. would be of great Convenience to the Town, by opening a Communication with the neighbouring Dominions, if the Inhabitants had but the Industry to make it navigable. In short, there is nothing wanting at Samarkant to carry on a very considerable Trade, but its having other Masters and other Neighbours than the Mohammedan Tatars.

F 4

Otrar

Otrar.

on

to

38

for

wl

G1

21

Pr

is a

Butif

Cl

On

ot

no

ot

ge

ha

an

an

ar

T

Ti

In

pa

qu

co

pa an

ch

Otrar is a Town situate in 41° 50' Lat. toward the Frontiers of the Callmaks, on the Bank of a small River, which falls into the Amu about the 99 Deg. of Longit.

The Town of Otrar is not very confiderable at present, nevertheless 'tis to be observ'd that Tamerlan the famous Tamerlan died here in the Year 1405

died here. of the Christian Æra.

[Otrar is otherwise called Farab, and was heretofore the Capital of Turkestan, when that Kingdom was in its flourishing Condition under Cavar Chan of Cara Kitay.]

The Towns of the Province of Proper Bucharia,

vince of the fame Name] towards the Frontiers of the Country of Chowarazm, to the North West of the City of Buchara in 40° 30' Latit, and is but inconsiderable at present.

Wardansi,

The Town of Wardansi is situate in Great Bucharia in 39 Deg. of Lat. to the West of the City of Buchara towards the Frontiers of Chowarazm: 'Tis a pretty large scambling Town inhabited by the Buchars, who in time of Peace traffick into Persia and Chowarazm.

Carshi.

The Town of Carshi is situate in Great Bucharia upon the Southern side [rather at some distance to the North] of the River Amu in 38°

30' Lat. and 101 Deg. of Longit.

This Town is at present one of the best of Great Bucharia, being large, populous, and better built than any other Town in that Country: The Neighbourhood of it is exceeding fertil in all forts of Fruits and Pulse, and its Inhabitants drive a great Trade in the North Parts of the Indies.

Samin

art |

Ward

ak di

bout

able

that

1405

Was

that

ader

ro-

ers

rth

tit,

eat he

vn

at

ne

Samin is a small Town of Great Bucharia up-Samin or on the Right [or North] side of the River Amu, Zamin. towards the Frontiers of Persia, in the Lat. of 38° 15' and 92° 15' of Longit. It is remarkable Pass of the for nothing but its Passage over the River Amu, River which is of great Advantage to the Tatars of Great Bucharia, as being the Gate by which they are accustom'd to enter into the neighbouring Provinces of the Persians.

The City of Buchara, fituate in 39° 30' of Lat. Buchara: is at present the Residence of the Chan of Great Residence Bucharia: This Town is of great extent, and for-Chan.

tify'd with a strong Rampart fenced with Earth.

'Tis divided into three Parts, whereof the Divided in Chan's, Castle and what depends on it takes up three one; the Mursas, Officers of the Court, and Parts: others belonging to the Retinue of the Chan, another Part; and the Burghers, Merchants, and other Inhabitants the third part, which is biggest; and in this last every Trade or Profession has its particular Quarter; the Mosques, the Baths, and such like publick Buildings are built of Brick, and of a fine Structure; but the other Houses are built only of Earth.

The Water of the River which passes by the River Wa-Town is very bad, and they say it breeds Worms ter bad.

in the Legs of those who drink of it.

This City is very conveniently fituated for Convenience, between Grand Tatary, Persia, and the ent for Indies; and the Duties which are commonly Trade. paid there are very moderate, not amounting to quite 3 per Cent. But on account of the extraordinary Oppressions which the foreign Merchants continually meet with there, the Trade is very small at present.

Besides the Coin of *Persia* and the *Indies* which *Money*. pass at *Buchara*, there is current both Silver and Brass Money which the *Chan* of *Great Buchara* causes to be coined.

The

C

W

ir

21

n

ck

W

Si

R

L

th

M

in

do

fe

D

a

w

T

w

fit

Fo

m

Gi

an

the

the

the Law. this Town, and in the Civil Wars, which arise from time to time among the several Princes of the House of the Chan, he usually inclines the

Balance to the fide he declares for.

Famous for dryed Fruit.

Silk.

The Town of Buchara supplies the Dominions of the Great Mogull, and part of Persia, with all forts of dry'd Fruits of an exquisite Flavour.

The Towns of the Province of Balkh.

Balkh. The City of Balkh is situate at the end of Great Bucharia, towards the Frontiers of Persia in 37°

10' of Lat. and 92° 20' of Longit.

of a Chan Tatars, who possess at present the southern Pan of the Uz. of Great Bucharia. 'Tis true this Part is very small, in comparison of all the rest, which is in the Hands of the Ghan of Bucharia; but as it is extremely fertil and thorowly cultivated, the Ghan nevertheless draws a fair Revenue on of it yearly.

There is much Silk gather'd there, and the Inhabitants of the Country make very pretty

Stuffs of it.

Uzbeks of The Uzbeks subject to the Chan of Balkh, are this state the most civiliz'd of the Mohammedan Tatars of most civilized. Great Bucharia, to which the great Trade which they have with the Persians, and the Subjects of the Great Mogul, in all likelihood contributes much; in other Respects they differ in nothing from the other Tatars of Great Bucharia, only in that they are less thievish and more industrious.

Balkh the The Town of Balkh is at present the most best Town considerable of all the Towns which the Mohamin the medan Tatars posses; it is great, fair, and well the Mopeopled, and most of its Buildings are of Stone hammedan or Brick. Its Fortifications consist of Bulwarks tars.

of Earth, senced without with a strong Wall,

r in

aric

es of the

nın.

With

Our.

reat

zbek

Part

rery is in

as it

ted,

Out

the

etty

are

s of

nich

s of

ites |

ing / in

IS.

1m-

one rks

all,

ich

which is high enough to cover those who are imploy'd in the Defence of the Bulwark.

As in time of Peace all foreign Merchants Great and other Travellers have free Liberty and Per-Trade. mission to transact their Affairs in this City, a great Trade is carry'd on there, the Town of Balkh being at present the Resort of all the Business which is carry'd on between Great Bucharia and the Indies; in which a fine River which coming from the S.S. E. passes thro' the Suburbs of that Town, is of great use. That River salls into the Amu about the 38° 30' of Latit. upon the Consines of the Country of Chowarazm and Great Bucharia.

The Chan's Castle is a great Building after Chan's the Eastern Fashion; 'tis almost wholly built of Marble Marble, of which there are very fine Quarries Quarries.

in the neighbouring Mountains.

Merchandizes pay 2 per Cent. in this Town Two per going in and coming out; but those which Goods. do nothing but pass, pay nothing at all in this

'Tis Jealoufy alone which has hitherto pre-Chan of ferv'd the Chan of Balkh in the Possession of his weak. Dominions, and which always makes him find a Support from one of the neighbouring Powers, when the other appears disposed to seize his Territories.

The Town of Anderab is the most southern Anderab. which the Uzbek Tatars possess at present; its situation. situate in 35° of Latit. and 95 of Longit. at the Foot of the Mountains which separate the Do-Mounminions of the Great Mogul and Persia from tains. Great Bucharia.

'Tis thro' this Town that all which passes in No other and out of Great Bucharia into the Dominions of Passage the Great Mogul must of necessity pass, because Mounthere is no other way of crossing the high tains.

Moun-

30

De

Pre

per

less

tha

of

Tib

the

it i

whi

feer

of S

Вис

on

high

espe

than

adva

but

then Maf peac

It

7

Mountains which separate those two States with Beasts of Carriage. Upon this Account the Chan of Balkh constantly maintains a good number of Soldiers in this Town, tho otherwise it is not very strong.

Quarries of Lapis Lazulia There are very rich Quarries of Lapis Lazuli in the neighbourhood of Anderab, in which the Buchar Inhabitants of the Town drive a great Trade with the Merchants of India and Persia, For the rest, this Town is very rich and well peopled for its bigness, considering it is but small. Merchandizes pay there 4 per Gent. for liberty of passing.

Badagfhan,

Duties.

Rich.

The City of Badag shan is situate in the Great Bucharia, at the Foot of those high Mountains which separate the Dominions of the Mogal from Grand Tatary in 37° 30' of Latit. and about 101° of Longit. It is a very antient Town, and exceeding strong by its Situation in the Mountains: It is dependent on the Chan of Bucharia, and serves him for a kind of Prison where he shuts up all those from whom he thinks to convenient to secure himself.

The Town of Badag shan is not very big, but it is well enough built, and very populous. The Inhabitants are wealthy, by reason of the rich Mines of Gold and Silver, as also of Rubies which are in their Neighbourhood; for although there are none who regularly work in them, yet those who dwell at the Foot of the Mountains, do not fail for all that of making a considerable Prosit by the great Quantity of Gold and Silver Dust which they gather in Spring out of the Channels, which the Torrents (that fall in abundance from the top of those Mountains when the Snow melts) are sure to make every Year.

Mines of Gold, Silver and Rubies.

CHAP.

L

ith the

m-

tis

culi the

eat

fia.

out for

ins

vn,

the

Bu-

ere

sit

but

ich

oies

tho

yet

ins,

ble

Ver

the

un-

the

P.

CHAP. IV.

A Description of the Kingdom of Little Bucharia, or Cashgar.

SECT. I.

Of its Situation, Extent, and natural Advantages:

THE Kingdom of Cashgar is situate in the North of Asia, and extends from the 38° 30' of Latit. to the 44° 30' and from the 105 Deg. of Longit. to the 120 Deg. [including the Provinces of Turfan and Chamil which are dependent on it] so that its greatest length is not less than 160 Leagues, and its greatest breadth than 100.

'Tis bounded on the North by the Country Bounds.' of the Callmaks and Mungals; on the East by Tibet and the Desarts of Goby; on the South by the Dominions of the Great Mogul, from which it is separated by the high Mountains of Imaus, which the Tatars call Mus Tag, [of which Imaus seems to be a Corruption] that is, the Mountains of Snow; and on the West by Great Bucharia.

This Country which is at present called Little Climate. Bucharia, is populous and fertil enough; but on account of its great Elevation, and of the high Mountains which bound it in several Parts, especially towards the South, it is much colder than it should be naturally with regard to the advantageous Situation it enjoys.

It is very rich in Mines of Gold and Silver, Mines of but the Inhabitants reap little Advantage by Gold and them, because the Callmaks who are at present Masters of Little Bucharia, are content to live peaceably by the Profit of their Cattle, and don't

care

Ch.

Ten

be i

the ' 41°

char

para

Cap

the

ver

nev

cari

bou

ble

wri

Car

Co

to 1

Bat

are

var

kar

the

aft

fes

CO

w fid usi

mo

th tw

of

gu

Ί

found in

Moun-

tains.

care for Gold and Silver when it must cost them much Labour: and that the Buchars who dwell in the Towns and Villages of the Country can more conveniently get their Living by Commerce than by so hard Work as that in the Gold Duf Mines. Nevertheless both the one and the other do reap a yearly Advantage from those the Chan- Mines, by the abundance of Grains of Gold nels of the which they gather every Spring out of the Gutters, which the Torrents that fall from all fides of those high Mountains when the Snow melts. leave every where; and 'tis from thence all that Gold Dust comes which the Buchar Inhabitants of the Towns of this Country carry into the Indies, China, and even as far as Tobolskoy in Si-

Musk. Precious Stones of all forts.

beria.

Much Musk also is found in this Country, and all forts of precious Stones, even Diamonds; but the Inhabitants have not the Art to polish or cut them, and are obliged to fell them as rough as they find them.

Subject to Contailh.

Little Bucharia has been possessed with all its Dependances, [fince the Year 1683.] by Contailb, Grand Chan of the Callmaks; but some years ago the Chinese, with the Assistance of the Mungals, took from him the Provinces of Chamill and Turfan, which are fituate towards the Defarts of Goby, and make a part of this Country, in the manner as is hereafter related.

SECT. II.

The principal Places in Little Bucharia.

Many Towns, but in bad Order.

HERE are many Towns and Villages in this Country, but as the Callmaks, who are its Lords and Masters, do not forsake their

Tents,

tL

em

vell

can

m-

the

the

ofe

old

ut-

leş

ts,

lat

nts

n-

Si-

5:

sh

as

ts

1-

le

Tents, 'tis eafy to imagine that the Towns must

be in very bad Order.

The Town of Cashgar in particular, whence Cashgar the whole Country takes its Name, is situate in sormerly 41° 30' Lat. towards the Frontiers of Great Bu-the Capicharia [at the Foot of the Mountains which separate the two Countries.] It was heretofore the Capital of the Kingdom of Cashgar; but since the Tatars have been in Possession of it, it has very much fallen from its former Grandure; nevertheless there is still a pretty good Trade carry'd on between this Town and the neighbouring Countries, tho it be very inconsiderable to what it was formerly.

The Town of Yerkeen [or as the Author Yerkeen. writes it elsewhere Yerkeben] is at present the Capital of Little Bucharia, otherwise called the Country of Cashgar. 'Tis situate in 42° 40' Lat. to the North of the Town of Cashgar upon the Banks of a little River, the Waters of which are not reckon'd very wholesom. [It is written variously by Authors, Hiarkent, Jurkend, Yarkant, and the like, of which perhaps the last is

the true Orthography.]

This Town is large, and pretty well built, Large and after the Eastern manner; tho most of the Hou-well built.

fes are of Brick, baked in the Sun.

There is a Castle in this City where Contaish Castle comes from time to time to reside some Months, where when his Affairs require his Presence on this resides, side; whence 'tis look'd upon by some as the when usual Residence of the Grand Chan of the Call-there. maks.

As the Town of Yerkeen is the Resort of all Place of the Commerce which is carry'd on at present be-great tween the Indies and the North of Asia, as also Trade. of that which subsists on one side between Tangut and Siberia, and on the other side between

Little Bucharia, or Cashgar. Part 472 Very rich Great Bucharia and China: 'Tis natural for it and popu- to be very rich and well peopled, especially if it be consider'd that 'tis by means of the Bu. char Inhabitants of this Town that these diffe-

rent Countries have a Communication together. and that for this reason all the Profit of Tride must rest in their hands.

Country round fruitful.

The Country round this Town is very fertil. and produces Plenty of all Fruits and Pulse.

The prevailing Religion in the Town of Yerkeen, as in all the other Towns and Villages

all Religi- of Little Bucharia is the Mohammedan; neverons tolera- theless all other Religions enjoy an entire Liberty, because the Callmaks, who are Masters of this Country, make it a Scruple of Conscience not to fuffer any body to be molested on account of his Religion.

> If the late Emperor of Russia had lived a little longer, he would have labour'd hard to have fettled a regular Trade between his Dominions and the Town of Yerkeen, by the River Iriu, which would have been attended with very advantageous Consequences for the Subjects of

Russia.

Chateen

The Town of Chateen is situate to the East of or Chotan, the Town of Yerkeen in 42 Deg. of Lat. It belongs to Contaish, Grand Chan of the Callmaks, and is still in a pretty flourishing Condition, on account of the great Trade which is carry'd on among the Buchar Inhabitants of the Town, the Callmaks and the Merchants of the. Indies, and of Tangut, who flock thither from all fides This is probably the Catha Chotan of the Ori ental Authors.

> The Inhabitants for the most part profess Mohammedism; nevertheless they are so little precite about Religion, that all the different Pagan Worships of the neighbouring Countries

enjoy

Cl

enj

bei

abo

cer

his cor

To

bali

Buc

and

fay

der

affu

one

Gre

bali

lik.

is fi

beloi

B fo

Poi

is n

the

on

Kin

exce

ror (

imag

which

P

Ce 25.13-

enjoy there an entire Liberty, without any one

being molested on that Score.

ı it

7 if

Bu.

fe-

er,

rde

til,

of

(CS

cr-

-ار

of

ICE

ac-

it-

ve

ns

is.

d-

of

of

)e-

ks,

n,

b

n,

25,

es.

S

nt

es

The City is built of Brick, and the Country about is exceeding fruitful; it pays yearly a certain Tribute to Contails, for which it enjoys his Protection, without being in any fort incommoded by the Callmaks. ['Tis the same Town which the Oriental Historians call Chotan.]

The Town of Yalafagan, [called also Cham-Yalafagan balik, p. 44.] should be somewhere in the Little or Chambalik, near the Borders of Great Bucharia, and the Dominions of Contaish: but I cannot say for certain, whether it exists at present under the same Name, tho I have been positively affured it does, and that it is at the same time one of the principal Entrances on that side into Great Bucharia.

[Care must be taken not to confound Chambalik, which signifies good Town, with Chanbalik, which signifies the Town of the Chan, and

is suppos'd to be Pekin.

Perhaps this is the same Place which * D'Herbelot calls Balasagan, it being easy to mistake a B for a Y in Arabic, which differ only by a Point. 'Tis likely also that 'tis the same which is meant by Chambalik in Abulfeda, who says the Country † of Chambalik touches Southward on the Mountains of Balbara, that is of the King of India, who formerly bore that Title; except you will suppose that he fell into the Error of our former Geographers, who till of late imagin'd India and China to be contiguous, which is not improbable.]

All continue and are

^{*} At the words Turk and Turkoman.

[†] Anciennes Relations par Renaudot, p. 155.

b.

ver

oni

Ina

1

we

00

Jni

T

re

ow nd

an i

nly

1

hey

men

nor pers

upo: which

then

The

and

Bedi

long

they

go t

after

the .

Calle

in th

the

Iron

whic

T

Part I

is into Country 3 8 d the Country

The Government, Buildings, Language, Religion, Marriages, Burials, and other Customs of the Natives.

IN 1723 there came out a fmall Treatife in French at Cologne, intitled, The Present State of Bucharia, extracted from the Manuscript of a Traveller; I have been informed that it was published by the Editor of the foregoing History: but if so, it seems by his making no use of it in his Remarks, that he had none of the best Opinions of it; In short the Geography of it is very bad, and great part at least of the rest seems to be sictitious. However I have thought sit, for the Satisfaction of the Reader, to give an Abstract of what is to our present Purpose.]

Little Bucharia is called by some Mogulia, [the Author mistakes it sure for Mogulistan] and by others Zagatay, in memory of Zagatai [in whole share it was included.] There are several Desamin it; the rest consists of about a Score Towns, which have a great Number of Villages depending on each of them: but among those Towns there are only two of any Note, viz. Teckn, which is the Capital of the Country, very great and populous, and Cashgar, situate at the Foot of the Mountain of Parapomisus, which divides

Little Bucharia from the great one.

Government. In the Year 1683, the Callmaks under their Bosto Chan, or Bosugto Chan, seized Little Bucharia, whose Successor Zigan Araptan established several Magistrates in the Kingdom, which still continue and are subordinate one to the other; the lowest Rank having each the Rule over 10 Houses or Families, the second sort over

Old

ion,

1110

e in

tate

of a

Was

fto-

e of

bett

it is

ems

for

Ab-

the

by

ose

arts

DS,

nd-

wns.

ken,

real

oot

des

heir

Bu-

ih-

ich

0-

ule

fort ver Liten The

ner 100, and the first over 1000; all in subjection to a General Commander, whom the great ontaish, as Sovereign of the Whole, chooses ornarily out of the antient Princes of the Country.

These Magistrates decide all Differences between the Subjects, and are obliged to report their Superiors whatever passes: whereby

ood Order is kept up, and perfect Peace and Inion preserved among the Inhabitants.

The Buchars are no Warriors; their Arms Arms. re commonly the Lance and the Bow: Some owever have Muskets, and screw'd Arquebuses and the richer fort wear Coats of Mail. Contais an raise among them about 20000 Men, taking

only one out of ten Families.

Their Houses are of Stone and pretty good; Buildings.

hey have but few Moveables, and no way ornamental: They have neither Chairs nor Tables, nor is there any thing to be feen in their Chambers but some China Trunks garnish'd with Iron, upon which in the Day they spread the Quilts which they make use of at Night, and cover them with a Cotton Carpet of several Colours. They have also a Curtain sprig'd with Flowers and Figures of different Colours, and a fort of Bedstead about half a Yard high and four Yards long, which serves them to lie on, and which they hide in the Day-time with a Carpet. They go to bed stark naked, but they always dress when they rise, and sit with their Legs a-cross after the Turkish manner.

They are very neat about their Victuals, which Furniture, the Slaves, they either take or buy from the Callmaks, Russians, and other Neighbours, dress in their Master's Chamber; where according to the largeness of the Family, there are several Iron Pots set in a kind of Range near a Chimney, which serves also to warm the Room in Winter:

G 2

Some

Ch

witl

dow

fize

ado

feve

glit abo

the

whi

whi

han

loui hol

in

pul

exp

the

and

wit

of

Tw

we

He

Gir

Mo

to

lon

the

Ne

enc

and

the

bla

fair

S

Some have little Ovens, which are made like the rest of their Walls, with Fullers-Earth or Bricks.

Utensils.

Their Utenfils confift in some Plates and Porringers of Capua, (which is a sort of Wood) or of China, and in some Copper Vessels to be Tea, and to heat Water when they want to wash. A Piece of colour'd Callico serves them instead of Table-Cloth and Napkins; they we neither Knives nor Forks, but the Meat being serv'd up ready cut, they pull it to pieces with their Fingers: Their Spoons are of Wood, and made like the Ladles with which we skim our Pots.

Diet.

Their usual Food is minced Meats, of which they often make a fort of Pies, in the shape of a Half-Moon. They make Provision of their Pies when they go long Journeys, especially in Winter, which they carry in a Bag, after exposing them to the Frost; and they make pretty good Soop of them, boiling them over again in Water.

Their usual Drink is Tea: they have a black fort of it which they prepare with Milk, Salt and Butter, eating Bread with it when they

have any.

Habits of the Men.

The Mens Habits differ very little from those of the Tatars; they fall down to the Calves of their Legs, having Sleeves very wide towards the Shoulders, and close about the Elbow, and they wear Girdles like the Poles.

Of the Wo-

The Habit of the Women are exactly the fame with the Mens, and are commonly quitted with Cotton: They wear Bobs in their Ears a Quarter of a Yard long, falling often as low as their Shoulders: They part and twift their Hair in Tresses, which they lengthen with black Ribbons, embroider'd with Gold or Silver, and with

with great Taffels of Silk and Silver which hang down to their Heels; three other Tufts of a less fize cover their Breasts. They wear Necklaces adorn'd with Pearls, small pieces of Coin, and several Baubles gilt or silver'd over, making a glittering Shew. Both Men and Women carry about them in a small piece of Leather, and in the nature of Relicks, Prayers written down, which are given them by their Priests, and which they make as great account of as the Russians do of the Cross and the Saints.

Some Women, and especially the Girls, colour their Nails with Red: This Colour which holds a long time, is drawn from an Herb, call'd in the *Buchar* Language, *Kena*: They dry it, pulverize it, mix it with powder'd Alom, and expose it in the Air twenty four Hours before

they use it.

art L

e like

thor

and

ood

boil

at to

them

7 use

eing

With

and.

OUL

hich

e of

hele

y in

ex-

ret-

ack

alt

rey

of

ds

nd

ed

2

as

11

k

h

Both Men and Women wear close Breeches and Boots of Russia Leather, very light, and without Heels or Leathern Soles; making use of Galloches or high-heel'd Slippers like the Turks when they go abroad. Both Sexes also wear the same Bonnets and Covering for the Head, only the Women, and especially the Girls dress theirs with Trinkets, small pieces of Money, and Chinese Pearls. Wives are no way to be distinguish'd from Maidens, only by a long piece of Linen which they wear under their Bonnets, and which folding round the Neck, they tie in a Knot behind, so that one end of it hangs down to the Waste.

The Country abounds in all forts of Fruits, country and in Vines: The Heat is so excessive, that fruitful.

there is no bearing it without Doors.

The Inhabitants are generally swarthy and Character black hair'd; tho there are some who are very of the Nation, handsom and well shap'd. They don't want tives,

G 2 Polite-

Ch

"a

" t

a fi

66 C

66 le

" h

" a

" h

" a

" (

" fi

" A

" ta

" he

" m

" bi

" to

" So

" ry

" pa

" an

" up

" M

" ce

" ce

" fo

" pr

" pe

" po

" ve

" ga

" ab

" ba

"

Trade.

Politeness, and are very obliging to Strangers. They are naturally greedy of Gain, and give to Trade, which they carry on to great Advantage in China, Persia, the Indies and Russa. Those who deal with them, and don't know their dexterity in Business, will be sure to be imposed on or cheated.

Money.

They have no Money but Copper Copeils, which weigh a Soletnik, or near a third part of an Ounce. When they have a great deal of Gold or Silver to receive or pay, they weight, following the Example of the Chinese and other of their Neighbours.

Language.

Their Language and Religion differ in many things from those of the Turks and the Persian, and yet resembles both of them. They have the Alcoran, which is the Old Testament of the Christians, maim'd and falsify'd in many Place. They do not attribute the composing of it to Mobammed, but to God himself, who they say communicated it to Men by means of Moses and the Prophets; but they are persuaded Mohammed made an Explanation of it, and drew a Monastrom it which they are oblig'd to receive and so low.

Their Notion of Christ. This is their Notion of Jesus Christ; "They fay, the Virgin Mary being a poor Orphan, and her Relations disagreeing about the Charge of her Education, resolved to decide it by Low They threw a Feather into a Vessel sull of Water, and, putting in every one his Finger agreed, that he to whose Finger the Feather

" should stick, so as to draw it out of the Wa" ter, should have the Maintenance of the Child, which by that means fell to Zachs

" rias's Lot; for the Feather, the funk to the Bottom, came and fasten'd to his Finger

"Whereupon her Education was adjudged to him
"He

an]

igen:

giva

dvan

Ruffia

know

to be

peiks

art of

al of

ghit,

other

many

fiam.

their

acts

Mo

COM

the

med

ora

fol-

he

and

argo Lot

10

ger He

Na

"He took the Charge on him with pleasure, and carry'd her to his House; but one time the Business of the Temple having kept him from home three Days together, and at length calling to mind he had left the Child lock'd up, that no body could come at her to help her, he ran home as fast as he could; and instead of sinding her dead, as he fear'd, he found her in health and surrounded with all sorts of Eatables, which, as she told him, God had sent her.

" Being arriv'd at fourteen, and taken for the " first time after the Manner of Women at that " Age, this holy Maid went to bathe in a Foun-" tain, which was in a great Forest; where " hearing a Voice, she was struck with Fear, and " made hafte to put on her Clothes and retreat: "but presently an Angel appear'd to her, and "told her she should become with Child of a "Son, whom he order'd her to call Isay. Ma-"ry reply'd wisely, that Lying-in would be " painful to her, never having had to do with "any Man; but the Angel having breath'd "upon her Breast, made her comprehend that " Mystery, and instructed her in what it was ne-" ceffary for her to know. In short she con-" ceiv'd from that Moment as the Angel had "foretold; and the time of her Delivery ap-" proaching, she went to hide her self for shame " in the fame Forest where the Angel had ap-" pear'd to her; and falling in labour, she sup-"ported her felf against the Trunk of a de-" cay'd Tree, and in that Condition was deli-" ver'd. At the same Instant the Trunk be-" gan to put forth Leaves, and the Country all " about to spring and stourish; and the An-" gels came, and taking the new-born Infant, " bath'd him in a Fountain, which of a sudden

"appear'd within two Paces of the Place, and then return'd him to his Mother; who, re turning to her Relations, was receiv'd by them with Curses and ill Treatment. She took it all very patiently, without giving he self the Trouble to excuse the Crime they laid to her Charge. She only desir'd her son to plead her Cause, which he did immediate ly, and intirely justify'd his Mother, explaining to them the whole Mystery of a Birth so miraculous and contrary to Nature.

"Young Isay in time became a great Pro"phet, and a Doctor of great Authority; but
"he was generally hated and perfecuted by come wery body, and especially by the great Men
"of his Time, from whom he suffer'd many
"Crosses and Vexations. They lay in wait for veral times also for his Life, tho without Success, and at length sent two considerable Per"some to rid them of him at any rate; but Got

" fons to rid them of him at any rate: but God
"frustrated so wicked a Design in the very In"stant they were going to execute it, by taking

"Is you of a sudden out of the World, and carrying him up to Heaven. More than that,
he punished the two Assessing in a singular

" he punish'd the two Assassins in a singular manner: he transform'd them one after the

" other into the Shape of Isay, and exposed them to the Fury of the People; who de-

" ceived by the Resemblance, put them to 1

" miserable Death."

Buchars Tho the Buchars have no Notion of the Subbelieve theferings of Christ, or the Mystery of our Redemp-Resurrection, yet they believe in the Resurrection and that none another Life: but they cannot be persuaded will be that any Mortal will be eternally damned. On damned the contrary they believe, that as the Demons eternally. led us into Sin, so the Punishment will fall upon them.

They

Ch.

ever

conf

Dev

afte

the

ever

weig

ther

they

fere

to b

mol

the

and

Fire

the

one

Tro

Para

licit: Wo

27

in I

whe

to fa

fron

but

then

drin

the

dem

best

Peo

the

T

1

re-

by

he

her

icy

ion

te-

un-

lo

10-

but

e.

Ien

any fe-

ucer-

od

In-

ing

ar-

lat,

ilar the

fed

de-

) a

ul-

np-

and ded

On

ons

noc

ney

They believe, moreover, that at the last Day That every every thing but God will be annihilated, and thing but consequently that all Creatures, the Angels, be annihi-Devils, and Christ himself, will die; and that lated. after the Resurrection all Men, except a few of the Elect, will be purified or chaftised by Fire, every one according to his Sins, which will be weigh'd in the Balance. They believe that Eight Pathere will be eight different Paradifes (which radifes. they call Array) for the Good; and feven different Hells for the Wicked, where Sinners are to be purified by Fire, as aforefaid. That the most enormous Sinners, and those who will feel the Punishment most, are the Lyers, Cheats, and Makebates. That those who do not feel the Fire, which are the Elect, will be chosen among the Good, viz. one out of a hundred Men, and one out of a thousand Women; and this little Troop will be carried into one of the aforefaid Paradifes, where they shall enjoy all forts of Felicities, till it shall please God to create a new World instead of the present.

'Tis a Sin, according to them, to fay God is in Heaven. God, fay they, is every where, wherefore it derogates from his Omnipresence

to fay he is in any particular Place.

They have every Year a Fast of thirty Days, Fast of 30 from the 15th of July to the middle of August, Days. during which time they taste nothing all Day, but eat twice in the Night, once at Sun-set, and then again at Midnight, and are forbidden to drink any thing but Tea. The Person who in the least transgresses these Ordinances, is condemn'd out of hand, either to set at liberty the best of his Slaves, or to give a Treat to sixty People, and to suffer besides 85 Strokes, which the Aguns, or great Priest, causes them to receive on the bare Back with a thick Leathern

C

pr

gi

Re

pla

wh

H

zes

to

Da

Cal

ver farr

ny

dift

W

in

Con

fam

hon

Eve

pref

dow

her

toge

the

ality

Shar

Day

theu

ofter

rema

that

all t

S

Strap, which they call Dura. Yet I have oh ferved that the common People do not equal observe this Fast, and that Workmen especially are allow'd to eat in the day time.

Pray five times aday.

They say Prayers five times a-day, 1st be fore Morning, 2d towards Noon, and a after Noon, 4th at Sun set, 5th in the third Hour of the Night: To which their Abis, 1 kind of Priests, give the Signal.

Those who know how to read and explain Books are in great esteem with them, and are call'd Mula*, which fignifies a famous and men-

torious Man.

The Buchar Women are reckon'd impure for forty Days after their Delivery, and dare not h much as pray to God all that time. The Chil is named the third Day after its Birth by the Father, or some of the nearest Relations, who at the same time make him a Present of a Bonnet or a piece of Linnen, and sometimes of a Coat, if they can afford it. They are circumcised at seven, eight, or nine Years of age, when the Father usually feasts his Friends.

Buchars

The Buchars buy their Wives, paying accor-Marriages.ding as they are more or less handsom; so that the furest way to be rich is to have many Daughters. The Persons to be married are forbidden to see or speak to each other, from the time of their Contract till the Day of the Nuptials, which they celebrate for three Days with feafing, as they do their three great annual Feats. The Evening before the Wedding, a Company of young Girls meet at the Bride's House, and divert themselves till midnight in Playing Dancing, and Singing. Next Morning the Guests assemble at the Bride's, and help her to

> [Or Mulha, which is the common Name among Moham. medans, for a Doctor of their Law.] pre

arti

ob.

Ually

23

t be

third

bis, 1

plain

are

neri-

e for

ot fo

hild

the

who

Bon-

of a

um-

age,

cor-

that

gh-

den

ime

als,

aft-

uts.

any

and

ng)

the

to

m.

re.

prepare for the Ceremony; after which they give notice to the Bridegroom, who arrives foon after accompany'd by ten or twelve of his Relations or Friends, and follow'd by fome playing on Flutes, and an Abis, who fings while he beats two little Timbals.

When the Bridegroom is come, he makes a Horse-Race, after which he distributes the Prizes, which are six, eight, or twelve, according to the Ability of the Couple, consisting in Damasks, Zibelins, and Fox-Skins, in Kitaik Callico, or in such like Goods. The Feast given at the Circumcision of Children is of the same kind.

They don't fee each other while the Ceremony of Marriage is performing, answering at a distance to the Questions ask'd by the Priest. When it is over, the Bridegroom returns home in the fame order he went, and entertains his Company. After Dinner he returns with the same Train to the Bride's, and obtains the Liberty of speaking to her; after which he goes home again, and returns to the Bride's in the Evening. He then finds her in Bed, and in presence of all the Women he lays himself down in his Clothes, and but for a Moment, by her fide. The same Farce is acted for three Days together, and 'tis not till the third Night that the Man is intitled to lie with his Spouse in reality and without Witnesses; it would be a Shame for him to wait longer, and the fourth Day he carries her home.

Some of these Husbands, however, make it in their Bargain to continue some time longer, and often a Year with their Parents, the Woman remaining so long with hers; but if she dies in that time without Children, her Parents possess all that her Husband gave her, unless at the

End

Little Bucharia or Cashgar, &c. Part 484

End of the Year of Mourning they are gens

rous enough to return him half.

Polygamy. Polygamy is look'd upon as a fort of Sa by the Buchars, but is never punish'd; so the

Divores. some have ten Wives or more. Any Husband may at his pleasure send back his Wife, letting her carry with her whatever he gave her during their Marriage. And the Woman if the has a mind, may separate herself from her Husband but then she can't take the least thing with he that belongs to her.

How they cure Di-

stempers.

When a Buchar falls fick, the Remedy is this; a Mula reads to him a Passage out of some Book, breathes upon him feveral times, and with a very sharp Knife makes several Flourishes over and on the fide of the Patient's Face. They imagine that by this Operation they cut the Root of the Distemper, which they also say is

caus'd by the Devil.

In short, if it happens that a Buchar die, Burial. a Priest lays the Coran upon his Breast, and recites some Prayers. After which they carry the Dead to the Grave, which they commonly choose in some pleasant Wood, and afterwards inclose it with a Hedge or kind of Pallifade.

CHAP.

With Limit will love Child

Cha

Al

Its I

or B

Grea

Gran

Tis

Sout

Nor

of N

Han

prop

Conta

not f

Cour

that mini the I they Hum pend fure t how 1

Th tiff o veren

Pope

T

ut [

Sin

that band tting

tring las a

and.

her

this;

ome

with

over

hey

the

y is

lies,

10-

car-

om-

and

of

P.

PROCE CO.

reffer T

CHAP. V.

A Description of TANGUT, subject to the Callmaks.

Kingdom of Tangot

SECT. I two stri to stated

Its Extent, Government of the Dalai Lama, and and the start bis Religion. Arrow onothe mode their Sovereign

HE Kingdom of Tangut has, at present, Tangus. China to the East, the Kingdom of Ava -thun's or Brama to the South, the Dominions of the Great Mogul to the West, and those of Contails Grand Chan of the Callmaks to the North. Tis divided into two Parts, of which the Southern is properly call'd Tangut, and the Tibet Northern Tibet.

This Kingdom, which extends from the 308 of North Lat. to the 38°, is at prefent in the Hands of the Callmaks; and tho it makes properly the Patrimony of the Dalai Lama, Contailb, as Grand Chan of the Callmaks, does not fail to keep a kind of Superiority over the Country; and in this Quality he takes care that the [two Callmak] Chans, who have the Administration in Temporals in the Dominions of the Dalai Lama, do not abuse the Power which they have in their Hands. And whenever the Humour takes them to render themselves independent, which happens pretty often, they are fure to find Contails in their Road, who knows how to bring them to their Duty.

The Dalai Lama, who is the Sovereign Pon-Dalai Latiff of all the Pagan Tatars, and is as much re-ma. verenc'd, among the Callmaks and Mongals, as the Pope is among the Papifts, has his Residence a-

ch.

or 1

ners

biou

with

Wa

Fing

Bear

The

Cora

hey

ng

The

inde

ame

Bon

the !

T

temp

tend

ieve

to er

As t

orm

Chris

Rom

to the

nave

that I

that which

Peop

it is n

by for

on th

Dalai

Nesto

T

Potala.

bout the 32° of Lat. to the South of the Da fart of Shamo or Goby, as it is call'd at prefent towards the Frontiers of China, near the Town of Potala, in a Convent which is fittrate unon the Top of a very high Mountain, at the Foot of which inhabit above 20000 Lamas or Pagan Priefts of his own Religion, who dwell in feveral Circles about that Mountain, according a the Rank and Dignities which they possess render them more worthy to approach the Person of

their Sovereign Pontiff.

Presides only in Si rituals.

The Dalai Lama does not meddle in any for with the Temporality of his Dominions, nether does he fuffer any of his Lamas to medde with it, putting them under the Government of two Chans of the Callmaks, who are to fumili him from time to time with whatever he shall have occasion, for the Maintenance of his Fall * When he has any political Affairst transact, 'tis the Deva (who is a fort of Plenipotentiary) who acts under his Orders. I don't

Prete Gehan or Prester John.

Tis this fame Dalai Lama who has been all along, to this present time, call'd Prete Geban and by Corruption Prester John, without know ing precifely in what part of the World to place him; and it would be impossible to recite here all the ridiculous Accounts wherewith the Pub lick has been abused on this Occasion in the Ages past. The Word Lama in the Mogal Language fignifies a Prieft, and Dalai a val Extent, or the Ocean, just as the Term Gehan fignifies a vast Extent in the Language of the North of the Indies [rather in the Perfian;] for that Dalai Lama is as much as to fay, the univerfal Priest? He pretends to Divinity, and passes in the Opinion of those of his Worship frenc'd among the Calback and Mongals, as the

Pope is among the Papiff sirahuod al booms ai soo

and Man-

gals.

or immortal, in which the Simplicity of Manners among those Nations, gives great room to pious Frauds to play their Tricks very eafily.

The Lamas go habited in long yellow Robes Habit of with great Sleeves, which they bind about their the Lames, Waste with a Girdle of the same Colour two Fingers broad. They have the Head and Beard shaved very close, and wear yellow Hats. They always carry a great Pair of Beads of Coral or yellow Amber in their Hands, which hey turn incessantly between their Fingers, sayng Prayers to themselves after their manner. They make a Vow of Chastity, and have Nuns inder the fame Vow, and very nearly of the ame Habiliment, excepting that they wear Bonnets edg'd with Fur, instead of Hats which

the Lamas wear.

el)

De-

ent

WI

TOL

Oot

gan

Ve-

as

der

of

ot a

dle

O ith

12

122

to.

00-1

all

any

W. ice

ere

ıb.

the!

gat

aft

101

the

fo

ne

nd ip,

10

The Lamas are great Sticklers for the Me-Pythagoempsychosis; but those among them who pre-reans. tend to know more than the others, do not beieve that the Soul passes really out of one Body o enter into another; but only its Faculties. As their Worship appears to have much Con-originally formity, as to outward Discipline, with the Christians. Christian Religion, and in particular with the Romish Church, 'tis pretended it owes its Origin to the Nestorian Missionaries, who are known to ave extended very far their Conversions on that side in the Reign of Charles the Great; and hat by length of Time, and the great Wars which have happen'd fince then among those People, Christianity has been so disfigur'd, that t is not without great difficulty to be discovered by some faint Marks which still remain. To carry on this Supposition it may be also said, that the Palai Lama owes his Establishment to the Nestorian Patriarch.

1.11

Al

inty e L

eir :

al I

fenc

nat

ama.

ntel urfe

ve l

that

ore 1 tuch

unica

iat 1

ore t

ne ho

Vie

their

rtue 1

Ifhal

man (

s'd th

y to

coursi

ligion

eiving

Kutu

a Q

not b

ld not

well I

ich he

ach, Ł

of for

urch re cy of F

OL.

[Allowing the Conformity in the exterior Part of the Worship of the Lamas may give fome room to the Supposition that it was one Christian, I think its Degeneracy may be far ther accounted for, by supposing the Nestoria Missionaries of those Ages passed into the Countries with the fame View that the Jesuin Missionaries of these Ages travel into China and that by temporizing as the Jesuits have done, they, instead of giving the Tatars the Christian Religion, by degrees took theirs all the effential Parts of it. 1

Dalai La-I could have wish'd to have been able to inma fovereign Pon-form the Reader more fully in this place as w tiff of the the Doctrine of a Religion fo little known w gals.

not know to them.

Callmaks this Day; but mauger all the Pains I have to and Mun-ken to that purpose, I have not been able to find Persons capable of informing me thorowly: for the Callmaks and Mungals live in the greated ignorance of it imaginable; and as all the faced Books in a Books of their Religion are written in the La guage of Tangut, which all the Mungals, and those of the Callmaks who dwell towards in Frontiers of Siberia, are intirely ignorant of they depend wholly, with regard to divine Waship, upon what the Lamas are willing to the them, much like as most of our Roman Ca tholick of the old Times do: Whence comes, that question them how you will upon the Articles of their Religion, you can get m thing from 'em concerning it, but what is ver trifling; which join'd to certain Ceremonies the same Nature, is almost all they know of themselves; and the Lamas, for their Part make so many Mysteries of what regards the Worship, that one has much ado to get an thing out of them.

Lamas conceal their Religion.

All

いるは山

88年

ta-

W

rly:

itel

cred

and

the

t of

Nor-

tel

Ca-

ce t

upon

no-

very

es d

of i

arts

then

any

All

All then which can be advanced with any cera Some Prininty upon this Subject, is in general this, that tiples of e Lamas teach and practife well enough after their Relieir manner the fundamental Rule of all ratial Religion, which confifts in honouring God, fending no body, and giving to every one hat belongs to him. The Life which the amas as well as the Callmaks lead, proves inntestably the two last Points, and the Difurles which some Travellers worthy of Credit ve had with them touching Religion, affure that they protest strenuously against adoring ore than one God: That the Dalai Lama or Adore but tuchta are his Servants, with whom he com-one God. micates for the Instruction and Good of Men: at the Images which they honour are no Images onore than Representations of the Divinity, and by for Comne holy Men; and that they expose them to memorati-View of People, only to put them in mind their Duty towards God, and the Acts of tue which he is pleased to perform. I shall add to this, That one of my good story of a man Catholick Friends, who fome Years ago Romanist s'd thro' the Country of the Mungals in the Lama. to China, having had an Opportunity of toursing with some of the Lamas about their igion, began to reproach them for fo cruelly kiving the Vulgar, by making them believe Kutuchta and the Dalai Lama are immora Quality which they could not be ignorant not belong to human Creatures, fuch as they Id not deny those two to be; but they knew well how to turn the Shame upon himself th he intended to give them by that ReabsubnA ach, by putting him in mind very dexterouf-Secret reserves .todiT of some delicate Doctrines of the Roman .h 3956 uch relating to the Infallibility and Suprey of Popes, that he affured me he had need OL. II. H of

Č

th

W

wi ti

fre

Sp

thi

qui age the

the

fev

the

niy

[

tion

dail

Vin

to b

Of th

Tatar

Time feeing

Chine

and I

Mungo

* L'

have written concerning the Religion of Lamas; but all that I have read hitherto has pear'd to me very romantick: At least, la fure, the Author of the pretended Letter of ther Anthony Andrada the Jesuit, upon the profent State of Tibet, and the Religion of the mas, printed at Paris 1629, with the Permisso of the Society, and dedicated to the General

Reasons why we know fo

Just Reproach on Discoverers.

Letter of Andrada concerning Tibet, forg'd.

马号号号号

2

ution s bu

S 211

thon

d de asser

of Fa

ralo

the Jestits, never was in Tibet; seeing all he His Acwrites agrees so little with the certain Accounts count tawhich we have at present of that Country, that Rubrutis easy to perceive that Relation never came quis.
from the Pen of one who was actually upon the
Spot. And with regard to what he reports concerning the Worship of the Lamas, it is no other
than the very Account which William de Rubraquis, a Cordelier, had given us above 400 Years
ago, of certain Religious among the Tatars, which
the Author of the aforesaid Letter has digested
the best he could, and which he has set off with
several Particulars after his manner, to give it
the greater Appearance of Truth. I shall give
my Opinion of Rubruquis essewhere.

[Of this Stamp I reckon is that Paffage mention'd in a late Treatile *, that the Dalay Lama is daily ferv'd with a little Meal mixt up with Vinegar, and a Dish of Tea, which he is oblig'd to be content with as his whole Subfiftence.]

SECT. II.

Of the Towns of Tangut, and the great Defart of Shamo, or Goby.

We have no Knowledge at present of a Town Gurgut of the Name of Gurgut throughout Grand as present Tatary, tho it must have existed even in the not sime of Zingis Chan. Which is not surprizing, seeing by the long and cruel Wars which the Chinese have had in times past with the Tatars, and lastly the Tatars, viz. the Callmaks and Mungals, among themselves, all the Towns of

^{*} L'Etat de la Boucharia, p. 31.

Ch

tho

Lit

tru

as t

mer

are

be f

WOU

for

and

but

a De

tiers

try (

most

kin,

from

must

whic

but t

Place

25 01

Al

but a

mann

ces, 1

par'd.

nicati

to the

of the

of Lat

the F

toward

Provin

Wall.

T

Grand Tatary about the Frontiers of China have been utterly destroy'd; and it appears plaine nough by the Heaps of Ruins which one meet with every where on that side, the Number of which is very confiderable. But as on the one hand the Chinese have found their Account in the Destruction of those Towns, because they defire no better than to remove fuch troubleform Neighbours from their Frontiers; and that on the other hand the Mungals and Callmaks prefer their Ancestors Custom of living in Tents in the Convenience of Towns, no body has thought of rebuilding them: and if at present one finds fome upon the Frontiers, they are new Towns built by the Mungals since they have made themselves Masters of China.

The same

Tis the same Town which our Authorcals Zinu, as tis easy to see by what he says, p. 161. At present we know no Town of that Name throughout all the North of Asia; nevertheless we may conclude in some measure by the Circumstances which our Author relates in that Place, and by what he says, p. 44, and 14, that this Town must have been situate some where in Tangut, towards the Frontiers of China, to the South of the Desarts of Goby; and we know for certain that the Air of that Country is exceeding dangerous to those who are not used to it.

Akashin Çashin. The City of Akashin [by others called Cashin ought to be situate somewhere in the Kingdom of Tangut towards the Frontiers of the Indicast but we know not at present any Town of the Name in those Parts: which makes me believe it may likely have chang'd its Name since the Callmaks have possessed themselves of that Kingdom.

The growth of the contract

The Defarts of Shamo, or Goby, which are Defarts of those meant, p. 182. bound the East side of the Shamo or Goby.

Little Bucharia, and these are indeed the only the only true Defarts to be found in Grand Tatary; for Desarts in as to the Desart of Lop, which the Maps for-Grand Tamerly placed to the North of that Country, we tary are fully convinced at present they are only to be found among the imaginary kind, unless one would take the finest Pasturages in the World for Desarts, because he sees there no Towns, and that they want good Water in some Parts; but by that Rule all Grand Tatary must pass for a Desart.

The Defarts of Goby cover the Western Fron-Their tiers of China from the farther end of the Country of Tangut towards the 32 Deg. of Lat. almost as far as to the North of the City of Pelin, about the 43d Deg. of Lat. so that to go from this last Town to that of Selinkinskoy, one must pass along the North-end of these Desarts, which are not less than 300 Leagues in length; but their breadth is very unequal, for in some Places they are above 60 Leagues, in others

25 or 30.

All this great Extent of Country is nothing Confist of but a black and dry Sand, which produces no a black manner of thing except in three different Pla-dry Sand. ces, which Nature seems of it self to have prepar'd, in order to open on that side a Communication for China with the Countries which lie to the West of it. Of these Passages there is one towards the 42 Deg. of Lat. to the W.N.W. 3 Passages of the City of Pekin; another about the 38 Deg. cross of Lat. to the East of the Town of Chamill on she Describe Frontiers of Tibet; and the most Southern towards the 35 Deg. of Lat. to the West of the Province of Kiensi, and at the end of the great Wall.

Thefe

H 3

on on ore-

s to

t[

ave

16

eets

of

one

tin

hey

ght one new

ave

161. ame eleis

um-

this re in

the v for

eed-

(bin)

dies that

lieve e the

ing

Th

Ct

riv

na,

Ro

tha

die

of .

und

are

vin

que

the

fort

the

there

rians

East

but t

all th

Bran

Gran

know

the T

Chan

Nam

TI

Good Wa-

No Paffage

fart.

Full of

leys.

nor is there lack of good Water also; but our of these three Passages it is impossible to cross those Desarts, unless one be well acquainted with the Places, and be provided of all thing necessary for the Subsistence of Man and Real even of Water and Grass: as appears by what

we are going to relate. It must be observ'd, that to go from the

Grand Tatary by the Kingdom of Tangut, to between India and those of Tunkin, Pegu, and other neighbouring China but Dominions of the Indies, one must coast along by the fide of this De- either the Borders of China or those of the Do minions of the Great Mogul; for 'tis impossible to pass thro' the middle of the Country, because of the great fandy Defarts which possess the middle Parts of that Kingdom, and which extend themselves from the Frontiers of the Kingdom of Ava, to a great way beyond the Northen Bound of the Kingdom of Tangut. Whence it is, that the Subjects of the Dominions of the Great Mogul have had in a manner no Commerce to this Day with the Chinese, both the one and the other being obliged to go a valt wi about to the South, and with unipeakable Far tigues to cross over the Mountains of Ava be fore they can trade together; which is so ver certain, that one of the principal Omrabs of the Court of the Great Mogul, who was fallen into Difgrace with his Master, having undertaken fome Years ago to retire to Ching across these

Defarts with a Train of thirty Persons, there are

Mountains of Ava.

Sindl

44

y fo

Tom

Oup-

ll of ings

aits,

100

TOS

nted

ings aft

hat

the to

ing

ble

ufe

id-

om ern e it

m-

72Y

)e-

en

rivid with him but three on the Borders of China, all the rest of his Men having died on the Road of Hunger and Thirst. Of these sour that survived, the Master himself and one more died a sew days after his Arrival in the Province of Kiensi, of the great Fatigues which he had undergone in that Passage; but if the Chinese Chamill are able to maintain the Possession of the Pro- and Turismines of Chamill and Tursan, which they conquered quer'd some Years since from the Grand Chan of by Chithe Callmaks, they will be in a Capacity hence-nese forth to carry on a better Correspondence with the Great Mogul.

MATERIAL CONCOR

CHAP. VI.

Some ACCOUNT of CARA-KITAY.

MANY of our Modern Historians pre-Caratend to place Cara-Kitay, of which Kitay. there is so much spoken in the Oriental Historians who have treated of the People farthest Eastward, to the North of the great River Amur, but they are grossy mistaken, seeing generally all the Countries which are to the North of that Branch of Caucasus which separates Siberia from Grand Tatary, have been almost entirely unknown not only to those Historians, but also to the Tatars themselves before the Reign of Zingis Chan.

The Country then to which they give the Cara-Name of Cara-Kitay, is precisely that which is Ava the H 4 known same. known to us at present by the Name of the

496

Ch

Col

be

bet

in

Col

de

froi

and

the

for

it v

lyi

hug

Hi

pol

she

tha Pla

ma

rev

ag

tir'

ac

tled

wh

Pec

Co

was

but

ble

the

Can

owi

Kingdom of Ava, which has the Kingdom of Tangut to the North, China to the East, the Dominions of the Emperor of Pegu to the South and those of the Great Mogul to the West, Our Author explains himself intelligibly enough thereupon, p. 15, where he fays, that Gara Kitay is inhabited by People as black as the Indians, who dwell about the Lake Mobill be tween Kitay and the Indies, drawing to the South and this Name also of the Country verifies the Description which is given of it in that Place: for as it joined and was subject to the Empire of Kitay, and that its Inhabitants were very much Sun-burnt, as they are at this Day, (whereas those of Kitay, at least in the Northern Provinces of that Empire which border on the Tatar, were white) they gave it the Name of Cara-Kitay, or Black China.

Long subject to China.

Lake Mohil.

5

The Lake Mobil, which our Author mentions on this Occasion, is the same which our modern Geographers call the Lake Giammai, or Koko Nor, and which the Callmaks of Tangul call at present Cara-Nor.

The Chinese History agrees with our Author in this Particular, for a smuch as it never speaks of this Country, but as a State which for several Ages has been subject to the Empire of China.

[Among the modern Historians hinted at by the Editor, doubtless the Author of the History of Genghiz Chan, M. Petis le Croix the Father, is one; who is very confused in his Account of its Situation not knowing where to put it. For p. 65, he says * it extends from the Chinese Wall to the antient Mogulistan. In the same place he says, some will have the Callmaking

arr L

om of

the

outh

Our

ough

Gara-

e In-

be-

uth:

s the

ace;

e of

nuch

reas

vin-

ars.

ara-

en-

OUL

10

lor ks

by

2-

US

e

Country and Kingdom of Courge, or Corea, to be part of it; and p. 145. he seems to place it between Mogulistan and Turkestan. M. de Liste in his Map prefixt to that History, makes the Country of the Callmaks (which by the way M. de le Croix supposes to be a different People from the Calmuks) and Cara Cathay the same, and places it beyond the River Amur, which is

the Fault the Editor particularly blames.

But the these Authors may be in the wrong, for giving Cara-Kitay a Situation which removes it very far from the part of the Earth where reallyitis; yet we cannot well suppose them so hugely mistaken in this Point, without some Hints from the Oriental Authors which might possibly have led them into this Error. And to hew how possible this is, we need go no farther than our Royal Author, who tells us in the very Place where the Editor has made his Remark, that the Inhabitants of Cara Kitay having revolted against the Emperor of Kitay [or China] a great part of them left their Country and retir'd near the Kergis: who having pillag'd them [according to their Custom] they went and settled in the Country of Atill and built a Town, where by the Refort of feveral neighbouring People they made up 40000 Families.

The Difficulty will be to find out where this Country of Atill was (which I take for granted was not the Country about the Atill or Wolga, but in the East:) when that is done we shall be able to shew you in the same Place the Country of the Cara-Kitayans, tho not the proper Country of Cara-Kitay. And the Errors Historians have fallen into about placing Cara-Kitay, is probably owing to their mistaking the Country where the fugitive Cara-Kitayans settled for the true Cara-

Kitay,

Patt)

Ch

A

Of

fore

Tat

Na

boy

the of t

Tis

and

Sho

and

fula

tary

na a with

the Chin

of I

Kitay. But we ought not to be positive in Mat. ters we have yet but flender Light into.

D'Herbelot.

In the Life of Mohammed Chowarasm Shah, we find that Prince invading Cara-Knay Ku. kan, whom the Hiftorian calls Emperor of the Tatars, and taking from him Bochara, Samo. chand, and Otrar the Capital of Turkefton! and in their Turn the Cara-Kathayans invading Sul tan Mohammed. We find also Cashgar and Ca tan under Kurkan's Dominion; in there that he was posses'd of all Turkestan. By this Account one would be apt to think Cara-Kathay and Turkestan were the same Country, or at least that it border'd on Great Bucharia. But the Dif. ficulty will disappear when it comes to be obferv'd that this Cara-Kathay Chan can be not ther than Cavar Chan; who driven out of his Kingdom of Cara-Kitay by the Chan of Dard Jut, or Gurgut, conquer'd Turkestan, in the manner as related by Abulgasi Chan, p. 44. And thus People and Countries are often confounded together by the Historians not taking care w make use of the Distinctions necessary to prevent Mistakes and Confusion.

I shall examine this Matter more thorowly in my further Account of Tatary, mention'd in the Preface: and in the mean time shall only observe that it will be impossible to settle the Geography of these Countries with any Certainty, till we have a better Acquaintance with the Oriental Authors: the sew we have being mostly Abridgments, give but very slender and impossed Accounts; and after all, perhaps it will appear that the Arabs and Persians had as impersed a Notion of these Countries long after the time of Zingis Chan, as the Europeans have at present.]

CHAP.

Mat.

Kin.

the

no.

and SH CA

t hè inux

and

caft

M. 06-

10

hB

rd-

an-

nd

led

to

nt

in

hë

2-1

4.

a

af.

VIII wellof olla CHAP.

Crank Later Date

ver tot the Springs of the River

A Description of the Country of the MUNGALS, or the Eastern Part of GRAND TATARY.

SECT. I.

Of the Situation, Bounds, Extent, and natural Products.

HE Country which the Tribe of Tatars, Moungal and the divers Branches of it have hereto-the Tatars. fore possessed, is precisely that Part of Grand Tatary which is known to us at prefent by the Name of the Country of the Mungals.

That Country in its present Condition is Bounds. bounded on the East by the Oriental Sea, on the South by China, on the West by the Country of the Callmaks, and on the North by Siberia. Tis situate between the 40 and 50 Deg. of Lat. and the 110 and 150 Deg. of Longit. Its Frontiers begin about the 42 Deg. of Latit. on the Shore of the Oriental Sea to the North of Corea, and running from thence to the Welt they pass along the Mountains which separate that Peninsula from the Province of Leagtun of Grand Tatary. Afterwards they join the great Wall of Cbi-114 about the 142 Deg. of Longit, and follow it without Interruption as far as the Place where the great River of Hoang throws it self into River Ho-China across the great Wall, towards the 38 Deg. ang. of Latit. from thence turning to the N. W. they coast the Country of the Callmaks, and pass o-

287513

Ch.

of i

he

[

Hif

that

le C

Shor

ado

Ma

Ru

by 1

one

of I

I

alfo

is fo

fia 1

abo

efte

doe

mig

faith

that

if it

Rhu

the

vans

Tra that

ther Rhu

Ter

Siber

ver to the Springs of the River Jenisea; they also follow that River along the Western side of it till about the 49 Deg. of Lat. and returning afterwards to the East, they strike over to the River of Selinga above Selinginskoy; thence running continually Eastward they stretch alone the Countries depending on Siberia, and come to meet the River Amur on the South fide, 1bout the Place where the River of Albassin falls into it from the W.S.W. they follow at lat continually the Banks of that great River to in Entrance into the Oriental Sea; infomuch that the Country of the Mungals is not less than 400 German Leagues in its greatest length, and a bout 150 Leagues in its greatest breadth.

As that Country makes a very confiderable Part of the Grand Tatary, it participates also of all the Advantages and Inconveniencies which are peculiar to that vast Continent: Nevertheless because it is more mountainous than the Country of the Callmaks, it is not found to want Water and Wood so much as this last, the there are many Places in it which cannot be in habited for want of Water.

Bird Shungar, or

There are found vast Quantities of Birds of an extraordinary Beauty in the Plains of Grand To Kratzshet. tary, and the Bird spoken of, p. 86 and 37, may well be a kind of Heron, which is found in the Country of the Mungals towards the Frontiers of China, and which is all white except the Beak, the Wings and the Tail, which are of a very fine red This Bird is very delicious to the Palate, and has in some measure the Taste of our Wood Hens.

Storks.

Or it may be of a Stork that Abulgazi Chan speaks in that Place, for they are very rare all over Russia, Siberia and Grand Tatary; nevertheless, some of them are found in the Country of the Mungals, drawing near China, which for

he most part are all white.

rt [

they

de of

ning

the .

run-

long

ome

, 2-

falls

laft

) 13

that

400

14

able

o of

hich

the-

the

to

tho

ID

fan

Ta-

vell

try

na,

the

red.

ind

od-

ban

ertry of [This seems to be the same Bird called in the History of Timur-bec * Shoncur, and presented to that Hero by the Ambassadors of Capshac. M. le Croix remarks in the same Place, that the Shoncur is a Bird of Prey, presented to Kings, adorn'd with several precious Stones, which is a Mark of Homage; and that the Muscovites [Russians] as well as the Crim Tatars, are oblig'd by their last Treaty with the Ottomans, to send one every Year, adorn'd with a certain Number of Diamonds, to the Port.]

In the Parts about the River Orchon, and Rhubarb: also the Selinga towards Selinginskoy, Rhubarb is found in great Abundance, and all that Ruffia furnishes foreign Countries with comes from about Selinginskoy. As this Root is very much esteemed in Europe, the Treasury of Siberia does not fail to feize that Commerce, which might be very advantageous to Russia were it faithfully manag'd; for I know not any Country that it comes from at present but Rusha; and if it came formerly from China, it was of that Rhubarb which had been carry'd thither from the Country of the Mungals, because the Caravans of Siberia in former times carry'd on some Trade with that Root at Pekin: but at present that the Europeans have it directly from Russia, there comes no more of it by the way of China. Rhubarb grows in fo great Abundance in the Territory of Selinginskoy, that the Treasury of Siberia sells 25000 Pounds of it at a time.

^{*} Pag. 350.

Ch,

Calline line

Co

who of C

abo Fu

abo

Sel

wa

and

A

at

fre

lig

ga

W

th

th

th

t

SECT. H.

Of the Mogule, or Mungals, both of the East and West; their Manners, Customs, Government, Religion, Sec.

Origin.

THE Tribe of the Moguls [including under that Name the Callmaks as well as the Mungals] which in the end brought under all the other Tribes of the Turkish Nation, takes in Name from Mogul or Mung'l Chan, mention'd Pag. 7 and 9, according to the Tradition of the Tatars [or rather of the Mohammedan Tatars, for we know not what Account the Heather Tatars and the Mungals give of themselves] the Great Mogul of India glories at present in bearing the Name of Mogul, because as descending from Tamerlane he pretends to be sprung from this Tribe.

Mungal, the true Name. [It should seem that Mungal or Mung's is the true Name, since it is still retained by the Mungals, who together with the Callmaks are the Descendants of the Moguls, (who made such a Figure in the Time of Zingis Chan and his successors,) and the other Tribes subdued by them, to whom they gave their Name.]

Shape.

The Mungals in general are of a middle Size, but strongly set; their Faces are very large and stat; their Complexion Sun-burnt; their Note stat, but their Eyes are black and full. Their Hair is black, and strong as Horse-hair; they commonly cut it pretty close to the Head, preserving only a Tust at the top, which they set grow the natural length of their Hair. They have very little Beard, and wear very large Shirts and Calico Drawers: Their Habits reach as low as their Ancles, and are commonly made of Cali-

Calico, or some other slight Stuff, which they

line with Sheep-Skin.

Eaf

mder

s the

the

s its

on'd

the

tars,

then

the

ear-

ing

om

the

WI-

the

2

IC-

The Mungals, who, at present inhabit this Country, are the Descendants of those Moguls, Mungals, who after having been above an Agein Possession their Deof China, were driven out thence by the Chinese seems. about the Year 1368. And as one part of these Fugitives having fled Westward, went and settled about the Springs of the Rivers Jenisea and Selinga; and the other Part having retired Eastward, and to the Province of Leaotun, went and inhabited between China and the River Amur, towards the Oriental Sea. There are at present two forts of Mungals, very different Two forts from each other as well in Language and Re- of Munligion as in Customs and Manners, viz. the Mun-gals. gals of the West call'd also the Calcha Mungals. which inhabit from the River Jenisea to about the 134° of Longitude; and the Mungals of the East or Nieuchien Mungals, who dwell from the 134° of Longitude as far as the Coasts of the Oriental Sea.

The Mungals of the East.

The Mungals of the East live mostly by Hus-Mungals bandry, and resemble in all things the Mungals of the East. of the West, excepting that they are fairer, especially the Female Sex, among whom there are many to be found who might pass for fine

Women in any Country.

Most of the Mungals of the East have six'd Habitations, they have also Towns and Villages, and are every way more civiliz'd than the rest No Religion of the Mungals and Callmaks. They have lit-on among the or no Religion, and are Followers neither of the Worship of the Dalai Lama, nor of the Chinese; but the little Religion which they have seems to be a Mixture of those two Worships, which is in a manner reduced to some nocturnal

Cere-

Ch.

Furi

Wo

that

gene

little

T

the

they

ver

Nei

be f

or l

the

Ho

nera

not

Call

exce

of t

that

near

bet

one

of i

Tai

wha

Swi

Tea

Cot

vera

wha

cha

not

as i

1

1

than Religion.

Their Language is a Mixture of the Chinele Language. and the antient Mogul Language, which has scarce any manner of Connexion with that of

the Moguls of the West.

They are descended almost wholly from those Mungals of the East fugitive Moguls of China who escaped by the whence de- Province of Leastun, and who finding that End scended.

of their Country almost defart, settled there of their own accord, to be nearer at hand to obferve what passed in China. And as the voluptuous Life of the Chinese, to which they had been long fince accustom'd, had degenerated them too much, to refume the simple and poor way of living of their Ancestors; they set themfelves to build Towns and Villages, and to cultivate the Lands by the Example of the Chinese: omitting, in short, nothing which might ferve to make them forget the Lofs they had, till Time and Fortune should give them an Opportunity of recovering the Possession of so fine an Empire. And that Opportunity did not fail to come at last; for they were these very fame Mungals of the East, which are commonly call'd Nieucheu Mungals, who are at this time again in Possession of China, and have known fo well how to fecure their Footing therein for almost an Age since they have return'd thither, that 'tis like the Chinese will not drive them out so easily henceforward as they did the first time.

Habit.

The Mungals of the West wear sometimes entire Garments of Sheep Skins: they fatten these Garments about the Loins with great Leather Straps. Their Boots are very large, and usually made of Russian Leather. Their Bonnets are small and round, with a Border of Ch. VII. the Country of the Mungals.

505 Furr four Fingers broad. The Habits of the Womens Women are very near the same, excepting dress. that their Garments are longer; their Boots generally red, and their Bonnets flat, with some little Ornaments.

The Arms of the Mungals confift in the Pike, Arms. the Bow and Arrows, and the Sabre; which they wear after the Chinese manner. They never go to War but on Horseback, like their Neighbours the Callmaks; but 'tis well if they

be fuch good Soldiers as thefe laft.

T.

raft

nese

has

of

Ofe

the

nd

of

b-

IP-

ad

ed

or

n-

ıl-

n-

ht

0

t

The Mungals of the West dwell under Tents Dwellings. or little moving Houses, and live altogether on the Produce of their Cattle; which confift in Diet. Horses, Camels, Cows, and Sheep, that are generally very good in their Kind; but they are not to be compared with the Cattle of the Cattle. Callmaks neither for Appearance nor Goodness, except their Sheep: which furpass almost those of the Callmaks, and have this peculiar to them, that they have Tails about two Spans long, and near as much in compass, weighing commonly between ten and eleven Pounds. It is almost one intire piece of very rank Fat, the Bone of it not being larger than the Bone of the Tail of our Sheep: They breed no Beafts but what eat Grass, and above all things abhor Swine.

The petty Merchants of China refort to them Commerce in great Numbers, bringing them Rice, Buy Tea, which they call Cara Tzcbay, Tobacco, Cotton-Cloth, and other ordinary Stuffs, several forts of Houshold Utenfils, and, in short, whatever they stand in need of, which they exchange with them for Cattle; for they know not the Use of Money.

They all obey one Chan, who was heretofore Govern: as it were the Grand Chan of all the Mungals; ment. VOL. II, but-

Ch

ect

fi

elv

he

And

ho

he

ati

o l

no

f t

lw:

vitl

of o

Blo

1

cen

rera

Qua

hei

ind

com

whi

To.

he

mea

atte

obli

of t

ake

which

foun

care

but since the Mungals of the East have possess. China, he is much fallen from his former Gradure; nevertheless he is still very powers being able with ease to bring into the Fields or 60000 Horse.

Chan of the West Mungals.

The Prince who reigns at present over the Mungals of the West is call'd Tushidu Cha he has his Abode towards the 47° of Latitud upon the Banks of the River Orchon; and the Place where he usually encamps is call'd Um and is twelve Days Journey to the South Fall of Selinginskoy. Several petty Chans who dwd about the Springs of the River Jenisea and the Defarts of Goby, are tributary to him; and tho he has put himself under the Protection of China, to be in a better Condition to make head against the Callmaks, that Submissionist the Bottom but a precarious and honorar Submiffion obtain'd of his Father by the la trigues of the Lamas; for far from paying the least Tribute to the Emperor of China, the passes not a Year without the Emperor of China fending him magnificent Presents: and the Court of Pekin, which is otherwise at custom'd to treat the People who are tributan to it very rudely, behaves upon all Occasions with fo much Complaifance towards that Print, that 'tis plain to be feen it fears him more than any other of its Neighbours. And its not without reason; for if he should ever takes fancy to come to an Agreement with the Calmaks, to the Cost of China, the Family which reigns at prefent in that Empire, would have enough to do to keep themselves firm on the Throne.

Several In- They had formerly besides him [of Ula] stependent veral other petty Chans, who the much less considerable, yet preserved themselves in a performerly.

art I

field

Gra

erfal

do

er the

Chm

itude

d the

Est.

dwell

dthe

and on of

make

is at

1

g the there

r of

and

ac-

Itary

fions

ince,

nore

ke a

Call

hich

have

the

les

perfect ect Independency of him; but fince the Chans of Ula have been happy enough to posses themelves of China, they have intirely reduced all he Mungals of the East under their Obedience. And if there are still any of the Descendents of hose petty Princes to be found who retain he Title of Chan, 'tis no more than a small satisfaction which the Court of Pekin is willing to leave them; for at the Bottom they are no more than Slaves to the Will of the Emperor of China: besides, one may observe that they dways detain the most considerable of theme with their Families at the Court, under Pretence of doing them Honour as being Princes of the Blood.

The Mungals of the West are properly de-Mungals of cended from the Tribe of the Tatars, and fe-the West. reral other Tunkish Tribes establish'd in those Quarters, whom the Moguls reduced under Descent. heir Obedience in the Reign of Zingis Chan, nd who obtain'd the Glory at length of being comprehended under the Name of the Moculs. which that Prince had render'd so illustrious. To these afterwards join'd themselves those of he fugitive Moguls from China, who found means to escape by the West; and as these atter were the less numerous, they were bliged to return to the manner of Living of their Ancestors, which they had quite forlaken amidst the Delicacies of China, and which the other Moguls or Mungals whom they found already fettled in those Parts thad always carefully preserved.

SECT.

I 2

bi

P

he et

act

iffi

Tea

ere

her

ort

gai

hou

wee

ucce

T

Dala

neve:

he C

Lam

Neig

inga

bidtu

H

ber (

ne rei

ill Pa

Road,

Fees.

and of

who d

the Be

on th

Beads,

SECT.

The Religion of the Mungals of the West, and particularly of the Kutuchta, their High Print or Pope.

THE Mungals of the East, as is observed before, have no Religion at all: As for those of the West, they keep to the Worling of the Dalai Lama, altho they have a gree Priest of their own call'd Kutuchta: In short there is very little difference in any respect to tween them and the Callmaks.]

Kutuchta,

The Kutuchta was wont heretofore to the camp in Summer about Nerzinskoy and the Banks of the River Amur, but fince the Rule ans have establish'd themselves in those Que ters, he passes no more beyond Selinginko, keeping at present about the River Orchon.

Formerly Subdele-Dalai La-

He was formerly a Subdelegate of the Dale Lama of the Mungals and Callmaks of the gate of the North, for the Administration of the faced Ceremonies of his Worship in those Parts too remote from his usual Residence; but what he had once tafted the Sweets of spiritual Command, he would no longer depend upon the Dalai Lama, having found it convenient deify and immortalize himself at the Expent of his antient Master; which he has perform with fo much address, that there is almost " mention at present of the Dalai Lama among the Mungals, and the Authority of the le tuchta is fo well establish'd there among it People at this time, that whoever durst doubt of his Divinity, at least of his Immortality, would be had in abhorrence by all that Na tion.

It is true, that the Policy of the Court of Difference bina has had a great hand in this new-invented fomented potheosis; for pursuant to the Design it was Emperor of ngag'd in, to flick at nothing to embroil fo ef-China. ctually the Mungals and the Callmaks, that here should remain no hope of Reconciliation etween those two People, it found that so long s the spiritual Ties held both of them atach'd to the fame head of Religion, it would be ifficult to bring it about; forafmuch as that Head would be always induced for its own Inerest to endeavour a Reconciliation between hem; wherefore it embrac'd with Joy the Oportunity of supporting under-hand the Kutuchta gainst the Dalai Lama, to the end that Schism hould cut off intirely all Communication beween those two Nations, which in effect has not ucceeded ill.

The Kutuchta has no fixt Dwelling like the No fixt Dalai Lama, but he incamps here and there; Dwelling. evertheless he enters no more on the Lands of the Callmaks since the Separation from the Dalai Lama; and he keeps usually at present in the Neighbourhood of the River Orchon, and Seinga: He also incamps often at Urga with Tubidiu Chan.

He is always furrounded with a great Num-Astenber of Lamas and arm'd Mungals; and when dants.
he removes his Camp, the Mungals flock from
all Parts with their Families to meet him on the
Road, and receive his Benediction, paying the
Fees. There are none but the Heads of Tribes
and other Persons of Distinction among them,
who dare approach near him; and he gives them
the Benediction, by applying his Hand shut upon the Forehead, holding therein a Pair of
Beads, after the usual manner of the Lamas.

art !

Prist

crval

s for

orship

great

hort,

t be

en-

the

Ruff.

Luar.

Dalai the

and

t3 28

vhen

om-

此

t to

ence

m'd

10

CIN

Kr.

the

yubt

ity,

Na-

lt

Part

Ch.

Pro

erv

na,

mag

nare

Tesi

that

Yea

in C

the

of

 M_2

all

gav

Ma

hav

acci

finc

Vaf

tuch

rati

wit

Em

amp

of t

perc

befo

the

as a

with

With

fom

hoor

Env

veneration The Vulgar among the Mungals, belle of the Peo-that he grows old as the Moon declines, a prows young again with the new Moon, in which

grows young again with the new Moon, in wh the pious Frauds don't fail to play their u Game. When he shews himself to the Peop on great days of their facred Ceremonies. appears with the Sound of certain Instrument refembling our Trumpets and Cymbals, under magnificent Canopy, cover'd with a fine Pro of China Velvet, and having all the Foreopen. He feats himself under this Pavilion a Place rais'd upon a great Velvet Cushion col leg'd, after the Tatar Fashion, having on en fide of him a Figure representing the Divinity and the other Lamas of Distinction are seated both fides the Floor on Cushions, from the Plan where he fits, to the Entrance of the Pavilla holding each a Book in his hand, wherein the read to themselves: When the Kutuchta is se ed, the Instruments cease, and all the People who are affembled before the Pavilion profin themselves on the Earth, making certain Ex mations to the Glory of the Divinity, and praise of the Kutuchta; afterwards some Land bring Cenfers, wherein they put odorifer Herbs, and Incense first of all the Represent tions of the Divinity, then the Kutuchta, a afterwards all the People. Then having the Censers at the Feet of the Kutuchta, the fetch feveral Porcelain Bowls with Liquors, at things done with Sugar, feven of which they before each Representation of the Divinity, and seven others before the Kutuchta; who, att having tasted a little, causes the rest to be tributed among the Heads of Tribes who at present, and retires afterwards under the Som of the aforesaid Instruments into his usual Tens

beli

Wh

tole

Peop

es,

nem

nda

Pie

e-pa

on,

Cros

ead

nity

eda

Pho

ilia

the

lea eople ftra

210

ens

As on one fide the Kutuchta has need of the Protection of the Emperor of China, to preerve him in his Independency of the Dalai Lana, 'tis become a Maxim with him to gain by magnificent Presents the Favourites of that Monarch: and because he knows that the Fathers. Jesuits of Pekin, have at present much Credit at hat Court, he does not fail to fend them every Year a confiderable quantity of valuable Skins, in order to benefit by their Favour. And as on the other fide the Court of China stands in need of the Kutuchta and his Lamas, to keep the Mungals of the West in duty, it treats him on all Occasions with much Distinction. gave him, fome years ago, a very particuliar Mark of it; for the deceased Emperor of China having caused to be celebrated a great Feast, on account of the Day, which made it fixty Years fince he came to the Empire, at which all the Vaffals of the Empire were to affift, the Kutuchta was also summon'd there: and in considenation of his eminent Dignity, he was dispensed with only * proftrating himself once before the Emperor, which was a Distinction without Example; feeing that in virtue of the Ceremonial of that Court, no Person must salute the Emperor without prostrating himself three times before him; which the Princes his Children, and the Princes of the Blood are oblig'd to do, as well as all the Ambassadors and foreign Ministers, without any exception.

The Kutuchta tries also to cultivate Friendship with the Russians; wherefore, when Mr. Ismailoff, some Years since pass'd by in his Neighbourhood, going to the Court of China in quality of Envoy Extraordinary from Russia, he did not

^{[*} This Passage is very inconsistent with the Divinity afwhed to the Kutuchta, p. 508.]

C

tal

his

fro

qu

Su gi do ob

wl w

E

0 th

w

di

ha

H

C W

C

CC

P

ha

R

is

th

T

fi fa

th

0

th

fail to fend to him fome of his Lamas to compliment him upon his Passage, and to offer him fome small Presents from him. He does not omit besides that, any Opportunity of favouring the Subjects of Russia in the little Quarrels they may have with the Mungals on the Frontiers,

SECT. IV.

The Towns and Rivers in the Country of the Mungals.

THERE are but few of the Towns of the Oriental Part of Tatary, mention'd by Abulgazi Chan, and the French Editor; and they all belong to the Country of the Mungali of the East.]

TOWNS.

Kirin. Ula, Ninkrite.

The three most considerable Towns which the Mungals of the East posses'd before this last Revolution, were Kirin, Ula, and Ninkrita, all fituate upon the Eastern fide of the River Songora, which falls into the great River of Amur, twelve days Journey from its Mouth. But fince they have been in possession of China, they have built feveral other Towns, Burrows and Villages towards the Frontiers of China; and they extend themselves every Day more and more on that fide.

Ula or

The Town of Ula, situate in the 44° 20' of Ulaghiurt, Latit. was the Capital of all the Country [not only] of Nieuchen [but also of all the Empire of the Moguls, the Successors of Zingis Chan and the Residence [for above two hundred years] of the most powerful Chans of the East.

This Kurthall and a This

n [

om-

him

mit

the

nay

the

of

n'd

als

ch

aft

all

n-

ur,

ce

ve

a-

ey

on

of

ot

re

n

S

115

This is the fame Town, which in the Orien-Ula, or tal Histories is called Ulugbiurt. De la Croix in Ulugbiurt. his History of * Gengbiz Chan, says it was not far from Cara-coram [Cara Curan] tho that may be question'd. It stands on the River Songora, or Sumboa. The Reader may depend on the Latit. given to this Place, which he must not always do with regard to that of others; because it was observ'd by Father Verbiest, tho the Author, who took it from his Relation of the Journey which the late Emperor of China made into the Fastern Tatary in 1682, does not mention it. On which occasion, I cannot but observe, that the Silence of Authors on the like Accounts. whereby they leave the Reader no means of diftinguishing the Doubtful from the Certain. hath misled many, and bred much Confusion in History.

We have at present no certain Knowledge of Carakum Cara-kum, mention'd p. 151, nor of the Palaces site at which were built there in the time of Ugadai present Chan and his Successors: Nevertheless, one may unknown. conclude by several Circumstances, that this Place which our Author calls Cara-kum, must have been some where about the Springs of the Rivers Jenisea and Selinga, tho at present there is not to be found the least Footsteps of it. For the rest, it appears from our History that the Carakum, statars employ the word Cara-kum, which signi-i.e. Black sies black Sand, as a general Term to signify all Sand. sandy and dry Countries, or sandy Desarts, [and there are several on the Frontiers of the Province of Chowarazm, towards the River Amu; one of

which is mention'd, p. 354.]

The Monk Rubruquis, has given us a pretty Rubruquis exact Description of this City; to which he gives consured. the Name of Cara-carom; observing, that except-

^{*} Pag. 397.

Cb

for

mo

be

the

di

W

Ti

Ot

ar

fe

fu

to

C

k

C

Description ing the Palace of the Chan, which is very large, on of Ca-it was not fo good as the Town of St. Dennis in France, in the Condition it was in his Time; that there were but two principal Streets in it, one called the Street of the Saracens [Arabians] in which all the Merchants dwelt; the other that of the Kitayans, where lived all the Artifans and other Tradesmen: That there were twelve Temples for the Pagans, and two Moskees for the Mobammedans, and one Church for the Chriftians. But as what is related of the Road he took to come at that Town is very confused; and moreover, does not well agree with the certain Notices which we have now of the Country thro' which he pretends to have pass'd on that Occasion, one can have no Dependence on this Relation.

The Accounts of most Travellers are confused and imperfect, especially the earlier they are; but howfoever defective the Relation of Rubruquis may be in those Respects, I cannot but think it appears by many Circumstances, that he travell'd thro' the Parts of Tatary which he describes. Many of the Towns and Countries which he mentions are found in this and other Eastern Authors; and 'tis to be consider'd, that Countries often change their Names, and People their Countries, which might have been the Case in those Parts since the time of Rubruquis, in whose behalf I shall say more in another Place.

The Editor feems to question if there was fuch a City as Cara-coram, and in the Index to his Remarks calls it a supposed Town of Tatary. But that there was fuch a Place, is a Fact which feems to be too well authoriz'd to be contested: All the Oriental Authors that speak of the Tatar Affairs, mention it as the Imperial Seat

Ch. VII. the Country of the Mungals.

art I.

large,

mas 10

ime;

In It,

bians

Other

tilans

velve

s for

hrif-

d he

fed;

cer-

oun-

on

e on

on-

hey

of

not

es,

ich

m-

0-

d,

nd

11-

377

Seat of Zingis Chan, and his first Successors, before it was translated to Ulugbiurt, now Ula, more Eastward; and observe that it was also called Ordu-balik.

Abulfara, p. 310, tells us, that Zingis Chan Ordubeing returned into his antient Country, built balik or there a City which he called Ordu-balik; adding, that it was the same with Kara-kuran, and built by was peopled with Inhabitants from Chatay and Zingis Turkestan, with Persians and Mastarabians. Nay, Chanbour Tatar Author is very particular in this Place, and describes the Manner in which it was built.

So many Testimonies then concurring, there seems to be no room to doubt that there was such a Town; but the Editor's Mistake seems to arise from his taking Cara-kum, and Caracoram, to mean the same thing; whereas Carakum* is the Name of the Country, and Caracoram, or Cara-coran, or rather Cara-curan, that of the City built there. Our Tatar Author plainly distinguishes the one from the other, tho he does not name the Town; and p. 53, mention is made of a Territory called Kuran; from whence probably that City took its Name. He also in the same Place mentions a Province called Oman, and another by the Name of Mankerule, which is the Onam Kerule of Rubruquis.

With regard to the Situation of Cara-kuran, it is to be observed, that Marco Polo places it beyond the sandy Desart; whereas the Editor in his Map, places Cara-kum a great way on this side; and M. le Croix observes †, it was but a little way distant from Olugbiurt.]

RIVERS.

The River Selinga has several Springs about Selanga the 46 Deg. of Latit. and 115 Deg. of Long. of River.

† Hift. Genghiz. p. 397.

which

^{*} Abu'lfeda indeed gives the Latit. and Longit. of Karakum as if it was a Town, but it is no more than what he has done by other Countries.

in

15 ly

0

Quality.

which the principal called Wersh Selinga, iffues from a certain Lake called by the Moguls Kolo. goll. Its Course is nearly in a right Line from South to North; and after being confiderably inlarged by the Waters of many Rivers which fall into it on both fides, it discharges it self into the Lake Baikal, in 55 Deg. of Latitude, The Waters of this River are very good and light, but do not afford Plenty of Fish; nevertheless its Banks are very fertil.

The two fides of this River, from its Springs, till within one days Journey of Selinginskoy, are in the Hands of the Mungals; but from Selinginskoy, as far as its Entrance into the Lake Bai kal, all that lies about this River belongs to the

Russians.

River Kalaffui, now Orchon.

Chan of Calcha

Mungals.

The River Kalassui, is at present named Orchon; it rifes in the Country of the Mungali, about the 45 Deg. 40 Min. of Latit. and runs from the S.S.E. to the N.N.W. it falls at length into the Selinga, about the 50 Deg. of Lat. 'Tis upon its Banks that the Chan of the Calcha Mungals usually makes his Abode: 'Tisalso about the same River that the Kutuchta, who is the Grand Priest of the Mungals of the West, keeps at prefent.

Collanu-

The River Collanuaer is at present called Toaer River. la; it comes from the E.S.E. and throws itself into the River Orchon towards the 49 Deg. of Latit. it is by passing this River that the Caravans of Siberia enter immediately into the Estates

depending on China.

The River of Altai, which at present is call'd River Alrai or Siba. Siba, has its Spring towards the Frontiers of the Callmaks, in the Mountains of that Branch of Caucasus, called by the Tatars Uskun-luk tugra, about the 43 Deg. of Lat. to the South of the Springs of the River Jenisea, and running from thence

Chap. VII. the Country of the Mungals.

rt I,

ffices

Sofo-

rom

ably

nich

in-

ide.

ind

er-

ire

in-

11-

he

r-

IS

ıt

337

North of the Defarts of Goby, to the S.S.E. of the Source of the River Orchon.

The Banks of the River Siba are at present inhabited by the Mungals of the West: There is also a petty Chan of that Nation, who usually makes his Abode about that River, and who is at present under the Protection of China.

The River Dsan Muran [Gam Muran] has its Gam Mus. Source in the Mountains which cross the Desart ran River. of Goby, about the 43 Deg. of Latit. It runs from N.N.W. to S.S.E. and falls into the great River of Hoang, on the Frontiers of Tibet, towards the 39 Deg. of Latit.

They are the Mungals of the West who at present possess the sides of this River, and there are two petty Chans of that Nation who usually make their Abode about its Banks: They are both under the Protection of China.

The River Argun rises in the Country of the Argun Mungals, about the 49 Deg. of Latit. and 127 River. of Longit. in a Lake which the Mungals call Argun Dalai; its Course is nearly E. N. E. and having run above 100 Leagues, it mingles its Waters with those of the great River Amur, towards the 51 Deg. of Lat. and 135 of Longit.

point Proper Names, especially there-

and which cannot agree with other tenes

policed; which is the healon was a few ex

Language to whole Use they have been when

ly, for the Scinfollion of making. Manner, the holy Scripture spree w If thory: without confidering to a be to almofrall the hanguages of the I

rovinces and Rivers, he is no round of a control of a con

ed shawot has E & T. . Y. a thence to the E.

A Dissertation concerning Gog and Magog,

IS certain that neither the Tatars nor the Oriental Historians who have writ-ten the History of these People, have had any Knowledge of the Names of Gog and Magog, and that we find them no where the holy Scripture. Notwithstand. but in ing, as our Geographers and Historians of the Ages part, have been pleas'd peremptorily to place the People of Gog and Magog in Grand Tatary, so far as positively to affirm that it was the Moguls to whom that Name was to be given, it seems as tho it was Budenfir Mogak, p. 58, &c, who has given room to this Error; for in regard he was one of the most powerful Princes of the Turkish Nation before Zingis Chan, it is evident that these Gentlemen, fully resolved to place the People of Gog and Magog, right or wrong, in the North of Afia, have imagin'd that the Term Mogak imply d Magog; and that thereupon they have boldly afferted that this People was wholly to be found in Grand Tatary; and, in a word, that they were the Moguls, only for the Satisfaction of making, after their Manner, the holy Scripture agree with profane History: without considering that it is peculiar to almost all the Languages of the East, to appoint Proper Names, especially those of People, Provinces and Rivers, by Terms appropriated to the peculiar Use of each Language, and which cannot agree with other Languages, only so far as they have Connection with the Language to whose Use they have been appropriated; which is the reason why Proper Names differ

diff To Ori one

Ch

eith Pec wei the loft

qui

we W and fino Na

> of t ligi the hav pri

car the fen of

ver feer fro the

are as

the

nay tor rup

Mag

1

Or

it-

ad

nd

re

ıd-

of

to

nd

ras

1

10

n-

it

to

10

at

116

y.;

n-

eir

ne

ar

p-

0-

0-

e,

3,

0-

es

er

differ so much from one another in the Oriental Tongues, that it is very difficult to clear up the Oriental Historians, and reconcile them with one another.

Time is never worse employed than in Enquiries of this nature. Gog and Magog might either have been real or fictitious Names of a People, nor does it matter which it was. If they were real Names given by the Jews to some other Nation, they have themselves long ago loft the Remembrance of it; and how should we find it out at this time of day, when the World has been fo often turn'd up fide down. and People transplanted and jumbled together. fince the time we find mention of those terrible Names? The Arabians, who took a great deal of their History, as well as almost all their Religion, from the Jews, do not fail among other things, to speak of Gog and Magog; and have, as well as Christians, made it one of the prime Subjects of their Enquiries: which they carry'd so far, that the Chalifa Wathek, about the Year of the Hegra 228, that is of Christ. 842. fent one Salam on purpose to discover the Wall of Gog and Magog, which was then, and still is very famous in their Histories *. This Wall feems to be that of China, and it must be own'd, from hence it appears, that the Arabiani favour the Opinion of those who agree to make Tatary the Seat of that People.

It appears also from hence, that the Orientals are far from being ignorant of Gog and Magog, as the Author of these Observations imagin'd; nay, they are expressly named by our Tatar Historian, p. 43. for Kadzutz Mudzuth is a Cortuption of Yagug Magug, which are the Arabian

Names

^{*} Geog. Nubienfis, p. 267. Herbelot at Jagiouge and Magiouge.

Ch.

on

vitl

luin

fic

Bo

70

M

m

th

th

af

V

re

Ca

th

Names of Gog and Magog. This little Affinity betwixt Madzuth and Mogak, shews Abulgate Chan had no notion that one was derived from the other; nor is there any necessity for bringing those Names from Budensir Mogak, supposing he was as antient, which he was not, as I have shewn in the Preface; for it was as easy to transform Magog into Mogul, as out of Mogul, to make Mogore or Moal, as some have done.

Weak Men, fuch as the Editor mentions, are ever straining Authors, or, when they have an Opportunity, corrupting them, to give a Sanction to their beloved Fancies. We find in Marco Polo's Travels these words; "There is a Nation in the Parts about Tendue, "called Argon, who possess the Regions of Gog "and Magog, which the Inhabitants call Ung

"and Mongul; in Ung dwell Gog, and in Mon"gul the Tatars," which is doubtless a nonsenscal Interpolation of the Publisher to advance that
groundless Notion (which he among others, had
entertain'd) from the Authority of a Traveller,
who delivers it as an Eye-witness; and accordingly, ever since, it has been almost universally
receiv'd by Europeans as a thing undoubted, that
Gog and Magog were in Tatary.

Before that time Authors frequently placed them in Syria. Some Commentator, or Historiographer of deep Penetration, in running over Pliny, happen'd to stumble upon that Passage, where he observes, that Bambyce is called by the Syrians Magog; and presently concluded Syria must be the Country of Gog and Magog. But Dr. Hyde * observes that it is a Mistake of Pliny or his Transcribers, who have written Magog instead of Mabog, which he proves from good Arguments is the true Syrian Name, and wonders

Piame

^{*} In notis Peritfol, p. 42.

ch. VIII. Country of the Mungals.

art]

finity

uleazi

m the

oling have trans.

nake

ions,

they

, to

rds;

Gog

Ung Mon-

enfi-

that

had

ller,

ord-

ally

that

iced

sto-

wer

ge,

by

Sy

But

liny

in-

Ar-

ers

one

none before him had corrected it; which notwithstanding still remains uncorrected in Harduin's late pompous Edition of Pliny.]

CONTROLLED CONTROLLED CONTROLLED

CHAP. VIII.

MOGULS, called CALLMAKS; containing the Middle and West Part of GRAND TATARY.

SECT. I.

Its Situation, Bounds, Provinces, Towns, Rivers, Mountains: An Account of the Archora.

THE Country which the Callmaks possess Bounds. at prefent is without dispute the most considerable and the finest Part of Tatary. Bounds begin at the East Bank of the River Jaik, and striking thence N.E. they pass the Mountains of the Eagles [Arall-tag] and go to meet the River Irtis over against the Mouth of the River Om. From thence they keep along the River Om to its very Source, and continue afterwards to run Eastward till they join the River Oby. Then passing up that great River as far as the Lake Altan, from whence it rifes, they return to join the Caucasus, which the Tatars call in that Part Tugra Tubusluk: From thence they turn to the East, and coast always along these Mountains till within two Days Journey of the River Selinga, towards Selinginskoy. Then they take a Sweep towards the South, and having marched for sometime at the same distance from that River, they return to the West and to the River Jenisea, which they coast from the 49 Deg. of VOL. II. Latit.

Grand Tatary Country of

h.

e S

pre

unc

boul

TI

33

ave

out

Rive

After

mi

vhic

rom

t fel he N

he I Calli

Rive

T

whic

hen

45 I whice

tan

Char

Nor

Deg

two.

and

which

of th

and

fepa

Latit. as far as its Sources, following the Mount tains which run along it on the West side. A terwards they wind to the S. E. towards Chin the Frontiers of which are contiguous win those of the Callmaks, from the 39 Deg. of L. drawing to the South, to the Frontiers of the Kingdom Ava. From thence they wheel off the West towards the Frontiers of the Dom nions of the Great Mogul, which are contiguous with them from the Frontiers of Ava. as fa as the Confines of Great Bucharia; and fine, coasting all Great Bucharic and the Frontiers of Turkestan, they return by the N. W. to the Eastern Bank of the River Jak fo that the Callmaks don't possess less than an E tent of 500 German Leag. in Length, and 300 Breadth, under the finest Climate in the World

PROVINCES and TOWNS.

[The Country of the Callmaks is divided like others into Provinces; but we have an Account in our Author of no more than two of them, and one Town which is at present not to be found.]

Jugurukbash.

The Country of Juguruk-bash is a little Province situate about the 43 Deg. of Lat. to the North of the River Khesell, upon the Consined the Country of Chowarazm and Great Bucharis. This Province is at present a kind of Barrier tween the Callmaks subject to Contaish, and the Tatars of the Country of Chowarazm, because it is inhabited by neither one nor the other.

Segeri-

The Province of Segeri Rabat is situate upon the Frontiers of Great Bucharia, towards the southern Bank of the River Sirth.

Bilhba'ik.

The Town of Bishbalik, mention'd p. 35 and elsewhere, ought to have been somewhere about

Mou

: A

China s with

of La

of the

Domi

iguou

as fa

und i

dab

y the Fail

in E

200

orld

d like

count them

to be

Pro

o the

aru:

er be-

caule

upan

the

and

bout

present, nor is there any Town at all to be and on that side within eighty Leagues round bout.

RIVERS.

The Rivers Ishkul and Tallash, mention'd Now Te33. which are called at present Tekees and Ila, kees and
ave their Springs in the sandy Grounds to the
outh of the Lake Sayssan. The Course of the
liver Tekees is almost from E. S. E. to W.N.W.
After it has run about 40 Leagues from its Source
mixes its Waters with those of the River Ila,
which comes from the N. E. and continuing
from thence its Course to the West, it loses
t self towards the Frontiers of Turkestan, among
the Mountains which separate that Country from
the Dominions of Contaish, Grand Chan of the
Callmaks, who usually resides about these two
Rivers.

The Cabli and Camzi are two little Rivers Cabli and which coming from the N. N. E. discharge Camzi, themselves into the River Sir or Sirth, about the 45 Deg. of Latit. at the Foot of the Mountains, which at present separate the Country of Turke-stan from the Dominions of Contaish, Grand Chan of the Callmaks.

The River Irtis is a confiderable River in the River North of Asia. It has two Sources about the 47 Irtis. Deg. of Latit. to the North of the Confines of the two Bucharias: of which that to the North forms a River which runs Westward called Chor Irtis; and that which is to the South forms another which runs to the N. W. called Char Irtis. Each of these two Rivers has its Source from a Lake, and having water'd a great Space of Country separately, they unite about the 47 Deg. 30 K 2

h.

cal

t P

nat

he

ron

Nor

Tato

of t

Eaf

ro

of t

fro

far

Na

cal the

Pl

th

th

V

H

t

Lake Saysfan.

524

ver, called also Irtis, which always continu running to the N.W. About 50 Leagues fro the Place where the two Springs meet, it for the Lake Sayssan, which may be at most about 25 Leagues long, and 10 broad. At its passin out of this Lake, the River Irtis, which before was but a middling River, begins to become confiderable one, and still runs to the N.W. About the 50 Deg. of Latit. it cuts its Paffe thro' that Branch of Mount Caucafus, which, will be observed presently, is called by the?

Uluk Tag. tars who dwell on its left Bank Uluk Tag, and Tugra Tu-by those on its right Bank Tugra Tubushi busluk. and growing large by the Reception of a great

Number of Rivers which fall into it from both fides of that vast Extent of Country which glides thro', it passes beside the Town of h bolskoy, the Capital of Siberia, in 58 Deg. of Latit. In this Place it is already a good quarte of a League over, and turning afterwards to the North, it meets the Oby beyond the Tom of Samarof, after having run in all above 400

Leagues.

The fides of this River from its Springs towards Tobolskoy are very fertile, tho little altivated, because the Callmaks who are Mastern of it, to about the 55 Deg. of Latit. where the River Om falls into it from the East, never of tivate the Lands, living altogether upon their Cattle; but from Tobolskoy to its Confluence with the Oby, its Banks are not able to produce any great Matter, because of the great Cold

The late Emperor of Russia, considering that this River might be of great use to him in establishing an advantageous Commerce between his Dominions and those others of the East, in the

Year

which reigns in those Parts.

Tobolf-

koy.

Part

one R

Continu

ies fro

it form

It abou

paffin

1 before

ecome

e NW

Paffa

nich,

the %

ar, am

abasluk

a grea

n both

hich it

of %

eg. of

uarte

rds to

Town

e 400

gs till

e cul-

afters

e the

their

епсе

duce

that

fta-

his

the

ear 1715, caused Settlements to be made proper Distances from each other along hat River towards the Lake Sayssan, of which the Russian he farthest is called Uskameen, 25 Leagues Colonies aom that Lake fouthward of the Foot of the long the Northern Branch of Caucasus, called by the River Tatars Tugra Tubusluk. These are the Names Irtis. f the other Forts which are all built upon the Fastern Bank of the Irtis. Descending the River from Uskameen, we find at the Northern Foot of the faid Mountains Ubinska, about 20 Leagues from the aforesaid Fort; thence 20 Leagues farther Sem-palat, to which they have given that Name, signifying seven Houses of Brick, because there are indeed so many Brick-Houses on the Bank of the River which is very high in this Place, without being able to judge by any Mark that there ever had been any other fuch Houses thereabout, or for 50 Leagues round. Thirty Leagues from Sem-palat you find Dolonska, and 40 Leagues from thence Yamisha.

Near this Fort there is a Salt Lake about three Salt Lake. Wersts a-cross, from whence they take the finest Salt in the World, which the Sun in the Heat of Summer congeals on the Surface of the Water like a Crust full two Inches thick. this Place the Russians at the beginning found much Resistance from the Gallmaks, who having a great part of their Salt from this Lake, would not fuffer the Russians to make themselves Masters of it by raising a Fort. For this end, Contails having fent thither a Body of 15000 Men, the Russians were obliged the first time to return without Success. But that Prince having soon an occasion to recal those Troops to serve against the Mungals and Chinese, they made use of that Opportunity to compass their Design; and they have also since then built a Town in that Place.

K 3

Twenty

Twenty five Leagues from Yamisha, you find Shelesinska, and thirty Leagues from thence Omskoy, near the Place where the River Om, coming from the East, and falling into the River Irtis, makes the Bound on this side between the Dominions of Contaish and Siberia; so that all the Places which are at present upon the Banks of this River belong to the Russians, although the Callmaks are in Possession of all the Country which it waters from its Springs as far as the Mouth of the River Om.

The Waters of the River Irtis are very white and light; it abounds furprizingly with all form of good Fish: The Sturgeons and Salmons of pecially of this River are very delicious; and are so fat, that the Inhabitants of the Country are accustom'd to save it for the Use of the Kitchen, as we do the Drippings of our Meat.

MOUNTAINS.

Mountains Tugra, Tubusluk, and Uskun Luk Tugra, are two Tugra, Branches of the Mountains Caucasus, whereof Tubusluk, the first, (which to the West of the River Iris, Uskun Luk Tubears the Name of Uluk-tag) begins at the Easten gra. Bank of the Iris to the North of the Lake Sayssan, and runs directly to the East as far as the River Selinga: From thence turning to the

Bank of the Irtis to the North of the Lake Sayssan, and runs directly to the East as far as the River Selinga: From thence turning to the North, it marches along that River till it enters the Lake Baikal: Afterwards returning to the East, it passes on to the Northern Bank of the River Amur, about Nerzinskoy, and follows this River continually until its Disembogation into the Sea of Japan.

The fecond Branch which to the North of the River Sirr bears the Name of Kitzik-Tag, commences on the Confines of Turkestan and Great Bucharia to the South of the River Sir,

and

Ch.

and

Bou

min

terv

to t

it f

Fro

upo

the

who

tha

the

the

ver

enc

Ca

poi

po

tai

w

fhe

of

af

m

Ri

ne

ot

M

an

R

0

Ch. V

ou find

ce Om-

com.

River

tween

o that

on the

25, 21-

ll the

as far

white

forts

ns ef-

and

intry

the

eat.

two

reof

tis,

em

ke

25

he

ers

he

he

VS

n

and running thence to the East, it makes the Bounds between Great Bucharia and the Dominions of Contaish: It continues its Course afterwards near upon the same Line, until arriving to the South of the Springs of the River Jenisea, it strikes off to the S. E. and falls in with the Frontiers of China about the 40 Deg. of Latit. upon the Confines of the Callmaks and Mungals; then it always keeps Company with the great Wall of China as far as the Province of Leaotun, where making an Elbow to the N. E. it separates that Province and Corea from the Country of the Mungals, and ends at last on the Shore of the Sea of Japan, about the 42 Deg. of Latit.

These two Branches of Caucasus, which in several Places shoot out others very considerable, encompass properly the antient Patrimony of the Tatars, which is at present posses'd by the Callmaks and the Mungals; for the other Parts which the Mohammedan Tatars and the Callmaks possess, do not originally belong to them, they

possessing them only by right of Conquest.

The Mountain of Kut, called at present Chal-Mountain tai, is a Branch of that Part of Mount Caucasus, Kutt, or which the Callmaks call Uskun Luk Tugra: It Chaltai. shoots out from the faid Mountains to the West of the Springs of the Jenisea, and runs almost in a strait Line from South to North, constantly marching along the Western Bank of that great River at a distance of one or two days Journey, until it joins about 52 Deg. of Latit. the other Branch of Caucasus, which is called in the Mogul Language Tugra Tubusluk.

For an Account of the Nature of the Air, and Soil of the Country of the Callmaks, the Reader is desir'd to look back to the general

Observations on Tatary.]

The

Ch.

Of

of t

Gra

pre

Lai

ftill

afte

ha

the

all

Co

for

D

tr

The Archora, a strange Beast.

Wild Goats. Wild Goats are very numerous in the Mountains which separate Siberia from Grand Talar, and exactly of the same kind with those which are found in the Mountains of Sweden, and in the April but I cannot say whether these are to be understood by the Archora, mention'd p. 26, or whe ther the Author would speak of a certain Ammal called Gluton, which usually makes such Tracts upon the Mountains, and in the Forests, and with which these Quarters abound.

Gluton.

The Gluton is a carnivorous Beaft, not quite fo tall as a Wolf, having the Hair strong and long, of a very fine dark brown, all over its back This Beaft is exceeding mischievous, it climb the Trees, and watches the Game that paffer under it; and when it sees a favourable Opportunity, it leaps down upon the Back of the A. nimal, and knows fo well how to fasten himself with his Paws, beginning at first to eat a great Hole in the Back, that the poor Creature, after having in vain used all his Efforts to get rid of fo cruel a Guest, is oblig'd at last to fall on the Ground with Anguish and Weakness, and thus become a Prey to his Enemy. There must not be less than three stout Dogs to attack this kind of Beaft, as small as it is, and very often they come off maul'd in a strange manner. The Ruffiant make great Account of the Skin of this Beaft, and employ it usually for Mens Muffs, and Borders of Bonnets. This Beaft is peculiar to the Mountains of the North of Afia.

SECT.

Acader is defined to

Patt

Moun

Talary richan

e Alos

under-

r whe-

Am.

s fuch

refts.

quite

and

back

imbe affes

por-

e A.

nfelf reat

fter

dof

the

hus

not

ind

ley he

115

FS, ar.

SECT. II.

Of the Original, Names, Branches, Customs, Manners and Religion of the Callmaks.

THE Callmaks are Pagan Tatars, and the Callmaks most considerable of the three Branches the true of the Turkish Nation which at present possess Grand Tatary. As they are the only Tatars who preserve to this Day the antient Mogul or Turkish Language in all its Purity; feeing also that they fill possess the Dominions which Zingis Chan after the Conquest of the greatest Part of Asia, appropriated in some measure to the Patrimony of the Princes his Successors; and that they have retain'd nearly the same manner of Living, the same Worship, and the same Habits which all the Historians have ascribed to the Moguls, Conquerors of Asia; it may be concluded with some fort of Certainty, that they are the true Descendants of the Moguls, and their Chans the true Successors to the Empire of Zingis Chan.

As to what regards the Name of Callmuks, or Callmak a Callmaks, which we give them, 'tis a kind of Nickname. Nickname which has been given them by the Mohammedan Tatars in hatred of the Heathen Worship, and which by means of the Russians has come to us. Length of Time has fo well establish'd the Use of this Name, that at present they are known in a manner to none by their original Name. What I advance here is so true, that 'tis an Affront to call them, when speaking to them, Callmaks; and they pretend to have a much better Right to the Name of Moguls Mungals than their Neighbours, who are known to us at not so pure present by the Names of Mungals, and who are Moguls as forung from that Part of the Moguls and Tatars maks. which

C

w

C

to

ha

th

C

fo

tr

W

to

m

70

th

th

W

W

th

fo

of

ly

th

de

fo

to

C

m

R

b

which the Chinese, under the Command of the Bonza or Priest Chu, Founder of the House of Taiminga, had driven back again out of China on the North side about the Year 1368, after they had been above 150 Years in possession, reckoning since the first Conquest which Zingis Chan made of it about 1211.

'Tis to be observ'd that our Author does not begin to make use of the Name of Callmaks till a long time after the Tatars, and particularly his Ancestors, had embrac'd the Mohammedan Worship; for the Place where he relates, p. 210. that Timur Sheich Chan loft his Life against the Callmaks, is the first in all the Book where this Name is made use of [excepting, p. 31, where he speaks of a subsequent Affair] and Timur Sheich Chan lived more than an Age after Uzbek Chan, who completed the Introduction of the Mohammedan Worship among the Subjects of the Descendants of Zuzi Chan; which may ferve in some measure to verify our Affertion, with regard to the Original of the Name of the Callmaks, which a great part of the Moguls bear at present.

Callmaks and Moguls the fame.

[This judicious Remark of the French Editor is grounded upon very good Arguments, and will be further confirm'd by what I shall say upon the same Head. There is only one Circumstance, which to bring his Proof the closer, he seems to have strained too far, and which might be urged against his Opinion; namely, that the Callmaks still possess the Dominions which Zingis Chan appropriated in some measure to the Patrimony of the Princes his Successor; for the immediate Dominions of the Successors; for the immediate Dominions of the Mungals, and the Place of their Residence was at Ulughiurt, or Ula, in the most Eastern Part of Grand Tatary; where-

whereas the Callmaks have no Footing in the Country of the Mungals, and inhabit altogether to the West of them, possessing the middle Part of that great Continent. It might perhaps have been more to the Purpose to have observed that the Callmaks possess among others the true Country of the Moguls.

But this Objection will vanish, when it ap-Inhabited pears that the Name of Callmaks was given the Munformerly to the People who inhabited the Country in try of the Mungals; which last, for any thing Timurwe know, still retain the same Name with regard bec's to the Mobammedan Tatars: the Name of Call-Time.

maks being perhaps a general Name with them, for all the Moguls and Tatars who are not of their

own Religion.

the

e of

ia on

they

kon-

ban

not

s till

arly

edan

10.

the

this

nur

bek

the

of

ay

on, the

ar

or nd

n-

nt

le

-

It is observ'd in the History of Timur-bec, that Taizy Aglen leaving the Court of the Chan of the Callmaks, retir'd to that of Timur, where he was kindly receiv'd. It is plain, the Country where the Callmaks then inhabited, could not be that to the North of Ma wara'l nabr, or Zagatai, for in all Timur's Expeditions that way, we hear of no Callmaks: Nor could it be the Country lying to the E. and N.E. between Zagatai and the River Selinga, which contain'd the Kingdom of Cashgar and Mogulistan, and was in the Possession of Togluc Timur Chan and his Sucesfors; for tho it had been travers'd from one end to the other by Timur-bec, we hear nothing of the Callmaks: besides Kesar Choga, Grandson of Togluc Timur Chan, is expressly called Emperor of the Moguls. The Country then which the Callmaks inhabited in the Time of Timur-bec, must have been that to the East of the said River, which is the Country possessed at present by the Mungals.

Ch.

Chi

nan

Nie

tha

hac

fan

Ea

nu

tin

try

th

by

Po

th

al

N

ſc

th

h

d

C

From hence it appears that the Callmaks did not always inhabit the same Country they do at present; that since the time of Timur-bec they seem to have wholly evacuated their own Dominions, and to have erected a new Empire in another Part of Tatary: Or it remains a Question, whether they separated from the Mungals, or the Mungals from them, throwing off their Dependency upon their Conquests Westwards.

It may be asked if the Callmaks be a new Name given in derifion by the Mobammedon To. tars to the Pagan Moguls, why do the Muneals retain their true Name still? But it is to be confider'd, that the Mungals may retain that Name only with regard to us, the Mohammedan Tatars for ought we know calling them Callmaks, which the Author feems to fuggest is a general Name with them for all the Pagan Moguls or Tatars: and the reason why the Inhabitants of the Countries between Zagatai and the fandy Defarts were not called Callmaks in Timur-bec's Time, feems to be no other but because they were Mohammedans. It is also to be consider'd, that the Name of Callmaks came to the Russians, from whom we have it, by the Mohammedan Tatars who were their next Neighbours; but that of the Mungals from the Mungals themselves, with whom they came acquainted by means of their Conquests in Siberia. However it be, it seems they cannot get themselves acknowledg'd by the Name of Moguls by any of their Neighbours; for as the Mobammedan Tatars call them Callmaks, fo they are called Diadadatzi by the Chinese.

'Tis without doubt from the Dsadadatzi, or Tatarian Magicians, mention'd p. 150. that the Chinese

Ġadadatzi art I

s did

do at

they

Do-

re in

resti-

Mun-

z off

Vest.

new

Ta

reals

be

ame

tars

uch

me

rs:

un-

ere

ms

m-

the

m

of

th

115

ns

y

e

e e

Chinese have taken occasion to give the Nick Nickname name of Dfadadatzi to the Callmaks, feeing thatgiven the Nieuhoff informs us, in his Relation of China, by the that certain Ambassadors of the Zudadatses Tatars Chinese. had Audience of the Emperor of China at the fame time that the Ambassadors of the Dutch East India Company had theirs, in whose Retinue Nieuboff was; but he does not tell us diffinctly who those Tatars were, nor what Country they inhabited: All he fays of them is, that they were Tatars of the West, much regarded by the Government of China on account of their Power, and that for the fame reason, they had the Precedence given them on that occasion, of all the Ambassadors who were then at Pekin: Nevertheless, 'tis easy to perceive by the Description which he gives us of their Clothing, that they were Callmaks, fince these Tatars go habited at present just the same way, as were the aforefaid Ambassadors of the pretended Zudadaizses Tatars; as the Reader will easily be convinced, when he gives himself the Trouble of comparing the aforesaid Place in Nieuboff with the Account which follows of the Habit of the Callmaks.

The Callmaks are of a middle fize, but ex-shape, ceeding robust and well-set; they have big and Features, broad Heads, stat Faces, and their Complexion is of a dark Olive-colour, which comes pretty near that of American Copper; they have very black and sparkling Eyes, but too far asunder, and opening but a little, tho they are very long. The Bridge of their Nose is quite flat, and almost level with the rest of the Face, so that there is nothing of a Nose to be seen but the end, which is very flat also, with two great Holes which form the Nostrils. Their Ears are very large,

Ch.

fam

Clo

Go

ban

wit

ver

bee

ans

COU

wh

hav

Sho

que

wh

car

bu Fa

an

ma Ba

on

of

Ire

fro

ex lik

P

is

de

T

C

th

R

in

1

large, tho without the Rims; their Beards very thin, Hair black and strong like Horse-hair, which they shave quite off, excepting a Lock on the Crown of the Head, which falls down their Backs, and which they let grow to its natural Length.

To make amends for all this Homeliness, they have very pretty Mouths and little enough, with small Teeth as white as Ivory, and are perfectly

well limb'd.

Women.

Their Women have much the same Features, only they are not so large; but they are commonly of a very clever Size, and well-shaped.

Habit.

The Callmaks wear Shirts of that fort of Callico which the Russians call Kitaika; their Breeches are made of the same Cloth, and often also of Sheep-Skin, but they are extraordinary wide in the Southern Provinces; they wear no Shirts in Summer, contenting themselves with a kind of Sheep-skin Doublet without Sleeves, which they put on next their Skin with the wooly fide out, tucking the Skirts of it within their Breeches, so that all the Arm is left bare up to the Shoulder; but in the Northern Provinces they wear a Shirt underneath. In Winter they wear a Sheep-skin over their Doublets, which reaches down to the Calf of the Leg, and turn the wooly fide inwards to keep them the warmer. These upper Skins have Sleeves so long, that they are obliged to turn them up when they are going about any Work. They cover the Head with a little round Bonnet, commonly fet off with a Tuft of Silk or Hair of a bright red, and edged with a Border of Fur. Their Boots are excessive big and wide, so that they are very troublesome to walk in.

Their

ut l

very

hair,

-ock

own

s na-

Oncol

they

with

res,

om-

ed.

Cal-

heir

ten ary

no

rith

es,

oly

eir

to

ces

ey

ch

rn

n-

n

y

it

r

Their Women go habited much after the womens fame Fashion, the Kitaika Shift making all their Habit. Clothing in Summer, and a long Sheep-skin Gown, with a Bonnet, the same with their Husbands, sufficing them in Winter.

The Arms of the Callmaks are great Bows, Arms. with fizable Arrows; they draw these Bows very true and with great Force; And it has been observ'd in the Difference which the Ruffians had with them in the Year 1715, on account of some Settlements on the River Irtis, which we have touch'd upon, p. 525, that they have pierc'd Men quite thro' the Body with the Shot of an Arrow. They have also great Arquebuffes above fix Foot long, the Barrel of which is a good Inch thick, and yet the Ball it carries is hardly fo much. With these Arquebuffes they never miss at the Distance of 300 Fathom and more, fixing them upon a Rest, and firing them off with a Match. When they march, they carry these Arquebusses across their Backs, and fasten'd to a Strap, and the rest hang on the right fide. As they never go to war but on Horseback, they all use Lances, and most of their Cavalry wear Coats of Mail made of Iron, and Caps of the fame, which defend them from the Arrrows. Few of them wear Sabres, except their Commanders, and they wear them like the Chinese, the Handle behind, and the Point before, that they may draw behind, which is the more convenient way. These Commanders are usually the Heads of Ordas, so that a Troop is strong, according as the Orda which composes it is more or less numerous. For the rest, they know not what it is to fight in Rank or Order; but when they charge they go in Troops, with each its Commander at the Nevertheless they are brave beyond

ch.

T

who

ng carry

well

chang

when

and (

Vano

all th

meaf

his v

heir

Tatar

aying

to go

s no

that (

Cattle

the R

all the

the B

felves thing

forts o

Parts,

for fe

and fo

beria 1

low th ginskoy

It Chan

that }

ments

fay no

parent had lit

VC

Fight in no order. what can be imagined, and they want nothing but European Discipline to make it dangerous meddling with them. They have not yet learned the Use of Cannon, and having nothing but Cavalry, it would not be of much Service to them.

Don't cultivate their Lands.

Tho the Provinces which the Callmaks possels are situate in the finest Climate in the World they never mind cultivating their Lands, but live purely upon their Cattle, which confifs in Horses, Camels, Oxen, or Cows and Sheep. Their Horses are very good and mettlesom, be. ing almost of the Size of Polish Horses: Their

Sheep with Oxen are larger yet than those of Ukraina, great Tails. and the tallest that are known at present in the

Their Sheep are also very big, with very short Tails, which are quite bury'd in a Case of Fat weighing several Pounds, and hang. ing prepofteroufly. The Wool of these Sheep is very long and course; they have also a Bunch upon the Nose like the Camels, and hanging Ears like our Hounds. Their Camels are large and strong enough, but they have all two Bunches on their Backs.

Eat no Pork. Notion of

The Callmaks never eat Hogs, nor any Poultry. They know nothing of Commerce, and are content to exchange Cattle with the Commerce. Russians, Buchars, and other Neighbours for what they want. For the rest, they are very honest, and do ill to no body, far from living by Robbery, like their Neighbours, the Mobammedan Tatars, with whom they are continu ally at War. They dwell in Tents or Huts, all those who are of the same Orda keeping togther, and changing their Abode from time to time, according as the Season and the Wants of their Flocks require it.

The

11

ing

200

ITh-

but

to

Tels

ld,

but 'n

ер.

be-

ell

na. the

ith

1 2

19.

ep ich

ge

WO

шу

ce, he

for

ry

ng 10-

111-

all

ge-

to

nts

he

The Callmaks, and those among the Mungals Callmaks who have exactly preferv'd the manner of Liv, and Munng of the antient Moguls, their Ancestors, galls carcarry still with them whatever they have, as substance well in going to the Wars, as when they only wherever change their Abode. Whence it comes, that they go. when they happen to lose a Battle, their Wives and Children remain ordinarily a Prey to the Vanquisher, with all their Cattle, and generally all they have in the World. They are in some measure necessitated to incumber themselves his way, because they should otherwise leave heir Families and Effects a Prey to other Tatars, their Neighbours, who would not fail aying hold of the Opportunity of their Absence to go and carry them away. Besides, as there s no travelling over the vast sandy Plains of that Country without carrying the Quantity of Cattle along with them sufficient to subsist on he Road, they find it more convenient to take all their Family with them, who may look to the Beafts, than to have the Care of them themfelves at a time when they are bufy about fomething elfe. And this way of travelling with all forts of living Creatures, is so necessary in these Parts, where nothing at all is to be found for several hundred Leagues together but Grass, and sometimes Water, that the Caravans of Siberia which trade with Peking, are obliged to follow the same in their way by Land from Selinginskoy to that City.

It is indiffutable that the Subjects of Zingis Callmaks Chan were Idolaters, the for his Part it is certain Idolaters. that he discover'd on several Occasions Sentiments far more elevated. Nevertheless one can by nothing positively thereupon. It is also apparent, that like all other great Conquerors, he

had little or no Religion, and that thence came VOL. II.

that Equality with which he treated all Religions; among which he made no other Difference than what his interest obliged him to do.

Ch.

orese

Dala

Bran

towa

fubic

this

ving

tenc

paffe

Torg

on C

pref

of tand

Zai

Th

Con

Ai

the

Ta

Po

fid

an

of

Ti

ha

of

of

T

He had indeed too discerning a Genius not to perceive the gross Error in which his idolation Subjects lived; but he had too much Ambitton and Sensuality to give place in his Heart to Sensitioners more refined, with regard to the furtherness of the Creature, which reigned absolutely in his Soul. Upon the whole we may conclude, that if he had diffined ideas of the true Divinity, they did not go be youd the continuous Bounds of simple Notions.

SECT. III.

Of the three Branches of the Moguls or Callmaks, and of several other Tribes under that Dominion.

Callmaki, Díongari,

three Branches; which are, 1. The Calmaki Diongari, 2. The Callmaki Cofboti, and 3. the Callmaki Torgaüti, of which the first, viz. the Callmaki Diongari is the most considerable and powerful; it is composed of an infinite Number of particular Tribes, and obeyed Chan whom they call Contaish, who is properly the Grand Chan of all the Callmaks.

Callmaki Coshoti. The Callamaki Coshoti possess all the Kingdom of Tangut, and are subject to the Dala Lama, who governs them by two Chans; one of which has the Government of Tibet, and the other that of Tangut. The two Chans who at present

not to

atrou

bitio

o' Sen

ae fil

fions

n the

o be-

18.

1

their

all

and

rft.

era.

57

rly

ne

nt

539

present possess these Posts, are called the one Dalai Chan, and the other Zingis Chan.

The Callmaki Torgauti is the least confiderable Callmati Branch of the Callmaks. They dwelt heretofore Torgauri. towards the Frontiers of Turkestan, and were subject to Contaish: but about the beginning of this Age, one of his Coufins called Ajuka, having found means to get from him, under pretence that he was in fear of his Life at the Court, passed the River Yark with the Tribe of the Torgauts, and put himself under the Protection of Russia. Ajuka Chan encamps usually at present with the Ordas under his Obedience in the fandy Grounds about Astrachan to the East of the River Wolga, between it and the Yaik: and in Summer he often comes to refide on the Banks of this River about Soratof and 'Tis some of these People who were

feen in the Russian Armies in the late War.

They differ in nothing from the other Callmaks. For the reft, tho thefe two last Branches Two last of the Callmaks have their own Chans, yet dependant Contaish preserves a kind of direct Sovereignty on Conover them, and draws from them powerful Aid, when he is in War with his Neighbours the Mungals, the Chinese, and the Mohammedan Tatars. But fince the Beginning of this Age. that Prince is mightily fallen from his original Power, the Chinese and Mungals having on one side taken from him the Provinces of Chamill and Turfan, situate to the West of the Desarts of Shamo [now Goby,] towards the Frontiers of Tibet; and the Russians, on the other side, having advanced within a little way of the Lake of Sayffan: All which join'd to the Defection of his Cousin Ajuka has reduced him to the last Extremity, of which the Conjunctures of the L 2

Grand Tatary Country of Part I.

Times hitherto, wou'd not suffer the Court of Russia to take Advantage.

Ch.

of h

on t

betv

Tril

of S

cauf

fron

be I

fide

Sult

like

refle

of 1

the

tiza

tan

call

Of

tha Gr

ha

of

Rergis. It is not twenty Years since the Kirgis still inhabited between the River of Selinga and Yenisea, towards the 52 Deg. of Latitude; and in regard they were continually making Incursions they extremely incommoded not only the Subjects of Russia in their Neighbourhood, but also the Mungals in Alliance with China. They were Subjects of Contaish, and cloth'd themselves after the manner of other Callmaks; but because they naturally lov'd War and Disorder, they did not imitate them at all in their manner of living peaceably and innocently. Nevertheless as from time to time there went away many Families, as well on the side of the

TransRussians as the Mungals, Contaish thought fit planted to- some Years since to carry them from those wards the Consines, and transplant them somewhere towards the Frontiers of the Indies, insomuch that one cannot say exactly where they are

fettled at prefent.

The Telanguts inhabit at present about a Lake which the Russians call Osero Teleskoy, and the Callmaks, Altan-Nor: They are subject to Contaish, and lead much the same Life with the

Tumats. other Callmaks.

guts.

The Tumats, who were a Branch of the Virats in the Time of Zingis Chan, inhabited between the Selinga and the River Argun, to the North of the Tribe of the Cunachmars, and extended as far as the Frontiers of the Turkaks.

ginal from Bocum Catagun, eldest of the two Twin Brothers; whom the Tatars pretend the Widow Alancu, Grandaughter of Yuldus Chan, brought forth a long time after the Death

rt I.

rt of

fti]]

and

and.

cur-

the

but

hey

em-

iks;

Dif-

heir

tly.

ent

the

fit

ofe

to-

ich are

nd to

he

h

0

1,

1

of her Husband. See what our Author relates on that Head, p. 56, &c.

'Tis related of the Kanklis, p. 32 and 33, that Kankliss between fifty and fixty thousand Men of that Tribe put themselves under the Obedience of Sultan Mohammed Chowarazm Shah, because his Mother Turkan Chatun was sprung from their Tribe; which considered, it will be no surprize to the Reader, to see a considerable Tribe of the Turks in the Service of Sultan Mohammed against the Moguls, who were likewise Turks by Extraction; especially if he resects that the Kanklis dwelt upon the Frontiers Their of the Dominions of Sultan Mohammed, and that Country, they had always savour'd Kutshluk and his Partizans against Zingis Chan.

[The Kanklis are in all likelihood the Inhabitants of that part of Tatary which Rubruquis

calls the Country of Changle.]

SECT. IV.

Of the Government of the Moguls or Callmaks, and the Power of Con Taisha their Grand Chan.

THE [Moguls or Callmaks] give the Name Con Talof Taisha to their Heads of Tribes, and sha corthat of Con Taisha or Grand Seigneur to their ruptly Grand Chan; from whence by Corruption he has got the Name of Contaish.

he

'Tis of Contaish, as the only Sovereign Chan of the Callmaks, that our Author speaks, p. 355, and 'tis worth observing that he gives the Name of Chan to that Prince; which shews

L 3

Ch

the

am

mal

neal

the

vert

littl

that

intr

fore

Rei

as t

Succ

prol Pof

of t

enjo

Mal

which

brin

dwe

the

Littl

in th

whe

whe

Refi

Lak

which

his f

has

past,

C

Title of Chan given only to the Descendents of Zingis Chan,

he must be descended of the Posterity of Zingis Chan; for unless it were so, our Author would have taken care not to have given him the Title of Chan, preposses'd as he was, that so long as there remain'd any Descendents of the House of Zingis Chan, no other Prince, how powerful so ever, had right to command the Tatars in that Quality, agreeable to what we have observed

elsewhere with regard to Tamerlan.

As all Little Bucharia is at present in the Hands of Contaish and the Callmaks, one might easily be induced to believe that the Chans of the Callmaks are sprung from the Descendents of Chisser Choda [or Kesar Choga] Chan of the Posterity of Zagatai Chan; but when it is considered that the Princes, the Descendents of Zagatai Chan, who reigned in the Country of Cashgar or Little Bucharia, had embraced the Mohammedan Religion, and that the Callmaks and their Chan, who at present posses this Country, are Idolaters of the Religion of the Dalai Lama, 'tis plain to see that these latter cou'd not have been in possession of Little Bucharia, but by some Revolution which has happen'd since.

Chans of the Callmaks defcended of Taulai Chan.

This has led me to believe that the Chan of the Callmaks are sprung from the Descendents of the Princes of the Posterity of Taulai Chan, the Son of Zingis Chan, who continued to reign over the Moguls after the Death of Coplai Chan; for as their Subjects are the true Descendants of the antient Moguls, and that we know for cartain that the Princes who succeeded Coplai Chan in the Empire of the Moguls never embraced the Mohammedan Religion, 'tis probable at least that the Chans of this part of the Moguls, which we at present call the Callmaks, are the Descendants of those Princes, since we find them

ingis

p,no.

Title

ig as

fe of

1160-

that

rv'd

ands

ly be

maks

podja

aga-

the

who

attle

Re-

nan,

ters

lain

In

Re-

of

s of

the

ign

an;

of

er-

ban

the

aft

ik,

nd

em

them at prefent with the fame Religion, the fame Subjects, the same Clothing, the same manner of Living, and same Customs, and nearly the same Dominions which the Princes, the Successors of Coplai Chan, possess'd. Ne-Tet too nice wertheless 'tis very difficult, considering how decide. little Knowledge we yet have of the History of that Continent, to come to a Decision on so intricate a Question.

[It appears from what we have observed before about the Name of Callmaks, that in the Reign of Timur Bee, and doubtless till such time as they conquered the Countries Westward, they inhabited the Parts possessed by the immediate Successors of Zingis Chan, and therefore we may probably conclude that Con-taisha is of their Posterity; and if his Subjects are not possessed of the same Dominions which his Predecessors enjoy'd, they are by the Exchange become Masters of the true Country of the Moguls, which is their natural Habitation.]

Centails is a potent Prince, being able to bring into the Field above 100000 Men. He dwells continually under Tents, according to the fashion of his Ancestors, the he possesses Little Bucharia with its Dependences, wherein there are a good many Towns [except it be when his Affairs call him into that Country, residence where at such times he resides at Yerkeen.] His of Con. Residence at present is to the South-East of the tailblake Sayssan*, on the Banks of the River Ila; which he changes according to the Necessity of his Affairs. About which, and the River Tekees, he has kept his ordinary Residence for some Years past, that he might be better in a capacity

L 4

^{[*} In the present State of Bucharia, p. 28. his Residence

to watch the Motions of his Cousin Ajuka Chan, and of the Mobammedan Tatars, who are mortal Enemies to the Callmaks: For the Mungals, the Callmaks, and the Mobammedan Tatan make properly but one and the fame Nation yet there is fo great an Antipathy among them. that they are continually at War together; and as the Callmaks are fituate just in the Middle be. tween the two others, they must be always on their Guard about the Frontiers, if they would avoid being furpriz'd by their Enemies.

Animolity between and Mahommedan Tatars.

This Animofity proceeds from the fide of the Mohammedan Tatars, thro' the pernicious the Pagan Principles of their Religion, which inspires them with Hatred against those which are of a different Worship; and from their Inclination for Rapine, for not being willing to keep to the plain and poor way of living of their Anceftors, like the Callmaks, and being too flothful to labour, they feek without Ceremony to procure themselves the Conveniences of Life which they want, at the Expence of every Body. But on the Part of the Mungals, who make Profession of the same Worship with the Callmaks, and who lead almost the same Life with them, the Cause is different; and 'tis properly no other than a Game of the Emperor of China, who after having been railed from a very confiderable Chan of the Mungals

Nieucheu, of Nieucheu which he was before, to one of the finest Empires in the World, feared nothing so much as his own Nation; therefore after finding the Secret of reducing gradually by all forts of indirect Means, all the Mungals to have recourse to his Protection, he hath known fo well how to embroil them with the Callmaks, their Brethren and Neighbours, that they are at present continually at war together; and, in all ap-

pearance,

Ch.

pear

with

tion

mak

Cuf

bee

fee

ral

bee

abo

inte

ter

tail

the

ve

101

dif

Wi

the

of

w

up

Part I

Chan

e mor.

Tatars.

Vation,

them,

; and le be.

vs on

Would

le of

icious

pires

of a

ation

p to

Anoth-

y to

Life

vho

the

ife tis mfed als he

ng of fe w

ıţ

pearance, this Animosity will never end, but with the entire Ruin of one or the other Nation.

Contaish, the present Grand Chan of the Cal-The Camp maks, always dwells in Tents according to the of Con-Custom of the Moguls his Ancestors. I have taish a been affur'd, that it is something very curious to ous sight. fee his Camp, and that it is distributed into feveral Quarters, Places and Streets, just as if it had been a Town, being no less than a good League about, and able at a Minute's Warning to fend into the Field 15000 good Horse. The Quarter where the Chan resides is in the middle of the Camp. His Tents are made of a certain very strong Calico made in China, which the Russians call Kitaika; and as they are raised Kitaika. very high, and of all forts of very lively Colours, they exceedingly delight the View at a distance. In Winter, they cover these Tents with Felt, which makes them impenetrable by the Injuries of the Season: And for the Wives of the Chan, they build little Houses of Wood, which may be taken down in an Instant, and set upon Chariots when they are going to decamp.

SECT.

SECT.

Of the Wars between Contails and the Chan of China, and of the Revolution which bappend thereupon.

Ontaile, besides being possessed of the middle Part of Grand Tatary, which is the true Country of the Moguls, is Mafter of Little Bucharia and Tangut; but of late the Provinces of Chamil and Turfan, which were Dependences of Little Bucharia, have been taken from him by the Chinese, which happen'd in the fol-

lowing manner.

Contail having been inform'd that there was Very rich Gold Mine. to the East of the Defarts of Goby, at the Foot of the Mountains which separate his Lands from those of China, a Gold Mine so rich, that the Gold might be drawn out of it without much trouble, he fent thither one of his Murfas with a Body of 10000 Men to take possession of it; which having roused the Jealousy of the Chines, and the Animosity of the Mungals, they came and fell upon the Callmaks in fuch Numbers that they routed them, and purfued them to the Defarts, which the Callmaks repassed by favour of certain very fertil Valleys which are hidden by

the high Mountains which cross the Desart on

Fertil Val leys in the Defarts.

that fide from West to East, and which the Chinese had no Knowledge of till then.

This Discovery was very pleasing to the late Chinese Expedition Chan of China, and in order to try if any Advantage could be made of it, he fent a power-Contaifh. ful Army that way, with a good Train of Artillery, under the Command of the Prince his third Son, who is the present Chan of China; in

favour

ch. Y

avou of th

hat h uit 1

Firew

his I T

ame Retro

ter'd

and f

with

he d

of th

build

took

Infai

vanc

Cont

ter c

bein

tle;

that

nese

had

hav

and

fer'

the

but

WO

his

and

fen

OW

ditt

nel

against

avour of whom he already design'd to dispose f the Succession to the Empire; and 'tis faid, hat he caused him to be accompany'd by a Jeuit very understanding in Fortifications and Fireworks, to affift him with his Councils in

this Expedition.

an of

iddle

true

Little

nces

den-

rom

fol-

Was

oot

rom

the

uch

vith

It;

refe,

ame

hat

the

out

by

OP.

bi-

ate

ld-

eril-

his

in

UF

That Prince having pass'd the Defarts by the Take the ame Road which the Callmaks follow'd in their Provinces of Cha-Retreat after the Defeat before spoken of, en-mill and ter'd into the Provinces of Chamil and Turfan; Turfan. and finding that Contails advanced to meet him with a fine and numerous Cavalry, against whom he durst not venture his Army in the vast Plains of those Provinces, he bethought himself of building Forts at proper Distances, which he took care to furnish very well with Cannon and Infantry, and by favour of these Forts he advanced continually forwards in the Lands of Contails, and made himself at length intire Master of the aforesaid Provinces, the Callmaks not being able all the while to bring them to a Battle; which obliged Contails, who faw plainly that it was impossible for him to repel the Chinese without Infantry and Guns, the Use of which had been till then unknown to the Callmaks, to have recourse to the late Emperor of Russia; and to induce him to grant his Request, he ofter'd by a folemn Embaffy, which he fent in the Year 1720 to St. Petersburg*, to become tributary to Rustia, on Condition that that Court would fend a Body of 10000 regular Troops to his Affiltance, with Cannon in Proportion; and with that Aid he would oblige himself to fend the Chinese quickly back again into their own Country. But the War which still conti-

^{*} Contailh offers to become tributary to the Czar on Condition to assist him with Men and Cannon against the Chinese:

Ch.

Conce

mo

the

Bo

Callnof th

Defai

his Br

the e

death Stren

Wref

fo rou

Zig

ceasec

Chan

his F

be his

Perfu

whom

preva

ther n

Spirit

refolv

of doi

Sor

Zain,

lon Boy

a Wa

Amba

Congr

their]

the D

fadors

ma, m

I have t

nued between Sweden and Russia, and the Views which the late Emperor of Russia began then to have upon Persia, hinder'd him from accepting those Proposals, as advantageous as they were to Russia. And as the Times have entirely changed their Face since, 'tis probable that Contaish will endeavour to get out of the Scrape with China the best he can, without waiting for the Succours from Russia.

In the mean time the Chinese have seized all which appertained heretofore to Contaish, lying to the East of the Desarts towards the Frontiers of China, and have there settled Colonies of Mungals; but they have not meddled with the Frontiers of the Dalai Lama. Nevertheless, if

they can keep Possession of the Provinces of Chamill and Turfan, and come to extend themselves along the Mountains which stretch on that side as far as the Frontiers of the Dominions of the Great Mogul, as they seem inclined to do, the Country of Tangut must necessarily fall of

We have a different Account given us of the

course into their Hands.

Occasion and Consequences of this War in the present State of Bucharia, already mentioned; it makes the fourth and last Chapter of that Treatise, and bears the Title of the late Revolution which happen'd in Little Bucharia. I must own I look upon the Relation to be spurious; however, that every one may judge himself, I have inserted an Abstract of it. And as the Narrative concerns that Prince more properly as Chan of the Callmaks, than as Sovereign

of a conquer'd Country, I thought this the properest Place to introduce it.]

Concern-

Note.

Mungals

setled in

tho [eParts.

t I,

ews

hen

ac-

en-

ble

the

Out

all

ing

iers

of

the

, if

em-

that

sof

do,

of

the

the

ed;

that

VO-

1

ípu-

IH

d as

010-

eign

the

ern-

Concerning the late Revolution which happen'd amongst the Mogulls or Callmaks, taken from the present State of Bucharia.

Bosto Chan, or Bosugto Chan, Prince of the Callmaks, who ordinarily incamps on the sides of the Lake Yamish, and in the neighbouring Desarts, bred up at his Court three Nephews, his Brother's Sons. Having taken an Aversion to the eldest, and finding no Cause to put him to death, he had recourse to a Man of great Strength, who under pretext of Playing and Wrestling with the young Prince, handled him so roughly, that a few days after he died of it.

Zigan Araptan, youngest Brother of the decased, alarm'd at such a Proceeding, which Bosto raptan Chan would pass off as an Accident, sled with sties from his Friends and Domesticks, judging it would Court. be his Turn next if he staid. Nor could all the Persuasions of his other Brother Danchinombu, whom the Chan sent after him for that purpose, prevail with him to return. Tho his eldest Brother might have been of a haughty and turbulent Spirit as the other represented him; yet he was resolv'd not to trust an Uncle who was capable of doing so unnatural an Action.

Some time after, Bosto Chan falling out with Bosto Lain, or Zuzi Chan, Prince of the Mungals, Amu-Chan and Im Bogdo Chan, Emperor of China, to prevent Zain Chan a War between them, proposed to them by his fall out. Ambassador Averna Alcanaibu, to appoint a Congress at a Place on the Frontiers, and end their Differences amicably by the Mediation of the Dalai Lama *. Accordingly their Ambassadors and the Deva, in behalf of the Dalai Lama, met; but it all came to nothing by the

Ambassa-

^{*} Here follows a short Account of the Delai Lama, which Ihave taken notice of, p. 486 and 491.

Ch

lon

Fin

laus

if I

ed f

his

do

afte

UY

Val

Sn

in

an

CO

ga

ta

ot

ta

B

in

ga

ki

m

6

P

3

at

il

Ambassadors disputing who should have the Precedence. Bosto Chan's maintain'd that it was due to his Master, 1st. As being descended in a right Line from Zingis Chan; 2dly. Because the Power of the Callmaks exceeded that of the Mangals, as much, says he, as the Hairs of the Head exceed those of the Eyebrows. This Comparison netted the Ambassador of Zain Chan, who reply'd fiercely, that there wanted only a good Razor to make them equal, and broke up the Congress. 'Tis not the first time that Conferences which might have saved much Blood and Treasure, have been broke off by as frivolous Disputes.

Chân of China favours Zain Chan:

The Emperor of China, upon this Rupture, was in doubt for a time what Course to take: On the one hand, he dreaded the intrepid and enterprizing Spirit of Bosto Chan, whom he wanted to have humbled; and on the other he fear'd, if the Mungals, who were less powerful, were left to themselves, he would get the better of them, and so the Remedy would be work than the Disease; but at the best, he thoughts dangerous to fee the War kindled fo near his Frontiers. Wherefore he perfuaded Zain Chan, s the best Policy, to be before-hand with Bosto Chan, and carry the War as far as he could in to his Dominions, backing his Infinuations with many magnificent Presents, and Promises to alfift him under-hand in case of need.

Zain Chan defeats Bosto Chan's Van Guard

Zain Chan following this Advice, enter'd the Country of the Callmaks with his Troops; and in the first Encounter his Vanguard entirely defeated that of Bosto Chan, whose Brother Dorzizap lost his Life. Bosto Chan was taking Tea when the Express brought him News of the Loss, and that the Enemy was not far off. He was at first concern'd at it, and making haste to give

fome Order, the Cup flipt from between his Fingers and scalded his Hand. See, fays he, laughing, what one gets by too much Vivacity; if I Bad been less forward I should not have scald-

ed myfelf.

Part I.

he Pre-

as due

right

Power

als, as

KCCeed

n net-

o re-

good

ip the

onfe-

d and

olous

sture,

take:

and

m he

er he

erful.

bet-

vorle

tht it

r his

m,as Bosto

III-

vith

af-

the

and de-

07-

ofs,

at ve

me

The Rigour of the Seafon and Depth of the Shows hindering him to act as he would, he drew his Army together and kept upon his Guard, not doubting but the Mungals, grown ventureform after their Victory, and not knowing the Counmy as well as he, would foon give him an Advantage; and the better to lead them into the Share, he counterfeited Feat, mounted his Horse in hafte, and gave out that he was gone quite off and should not be heard of for some Years to come.

This Report reaching the Camp of the Mun-Is beaten gali, Zain Chan doubled his March and de with great

tach'd two flying Parties; one of 8000 and the Slaughter. other of 3000 Men, by different Roads to overtake the pretended Fugitive This was what Bolto Ghan airred at; Who turning fuddenly upon those Detachments, surrounded and cut them in pieces. Then, without delay, he march'd agamit the main Army of the Mungals, who were fo aftomish'd, that they fled without striking a Stroke, and Bosto Chan pursuing them, made a horrible Slaughter. The Number of the Slain may be judged by the nine Camels Loads of Ears and Locks of Hair which he fent to the Place of his Residence, as Tokens of his Victory. After that he put himself at the Head of Retires 30000 Men, and follow'd those who had escap'd within the the Slaughter, driving them before him as far Chinese as the Wall of China, within which at length Wall.

Zain Chan retir'd.

The Emperor of China being inform'd of this Demanded ill Success, endeavour'd by Persuasions and Gifts by Bosto to Chan.

Cb.

the

mol

diec

that

Do

Aff

plai

feat

neg

Sept

all

he

haps

Can Sept

paff

Pek

to A

Hea

1

into

hor

then

whe

Was

Gen

Succ

Ene

this

fente

the

as b

Cha

their

refu

to it

to prevail on Bosto Chan to withdraw; but that Conqueror instead of hearkening to an Accommodation, sent the Emperor word, that if he did not deliver up Zain Chan, and the rest who had taken Shelter in his Dominions, he would declare War against him.

Bosto Chan attackt by the Chan of China. Amulon Bogdo Chan taking this as a Challenge, caused several Bodies to march one after the other, which were defeated by Bosto Chan as fast as they arriv'd. The Troops of that Prince were so brave, or those of the Emperor so bad, that one time 1000 Callmaks beat 20000 Chinese, and another time 10000 overthrew 80000. At length the Emperor, to put an end at once to the Progress of his Enemy, resolv'd to oppose him with all his Forces and oppress him by Numbers. For that purpose he assembled an Army of 300000 Men, and a Train of Artillery of 300 Pieces of Cannon.

His Army quite de- e

This great Army, which was ten times stronger than that of the Callmaks, surrounded their Camp on every side; and tho the Emperor was almost sure of Victory, yet always preferring gentle Methods to violent, he sent him Conditions as honourable and advantageous as if he had been in the other's Circumstances. But Bosto Chan pust up with his former Success, rejected the Proposals with disdain; whereupon ensued a bloody Battle, which Bosto Chan lost, and he had much ado to save himself by slight to the neighbouring Mountains.

He was not so much afflicted for this Missortune which he had drawn upon himself, as the Loss of his Wife Guny, or Any, who was slain in the Rout. The Emperor having found her Body among the Dead, caused the Head to be cut off, and carry'd it along with him to adom

his Triumph.

Provisi-

art I

that

com-

if he

Who

ould

Chal-

after

Chan

that

peror

0000

nrew

end

olv'd

ores

lem-

in of

ong-

their

Was

ring

on-

f he

But

re-

pon

loft, ight

for-

the

lain

her

be

orn

vili-

Provisions and Forage beginning to fail in the Mountains where Bosto Chan had retired, most of his few Followers, and of his Horses, died for hunger; fo that it was happy for him that he was able to return almost alone into his Dominions, where he spent two Years in great Affliction, exposed to the Reproaches and Complaints of his Subjects, who all refented his Defeat. Perceiving he had nothing for it but to negotiate the Affair, he resolv'd to send his Son Septenbaldius, to the Dalai Lama at Berentola, in all likelihood to defire his Mediation which he flighted before; but Abay Dola Beck [perhaps Abdalla Begb] Governor of the Town of Camull, the dependant on Bosto Chan, caused Septenbaldius and his small Retinue to be seized paffing thro' his Government, and fent them to Peking, submitting himself and his Government to Amulon Bogdo Chan, who cut off the Prisoners Heads, and confirm'd the Governor in his Post.

The News of this Disaster threw Bosto Chan into Despair; he assembled all his Subjects, exhorted them to live in Peace and Unity, and then giving them Liberty to retire every one where he pleased, took Poison and died. This was the End of Bosto Chan, a Prince of a great Genius and much Valour; who, by a Series of Successes, had made himself terrible to all his Enemies, and acquir'd a great deal of Glory.

As foon as Zigan Araptan, who kept hid all this while, heard of his Uncle's Death, he prefented himself to the Callmaks, and demanded the Succession, which they could not refuse him as being next Heir. The Buchars, whom Bosto Chan had conquer'd some time before, follow'd their Example; and the other Provinces who refused to come in of themselves, were obliged to it by Arms.

VOL. II.

M

Zigan

Grand Tatary Country of Parts

ch:

Con

him

Pov

of C

wei

Pha

it no

of y

long

abat

- []

Pill

and be f

and

are !

Of t

have

yet riou

T

Tata

are t

Ske!

Skel

Veff

are a

Zigan Araptan being thus acknowledged throughout the Dominions of Bosto Chan, the Buckars conducted him one Day to a little Wood very agreeable for its Situation, confisting not of above an hundred Trees, very bushy, and of a particular Kind, where for some Days he feasted them very nobly; after which they so lemnly invested the new Prince with the Title of Contaish, which signifies a Grand Monarch; and forbid, under pain of Death, to call him by his former Name.

The new Contails well deserves that Distinction, being a Prince endowed with great Talents: He is remarkable for his Genius, Gentlenes Courage and Piety: He is actually in war with the Emperor of China, for whom he cuts out a

good deal of Work.

They relate several Particulars of his Life, of which the two sollowing have come to my Knowledge. It happen'd one Day while Contaish was hunting, that one of his Domesticks not taking right Aim, shot out one of his Eyes: The rest, enrag'd to see their Master blinded, sell upon the unlucky Archer, and would have kill'd him, but Contaish prevented them. "Let "him go in peace, says he, to his People; "one must not judge of a Crime but by the "Intention of him who commits it; he has "wounded me without Design, and his Death

"will not restore me my Eye, which an Accident has deprived me of." And not content
with saving his Life, he gave him his Liberty,
in order to make him amends, he said, for the
Danger which he had been in.

Another of his Subjects had the Misfortune three times running to lofe all his Substance: Containly, who knew the Merit of that honest Man fet him up again every time in a flourishing.

Condi-

Condition; but Fortune continuing to perfecute him, and having plunged him once more into Poverty, he implored anew the Munificence of Contaish; whereupon that Prince made Anfwer in thefe Terms: Remember, my Son, that Thave affifted you three times; and I would do it now also, if I did not judge by the Obstinacy of your bad Fortime that Heaven feems to have defin'd you to Poverty . I dare therefore no longer aid a Man whom God himfelf to vilibly ahandons.

[A Story of Ugadai Chan in the Genealogical Hillory, feems to have given the Hint to this; and I must own I look upon all this Relation to lefictitious; some of the Names are plainly so, and it looks the more suspicious, as the Facts

are let down without the Dates.

company with to

nts:

with

my. Conicks

yes: led,

ave

le;

ट ह

ty,

me

911-

т.

ng.

SECT. VI.

Of the Tombs, Pyramids, deserted Towns, and curious Writings, found lately in the Country of the Callmakso

Otwithstanding we are fure that the People who inhabit this Continent at present have always led an unfixt and wandering Life; yet there are two things which puzzle the Cunous a little.

The first is, that in many Places of Grand Tombs of Totary towards the Frontiers of Siberia, there under lisare to be feen little Hills, under which are found the Hills. Skeletons of Men, accompany'd with the Skeletons of Horses, and many forts of small Vessels and Jewels of Gold and Silver: There are also found there Skeletons of Women with

M 2 Gold

Ch

the

COL

COL

of

not

the

COL

bro

Yen

kn

tha

ma

mo

ma

pre

ing

To

are

Zi

int

De

Pe

fia

ria

of

of

ha

the

pr

Pe

an

the

Sil

lef

for

Ta

no

Veffels of Gold and Silver buty'd in 2hofe Graves.

Gold Rings on their Fingers, which does not feem to agree in any wife with the present Inha. bitants of Grand Tatary. And that which I relate here is so true, that since the Swedish Prisoners have been in Siberia, they have gone in great Troops to fearch these Tombs. The Russians on their part have done the same: and as the Call. maks were not willing that they should make a Custom of coming and spoiling those Tombs which are a good way within their Lands, they flew at several times a good Number of those Adventurers; infomuch that it is feverely for. bidden throughout all Siberia to go fearch those Tombs.

Some buned in the Step or Defart.

The second is, that in the Year 1721, a certain dred Nee- Physician sent by the late Emperor of Rusha, to dles erett- discover the various Plants and Roots produced in Siberia, being arriv'd in company with some Officers of the Swedish Prisoners towards the River Tzulim, to the West of the Town of Krasnoyar, they found erected about the middle of the great Step which lies on that fide, a kind of Needle or Spire cut out of one white Stone about 16 Foot high, and some hundreds of other small ones about 4 or 5 Foot high, set Inscription round about the first. There is an Inscription

on the great Needle.

on one of the fides of the great Needle, and fe veral Characters on the little ones, which Time has already defaced in many Places: And to judge of what remains of the Inscription (which was copy'd from the great Needle by a Device which was communicated to me afterwards) it must be observ'd that the Characters have no manner of Connection with the Characters of the Languages which are at present used in the of the pre- North of Asia; and these sorts of Works more over agree so little with the Genius of the Tatari, that it is almost impossible to believe that either they

No Resemblance. with any fent Tatar Characters.

rt [.

s not

nha-

elate

oners

great

us on

Call-

ke a

mbs

they

hose

for-

hose

tain

, to

din

Of-

Ri-

raf-

e of

l of

e a-

0-

fet

ion

fe-

ich

nd

ion

)e-

ds)

no

of

he

re-

rs,

er

they or their Ancestors were ever capable of conceiving fuch a Defign; especially if it be consider'd, that neither in the Neighbourhood of the Place where these Monuments are found, nor for an hundred Leagues round about, are there any Quarries from whence those Stones could have been dug, and they could have been brought there no other way than by the River Tenisea. Nevertheless the Fact is certain, and I know not truly what to fay of it, farther than that Time and the Discoveries which may be made by degrees, as foon as we shall procure more exact Informations of that vast Continent, may perhaps give Light into a Matter which at present there is no accounting for.

But with regard to the first Difficulty, touch- Conjecture ing the Jewels of Gold which are found in the about the Tombs, it feems very probable to me that they first Diffiare the Graves of the Moguls, who accompany'd culty. Zingis Chan in the great Irruption which he made into the fouthern Provinces of Asia, and of their Descendants in the first Generations. For as those People carry'd off almost all the Riches of Persia, the Country of Chowarazm, of Great Bucharia, of the Kingdom of Casbgar, of all Tangut, of one part of the Indies, and of all the North of China, 'tis not difficult to imagine that they had much Gold and Silver; and inafmuch as the greatest Part of the Pagan Tatars have at Tatars bui present the Custom, when any of their own ry the best People dies, to bury with him his best Horse of their and Moveables for his Use in the other World, with sheir they did not fail to bury Vessels of Gold and Dead, Silver with their Dead so long as they had any left. So that all the Difference between the aforesaid Graves, and those of the present Pagan Tatars, confifts in this; that now there remains no more of those Riches among them: what M 3

Ch

of

the

An

eith

of t

Mo

dead

clin

Luci

ditio

Pyr

Doc

bury

tive

Pyra

have

Aut

ther

folid

men

Alar

amir

foun

bette

kefta

vers

Calla

that

poffe

Shia (

disco

of va

eleve

eight

what it, is

Wall

It

wooden Porringers for want of golden ones.

Bury now they inter with their Dead usually confifts of some wooden Porringers, and such like Uten. fils, which the in themselves of little value, yet on account of the Use they are of in their little Houses, are of no small Consideration. Add to this, that confidering the extraordinary Ve. neration which all the Pagan Taters generally have for those Graves, as the Graves of their Ancestors; the Opposition which the Calinals gave to those who went to search them, may be taken as a certain Sign, that they look'd up on them as the Tombs of their Ancestors, since no other Confideration could have moved to peaceable a People as the Callmaks naturally are to take fuch a Course on the like Occasion.

No Signs of Riches among the prefent counted for.

The easier to conceive how it happens, that there are scarce any Signs at present of the Tatan ever having had any Riches among them; it is Tatars ac- to be observ'd first, that the Grant of Persia to Halacu, and then the Revolt of the Indies and China upon the intestine Divisions which reigned among the Tatars in the second Century after Zingis Chan, stop'd all the Passages by which Wealth used to flow out of the southern Countries into Tatary; fo that the Tatars continuing to bury the choicest of their rich Moveables, and no Supply coming in as at first, no wonder if in the Space of about 500 Years, there should be left no Appearance of Wealth among them a bove Ground

As to the Needles or Pyramids, it is not for Needles or Pyramids easy to guess by whom or upon what Occasion poffibly they were erected. But as the Sieur Paul Lucas Graves. in his second Voyage * to the Levant, has given an account of a surprizing Number of Pyramids no less than 20000, within two days Journey

^{*} Dans la Grece, & l'Asie Mineure, Tom, I. p. 126.

of

en,

yet

dd

Ve.

ally

leir

Day

UP-

ace

fo

re,

nat

ars

15

nd

sf-

n-

a

f

of Cafarea, in Afia Minor; 'tis very probable Above they were both the Work of the same People : 20000 And who fo likely to erect them as the Tatars, near Cafaeither as Trophies of their Victories, or Marks rea in Alia of the Extent of their Conquests, or rather as Minor. Monuments erected over the Graves of their dead flain in Battle: and what the rather inclines me to this Imagination is, that the Sieur Lucas takes notice, that according to the Tradition of the County, in the upper Part of each Pyramid (for they are all hollow, with Rooms, Doors, Stairs and Windows in them) there is bury'd a Corps. 'Tis true, we cannot be posifive that the Architecture of both these sorts of Pyramids is exactly the fame; both Authors have been defective in their Accounts, for the Author of the Remarks does not observe whether the Siberian Pyramids are round or square, folid or hollow; nor does Lucas tell us the Dimensions of those he saw in Natolia. Had the Alarm of Robbers given him time to have examin'd the Infcription, he after much fearthing found on one of them, we might have had fome better Account of them.]

It will be observed in our Account of Tur-Town kestan, p. 568, that the Country betwixt the Ri-quite devers Yaick and Sirr is inhabited partly by the served. Callmaks, and partly by the Casatshia Orda. In that Part of the Country which the Caslmaks possess, and towards the Confines of the Casatshia Orda, the Russians, about twelve Years ago, discovered a Town quite desart in the very midst of vast sandy Grounds which are on that side, situation, eleven days Journey to the S.W. of Yamisha, and eight to the West of Simpelat. This Town, by what I have learned from an Officer who was at it, is about half a League in compass, with Walls five Foot thick and sixteen high; the

M 4

Foun-

of :

long

writ

the !

with

which

the :

But

one

in th

ry to

Han

turn

fort

Hebi

on b

not

Wri

racte

fee t

guag

tings

guag

of I Devo

inhab

Relig

what

are a

bable

of W

left t T

Tow

mer;

Were

on ac alfo h

Houses of Brick.

560

and the rest of Brick, being flank'd with Towers in feveral Places: The Houses of the Town are all built with Sun-burnt Bricks, and Side-pofts of Wood, much after the common Fashion in Pa land: But there are to be feen great Brick Build. ings, with each a Tower belonging to it, which in all likelihood must have been set apart for divine Service. All these Buildings were in pretty good Condition when this Town was first discover'd; nor was there the least Appearance

In good Condition.

of any violent Destruction.

The most remarkable of the private Houses Writings found in had feveral Chambers, and in most of these most of the Houses were found a great Quantity of Writings Houses of in Rolls in unknown Characters, several Leaves

of which were fent by the late Emperor of Ruffia to all the learned Men of Europe, famous for their Knowledge in the Oriental Languages, to try if any of them could explain them. I have feen two forts of those Writings, the first of which was written with the beautiful China Ink, upon Silk Paper, white and pretty thick, and the Leaves might be about two Foot long,

zen from the Right to Left.

and nine Inches broad; the Leaves were written First writ- on both sides, and the Lines ran from the Right to Left a-cross the same. Each Page was border'd round with two black Lines in form of a square, which left a two Inch Margin round the Leaf where there was no Writing. The Character of this first fort had some Resemblance of the Turkish. The second fort was written upon fine blue Silk Paper, with Characters of Gold and Silver: and fome of them were written entirely in Gold Characters, some wholly in Silver Characters; and others yet which had round them fometimes a Line in Characters of Gold, and sometimes a Line in Characters

II-II

one,

Wers

n are

ts of

Po-

uildhich

t for

e in

first

ance

uses hese

ings

eves Ruf-

OUS

ges,

irst

ina

ck,

ng,

ten

or-

fa

nd

be.

mit-

ers

re

olch

C-

of

of Silver. The Leaves were about 20 Inches second long, and 10 in height, and the Lines were fort write written length-ways of the Paper, running from Right to the Right to the Left. They were edged about Left. with two Lines of Gold or Silver Square-wife. which left a Margin round the Leaf like as in the first fort: it was also written on both sides. But 'tis to be observ'd that that which was on Written one fide the top of the Leaf, was the bottom Bills in in the other; fo that in turning it, it was necessa- Chancery. ny to turn the lower end up, and not from one Hand to the other, as we commonly do in turning over a Leaf. The Character of this last fort was very beautiful, and fomewhat like the Hebrew. They had laid Varnish on the Writing on both fides to preferve it; which Varnish did not pass beyond the Square which inclosed the Writing. For the rest, these two sorts of Characters have no Resemblance, and it was easy to fee they ferved to express two very different Languages. In short we learn since, that the Wri-The first ings of the first fort are in the Mogul Lan-fort are in guage; but those of the latter in the Language the Mogul of Tangut, and that they treat of Matters of The other Devotion; which shews us that the People who in that of inhabited that Town were Calimaks, and of the Tangut. Religion of the Dalai Lama: But when, and on what occasion they abandon'd that Town, we are at present ignorant. Nevertheless 'tis probable it must have happen'd upon some occasion of War, feeing otherwife they would not have left those facred Writings so carelessly.

They have discover'd since then two other Two other Towns thereabouts, both deserted like the for-Towns near the mer; and 'tis not doubted at present but they former were abandon'd within these forty or fifty Years, quite a-on account of the bloody Wars which they have bandoned.

also had since that time with the Mungals.

CHAP.

Furi

very min

Orie

gar,

as h

of Z the : after

Cent

found bec a

nued

Chow

Tu

the c

fell t

After

tho w

s the

ame

u Ch

Desce ed o

Great

n Tur

at pre

hall b

Tho

erful d

in the Chan;

pelievi

Grand

Inhabi other]

CHAP. IX, mot notify

A DESCRIPTION of the Com. try of TURKESTAN, Jubjest to the TATARS.

antient Power, Government, Name. Bounds, Division, Towns.

Name.

Urkestan signifies the Country of the Turks, and is otherwise called by the Arabs and Persians, Turan, so named according to the latter from Tur the Son of Feridun VII. King of Persia of the first Race, called that of Pishdad; but the Turks and Tutars, especially the Mohammedan, affirm it takes its Name from Turk, the eldest Son of Japhet, whom they make to be the Founder of the Turkish Nation, and common Father of all the Inhabitants of Grand Tatary, as has been observ'd in the sul Chapter.

Bounds of

Turkestan is bounded on the North by the Turkestan. River Yemba and the Mountains of Eagles, which are no better than small Hills in that Part; on the East by the Dominions of Contail, Grand Chan of the Callmaks; on the South by the Country of Chowarazm and Grand Bucharia; and on the West by the Caspian Sea. It may be a about 70 German Leagues in its greatest length, and near as much in breadth; but its Bounds have been by far more extended in times pally before Zingis Chan made himself Master of all Grand Tatary

Turke-

riols

4

511

10

51.0

ent,

the the

ord

VIL tof

ally rom

hey

ion

of

first

the

hich

OD

and

the

and

e agth,

inds

raft,

all

rke-

[Turkestan is the original Country of the Original furks and Turkmanns; it was for many Ages a Gomery of very flourishing Empire, and extended its Do- and Turb minion far on all fides, whence it is that in the manne Oriental Histories we find Ma wara'lnabr, Cashear, and other Parts of Totary called Turkestan. as happening at fundry times by Conquest to become Parts of that Empire. Before the Reign of Zingis Chan, the Turks not only subdued all the neighbouring Countries round them, but after infesting Persia by Invasions for many Centuries together, at length conquer'd it and ounded a mighty Monarchy there under Togral he about Heg. 429. A. D. 1037. which contimed for 161 Years till it was destroy'd by the Chowarazmians.

Turkestan in the Time of Zingis Chan shared Conquer'd he common Fate with the rest of Tatary, and by Zingis ell under the Dominion of that Conqueror. After his Death it fell to the Share of Zagatai: to we find all lying to the North of Sirr, which sthe greatest Part of it (if Turkestan was in the ame Condition then that 'tis now) given by Bau Chan of Capshac to Sheybani Chan, whose Descendants possessed it, till Shabacht Sultan ed out the Uzbeks to conquer Chowarazm and Great Bucharia: What Changes have happen'd a Turkestan since then we know not, only that t present 'tis divided between two Chans, as

be observ'd presently. Tho the Turks were beyond diffoute a very pow-Turks rful Nation, and perhaps bore the greatest Sway Name and the North of Asa before the Reign of Zingis Power ne-Chan; yet there feems to be no Grounds for ded over telieving (what some affert) either that all all Tatary, Grand Tatary was subject to them, or that the phabitants thereof were known till then by no

other Name than that of Turks; for the con-

trary

Tatars known to the Perfians long before Zingis Chan.

trary in both Respects appears from History, and the Account if it be genuine which we have in Mircond (as deliver'd by Teixeira) of the frequent Motions of the Tatars to attack the Per. fians before the Time of Mohammed, destroys both Opinions at once, as representing that Na. tion under powerful Kings, who feem by Turns to bear the Dominion from the Turks. And if any Credit is to be given to our Tatar Hillo. rian, for many Ages together there was neither any Name nor any Power to be heard of in the North of Asia, but that of the Moguls and 74 tars which interchangeably prevail'd. Indeed many of the Arabian and Persian Historians made the Inhabitants of that vast Continental Turks, as they have fince made them all Tatars because they were the most powerful, or the only People which were well known to them. However it does not appear that the Turk were ever Masters of more than one half of Grand Tatary; for in the Time of Cavar Chan of Turkestan, mentioned often in the foregoing History, who extended his Dominion over Little Busharia, or Cashgar, we find several Nations in the East, as those of the Mogulls, Naimans, Karaits, &c. who had their particular Chans, among which that of the Karaits was the most powerful; so that while the Turks were in possession of the West Part of Grand Tatary, the Eastern Part, which was the larger half, was divided between several Princes who ruled over their particular Tribes till Zingis Chan reduced them all under his Obedience; with whose united Power he put an end to the Empire of the Turks then divided into Factions, and fubdued all Grand Tatary from one

Ch.

one

China

Turk

giver

ing i

fucce

great

Neig

by t

fame

and 9

bour

the C

of th

for n

beyo

to th

all th

the I

that

tinen

China

Tatan

origin

(fince

by th

called

all fi

of th

of T

that c

know

goes

Nieuc

O

of Tr

Si

t L

ory,

lave

fre-

Per-

roys

Na.

irns

dif

sto-

ther

the

74

leed

ians

tall

275;

on-

em.

urks

of

var

the

Do-

we

of

had

of

hat

the

ern

di-

0-

ban

vith

the

iac-

om one ant lik

People of

VYBIAT

3 h 1685

howing

from the

Turker

one end to the other, with great Part of China and Persia.

Since then the Name and Empire of the Name of Turks have ceased in the North of Asia, and Tatars gigiven Place to that of the Tatars, who be-the Inhaing in Possession of the same Countries, have bicants of fucceeded also to the Honour of having that the North great Continent, called after their Name by their by the Neighbours in the West, as before it had been before by their Neighbours in the East; for at the zingis fame time that it went by the Name of Turkestan Chan. and Turan among the Persians and other neigh-

bouring People on this fide; it was known to the Chinese at the other end only by the Name of the Country of the Tata or Tatars, who were for many Ages their Borderers, and the People beyond the Wall which were only or best known to them: for which reason they comprehended all the rest in general under their Name. So that the Name of Tatars has extended farther than that of the Turks ever did: All that great Continent to the North of Persia, the Indies and China, having been at one time or other called Tatary; first the Eastern Part (where the Tatars originally inhabited) by the Chinese; and now (fince their Transplantation) the Western Part by the Persians: but was never that I can find called Turkestan by the bordering Nations on all sides; nor yet was it called Tatary by all of them at the same time; for as the Name of Turkestan prevailed in the West, it went by that of Tatary in the East; so now that it is known by the Name of Tatary in the West, it

Nieucheu, and the like among the Chinese. Once more let it be observ'd, that the Names of Turkestan or Turan, and Tatary, are Names of

goes by that of the Country of the Mungals,

has oina

who ever

alw:

beer

anc

thei

the

of

diff

the

dan

Ful

of

had

Wa

led

all

OW

Or:

Mo

Pa

Cre

bet

wh

Tu

Pa

the

to

tio

the

Turkestan a limited Signification with the Natives, denoting and Tata-only some particular Parts of the North of Africa and significant are extended to the whole only by some cations as not all, of their Neighbours, from whom the mone the have passed to us. And on this occasion it is

worth our Observation, that Abulgazi Chan, a Tatar himself, the writing professedly the Fill tory of his Nation, never once calls the Country they inhabit Tatary, but gives to every Part of that wast Region its own Name; as Chowa razm, Ma wara lnabr or Great Bucharia, Cafe

gar, Tangut, &c.

All the People of Tatary not derived from the Turks.

Thus I think I have made it appear against the general Opinion that the People inhabiting that Country, called by us Grand Tatary, were not universally called Turks before the Time of Zingis Chan. And perhaps it is as inconfiftent a cording to another received Notion, to make them all descend from the Turks; for the People of the East, as the Mungals and even the Callmaks, are as likely for any thing which car be shewn to the contrary, to derive their Onginal from the Chinese, to whom they bear? much greater exterior Refemblance than to the Turks. Their different way of Living maker nothing against this Opinion, since all Na tions originally have confifted of People who lived partly in the open Plains, and partly in Cities, and who upon account of that different way of Living, were at comty with each other, as is observable at prefent among the Arabs. I know it will naturally be objected, that the Descent of the other People of Tatary, and even of the Tatars themselves from the Turks, is acknowledged by Abulgati Chan in the first and second Parts of his Histo ry; but it is to be consider'd that Abulgazi Chan has

oting

Afra

ome,

they

rit is

PI

oun

Part

towa-

Caff

ainst iting

were

ne of

it, ac-

nake

Pco-

the

Can

On-

ear a

the

alees

Na

who

arth

that

mu-

pre

rally

opic VCS

lgazi

iftoban

has

has taken all he has written concerning the Ori- The Concinal of his Nation from the Persian Historians, cellion of who have taken care to give the Preference in hammeevery thing to the Turks, as a Nation which had dan Tatars always made a confiderable Figure in Afia, and no Proof. been the Masters of their Country more than once. Had the Collecting and Management of their History been left to the Tatars or Moguls themselves, as they seem to have had Histories of their own, probably we should have had a different Account of their Original, and perhaps they would have made the Turks their Descendants; but we find * all those Memoirs which fulat or Pulad, who was sent into the Country of the Moguls for that Purpose by Gazan Chan, had pickt up, were put into the Hands of his Wazir, (by corruption Vizir) Chaga Rashid, called otherwise Fadl allab, who being a Persian, in all Probability follow'd the Historians of his own Country, especially in what related to the Original of those Nations, which possibly the

There is another Point which it would be worth while to inquire into, and that is, whether the Fires and Turkmanns be the same, or different leaple, I have already given my Opinion for the first, but must refer the Consideration of it to my farther Account of Tatary, often men-

Mogul Memoirs did not treat of. Had we that

Part of Fadl allah's History, which Mr. de la

Croix has translated into French, we should be

better able to judge of this Matter.

is built of Brick, vet[b'not

In on to D. I. V. I. Si Iro N.

Turkestan is divided into two Parts, of which Division. the Western is possessed by the Cara-kalpakks, a Nation of Tatars whose Chan resides at the Town

^{*} Pag. 30.

s O

tho

the

Tur

the

beer

1

fide

40

bee

the

tar

pre

Cha of

can

Prin

1

50

16

pre

Tat

[

chia

Fat

Cho

Fen

the

tion

Mo

of Turkestan; the Eastern Part is in the Hands of the Tatars of Casatshia Orda, whose Chan has his Residence at Tashkant.

Govern-

The two Tatar Chans, between whom Turke. stan is at present divided, are both Mobammedan as well as their Subjects, and the first is commonly call'd the Chan of the Cara-Kalpakks, because those Tatars, who make a particular Orda, and who usually encamp betwixt the River Sirr and the Caspian Sea, acknowledge him for their Chan, and that is as much as he gets from them. For as to Obedience, he does not expect much of it, feeing that, as they are very strong in numbers, fo as to be able to make head against the Chan, and that their particular Mursa's have great Power over them, they have long fince accustom'd them not to obey the Orders of the Chan. how much foever they may be inclined to it. [According to our Author, p. 203, the Uzbeks affirm at present that the Chans of Turkestanare descended from Ganish Sultan fourth Son of Ganibek Chan.

TOWNS.

Turkestan The Town of Turkestan is situate in 45°30' Capital of Lat. and 89° of Longit. on the right side of a Turkesmall River which comes from the N.E. and falls into the Sirr, at a small distance from this Town. 'Tis the Residence of a Chan of the Tatars, and tho it is built of Brick, yet it is a very forry Place, and is remarkable for nothing but its agreeable Situation. In this Condition it still continues the Capital of the Country of Turkestan.]

· This

Part I

Hand

Chan

Turke-

redans

monly

e those

Who

nd the

Chan,

Foras

of it,

bers,

Chan, great

ccul-

ban

o it

zbeks

nare

am-

JILL

for a

30

of a and

this

the

is a

ing

nit

his

[This Town, as well as the whole Country, is often called Turon or Turân in the Persian Authors, who ascribe the Building of it, as well as the Founding of the whole Turkish Nation to sur, one of the Sons of Feridun VII. King of the first Persian Dynasty, call'd Pishdad, as has been already observed, p. 562.]

The Town of Tashkant is situate on the Right Tashkant. side of the River Sirr in 45° of Latit. and 92° 40' Longit. 'Tis a very antient Town, and has been often destroy'd and rebuilt on account of the frequent Wars among the neighbouring Tatar Princes. Tho it is not very considerable at present, yet it is the Winter Residence of the Chan of the Casatshia Orda, who possesses one Part Orda. of Turkestan; for in Summer he goes and encamps on one side or other of the River Sirr, according to the Custom of all the Tatar Princes.

The Town of Shahirochoya is situate in 44° Shahiro50' of Latit. on the Right side of the River Sirr choya.
16 Leagues to the East of Tashkant; but 'tis at
present a miserable paultry Place of about 200
wretched Cabbins, inhabited by the Mohammedan
Satars, and belonging to the Chan of the Casatshia Orda, who resides at Tashkant.

[This Town in all probability is the Shahru-chiah, built by Shah Ruch, who succeeded his Father Timur-bec in the Empire of Zagatai, Chorasan and the Indies, and is otherwise called Fenakant; but I am of Opinion the Author of the Remarks has given it too northerly a Situation.]

RIVERS.

The River Sirr, or Sirth, springs from the River Sire.

Mountains which separate the Dominions of VOL, II.

N

Contailb.

of th

veft

non utel

T

Yemb

Entr

while

Cafai

unde

S

then did r

that

pian

ginni

have

araz:

the 9

feffec

Orda

T

meda

the !

Temi

Contaish, Grand Chan of the Callmaks from Bucharia, in 44° 40' Latit. and 97° of Longit to the North of the City of Samarkant. Its Course is nearly from East to West; its Sides are very agreeable, and abounding with Pastures. After a Course of about an hundred German Leagues, it empties it self into the Lake of Arall, which lies upon the Borders of the Countries of Chowarazm and Turkestan, three days Journey from the Caspian Sea.

Gold Sand a Cheat.

"Tis pretended that the Sand of this River is mixt with Gold, and a Sample of it has been brought into Rusia, which appear'd to be very rich in an Essay which the late Emperor caused to be made of it: But the Event has shewn that his pretended Gold Sand had never seen the Banks of the River Sirr, and that it was no other than a certain kind of Gold Dust which they sound in Spring time in the Channels of those high Mountains which separate the Dominions of the Great Mogul from the Bucharias, and which the Buchars carry sometimes into Siberia to truck for Skins.

Yemin Ri-

The River Yemin, called Yemba by the Ruffians, rifes in that part of Mount Caucasus, called by the Tatars Uluk Tag, towards the 50th Deg of Latit. and 93 of Longit. the Course of his River is near W.S.W. and after running about 100 German Leagues, it empties it self into the Caspian Sea at the N.E. Corner of it, in 47°50 Latit.

Fifby.

This River abounds exceedingly with all forts of excellent Fish; it is excessive rapid, but shallow: Its Stream is very delightful, and its Banks extraordinary fertil; but they are very little cultivated at present, because the Callmak states who possess the eastern side of that River have not the Use of Agriculture, and the Taians

2

特

Bu-

it to

ourle

very

Liter

gues, hich

bow-

from

er is been rich o be

this anks

than ound

high

f the

a the

ruck

Ruf-

alled Deg.

this

bout the

° 50

forts shal-

anks

little

Ta-

rver

atars

of

ode goot

the Casatshia Orda, who are Masters of the eftern fide towards its Entrance into the Cafian Sea, cultivate only just as much as is absoutely necessary for their Subfiftence.

There is neither Town nor Village upon the No Town Temba; for having only five Foot Water at the on it. Entrance, the Ruffians don't think it worth their while to go and fettle there; and the Tatars of Casathia Orda, who are already fixt there, live under Tents and Huts as well as the Callmaks.

SECT. II.

The Inhabitants of Turkestan.

SINCE Zingis Chan's Conquest, we hear no more of Turks in Turkestan: They were then either driven out and dispersed, or if any did remain, they changed their own Name for that of the Conquerors; only towards the Cafpian Sea we find some Turkmans about the beginning of the last Age, who 'tis probable have fince that time retir'd to join those of Chow-Turkestan hath undergone several Revolutions with regard to its Inhabitants, fince the Turks became extinct: At present 'tis posleffed by two Tatar Hords, called the Casatshia Orda and Kara Callpaks.]

The Casatshia Orda.

The Casatshia Orda is a Branch of the Mobam-Casatshia medan Tatars, which inhabits the Eastern Part of Orda. the Country of Turkestan, between the River Temba and the Sirth. A dock the ried show they only cultivates

N 2

Thefe

Part 1

Ch

15

to

ing

and

the

Hu

Car

Wi

Th

are

fers

the

tatio

der

Call

hand

ging

ally !

and

bami

ordir

wou'

Nece

lide |

abou

Great

their

petua

Noga

bey A

crois

easy

Yaik,

ria to

are th

they a

T

Like the

These Tatars resemble the Callmans much Callmaks. being of a middle fize but exceeding well-fet, their Faces broad and flat; their Complexion very swarthy, Eyes of the Pink Form, black, sparkling and cut like those of the Callmaks; but they have the Nose very well-shap'd, the Beard thick, and the Ears form'd as usual. They cut their Hair. which is exceeding black and strong, within four Inches of the Head, and wear round Bonnets a Span high, of thick Cloth or black Felt with a Fur Border.

Habits.

Their Clothing confifts in a Callico Shirt, a Pair of Sheep-skin Breeches, and a Quilted Vest of that Callico, which as I have elsewhere observ'd, is called Kitaika by the Russians; but in Winter they put over this Vest a Sheep's-skin Gown, which ferves them instead of a Quilt: Their Boots are very clouterly, and made of Horse-skin, as well as every one can make them himfelf.

Arms:

Their Arms are the Sabre, the Bow, and the Lance; for Fire-Arms are very little used by them yet.

Women.

Most of the Women of the Tatars of the Casatsbia Orda are large and well made; and the their Faces be broad and flat, yet they are not disagreeable. They dress much like the Calmak Women, excepting that they wear high pointed Bonnets, which they fold on the right fide, and a fort of big Slippers.

Seat.

These Tatars possess very fine Quarters along the River Yemba, and towards the Mountain which separate the Country of Turkestan from the Provinces of the Callmaks; but they real no great Advantage from them, all the Thoughts being bent on Rapine, which the make their only Business, and that is the Reason they only cultivate just as much of their Land ich,

fet,

cry

ling

ave

and

air.

thin

Bon-

elt,

t, 2

lted

here

but

Ikin

uilt:

e of

nake

l the

d by

Ca-

d tho

e not

Call-

high

right

Jong

tain

from

reap

they

eason

ands

as fuffices for their Subfiftence, which amounts to a small Matter, seeing their Flocks and Hunting furnishes plentifully to their Nourishment, and that Bread is not much used by them.

They are always on Horseback, and when Hunsing. they are not upon their Incursions they make Hunting their whole Employment, leaving the Care of their Flocks and Dwellings to their Wives and to their Slaves, if they have any. Their Horses make no Appearance, but they swife are very mettlesom, and certainly the best Cour- Horses. fers of all the Tatar Horses to be found beyond the Caspian Sea. Few of them have fixt Habitations, and they encamp for the most part under Huts or Tents towards the Frontiers of the Callmaks and the River Yemba, to be ready at hand to lay hold on all Opportunities of Pilla-

ging. The Tatars of the Casatshia Orda are continu-Always at ally fighting with their Neighbours to the North War with and East: and the Uzbek Tatars, who are Mo-their Neighbammedans, are the only People with whom they bours. ordinarily live in a good Understanding; nor wou'd they do it if they were not obliged to it by Necessity. In Winter they pay a Visit on one side to the Callmaks, subject to Contaish, who about that time go to scour the Frontiers of Great Bucharia, and other Parts to the South of their Country; and on the other fide they perpetually incommode the Cosaks of Yaik, the Nogai Tatars and the Callmak Tribes which obey Ajuka Chan; but in the Summer they often crois the Mountains of Eagles, which are very easy to pass towards the Head of the River Taik, and make Inroads a great way into Siberia to the West of the River Irtis; and as those are the very best cultivated Parts in all Siberia, they are obliged to keep Guards all Summer in

Ishim and the Tebenda, that they may be in a Condition to oppose them in case of some sud den Invalion. And tho they are often very il treated in those Incursions, and even all they steal is not equivalent to what they might with very little Labour get out of their Lands if they would till them as they ought, fo fertil and et. cellent they are yet they choose rather to expose themselves to a thousand Fatigues and Danger that they may fubfift by Robbing, than apply themselves to some regular Business and live comfortably. They fell the Slaves they make in those Invasions in the Country of Chowarazm only secure or Great Bucharia, where they always find Person one among Merchants or Armenians, and even formetimed Indian Merchants, who repair thither upon no other account than to trade for Slaves, which is the only one that is carry'd on with any Secu-

the Uzbeks.

Trade of

Mohammedans.

The Tatars of the Casatshia Orda profess the Mohammedan Worship; but they have neither Alcoran, Mullas nor Moskees, fo that their Religion comes to very little.

rity in those Provinces, by reason it is the chief

Livelihood of the Uzbek Tatars; and itis prin-

cipally with a View of preferving the means of

felling their Slaves, that the Tatars of the Calat-

shia Orda are careful to cultivate Friendship

with the Uzbeks. They retain very few Slaves

themselves, excepting such as they stand in need of to keep their Flocks; but they commonly referve all the young Women and Russian Girls

they can fnap up in Siberia, unless Necessity ob

liges them to part with them.

Chan.

They have a Chan whose ordinary Residence in Winter is in the Town of Tafbkant, and in Summer he encamps about the fides of the River Sirth, and the Frontiers of the Callmaks; but

their

C

the

do

Th

abo

Can

the

of

Re and

dit

the

TI

Co

ma

of

ex

bit

ve

be

te

Pr

ca

ab

A

no

an

CO

art L

the the

e in a

o fud-

ery il

they with

f they

xpole

ngers

apply

1 live

make

razm

erfian

imes

n na

rhich

ecu-

chief

orin-

is of

afat-

Ship

aves need

nly

irle

the

her

Res

nce

in

rer

out eir their particular Mursas, who are very powerful, don't leave much Power in the Hands of the Chan. These Tatars are able to bring into the Field Force. about 30000 Men, and in Conjunction with the Cara Kallpaks 50000; but all Horse.

The Cara Kallpaks.

Cara Kallpaks is the Name the Russians give Name. the Branch of the Tatars, call'd the Mankats.

The Cara Kallpaks inhabit the Western Part of the Country of Turkestan towards the Coast of the Caspian Sea. They are the fast Allies and Relations of the Tatars of the Casasshia Orda, and accompany them commonly in their Expeditions, when there is some great Feat in hand.

The Cara Kallpaks are profess'd Robbers, who have nothing to live on but what they steal ei-Live by ther from the Callmaks or the Subjects of Russia. They often pass the Mountains of Eagles in Company with those of the Casatshia Orda, and make Inroads very far within Siberia on the side of the Rivers of Tobal, Iseet and Ishim, which extremely incommodes the Russians who inhabit the Burroughs and Villages along those Rivers.

When Isay p. 568. the Town of Turkestan is the Residence of the Chan of the Cara Kallpaks, it must be understood that it is for the Winter only after the manner of the other Mohammedan Tatar Princes; for in the Summer they go and encamp towards the Shores of the Caspian Sea, and about the Mouth of the River Sirr in the Lake Arall.

The Term Bijaul which occurs, p. 263, denotes a Military Charge among the Cara Kallpaks and the Tatars of the Cafatsbia Orda, which comes pretty near that of Colonel among us.

N₄ CHAP

Ch.
Ruff
Reis

who

Tim

by I est]

and

is the Hag

I

in t

him

Tat

ftra

Was

tion

Ye

bee

Im

All

San

Fr

Tu

the

thi

W

the

It

th

15,

by

WI

all

CHAP. X.

ADESCRIPTION of the Country and Inhabitants of KIPZAK or KAPSHAK, subject to the RUSSIANS.

SECT. I.

Its Name, Extent, Conquest, Inhabitants, &c.

Name.

Itzak, or Kapshak, as the Arabs and Passians write it, has its Name according to Abulgazi Chan, p. 15, from a Man in the Time of Oguz Chan, if the Reader can give Credit to a Story which is very likely to be all legend. It is also called Dashi Kapshak, or the Plain of Kapshak by the Persian Historians; Dashi in Persian signifying a Plain: On which occasion I cannot but observe two Mistakes in the French Edition, where it is always written Dashi Kipzak; This last Fault is probably a Mistake of the Printer, occasion'd by the Affinity between the words Compagne and Campagne.

Extent.

Kipzak or Kapshak is a very large Country, extending in its greatest length from the Yak to the Mouth of the Borystbenes, but its breadth is more uncertain: All we can say is, that the Caspian Sea and Palus Meotis made Part of its Southern Bounds, and that to the North it included the Kingdom of Casan, and the Country of Tura as far as the River Irtis Eastward, tho at different times a great Part of Siberia and Russa

art I

oun-

AK

the

Per-

ig to

ime

it to

end.

n of

t in

fion

ench

Kip-

ak:

the

the

aik

he

its

n-

n-

d,

Russia were under its Dominion, during the Reigns of the first Successors of Zuzi Chan, to whose Share this great Country sell: and it continued in great Power even till the Time of simur-bec, after which it began to be divided by Factions, and declined apace. The greatest Part of it became a Prey to the Russians; and all that remains now of that great Empire is the Country of Crim: to which the Family of Hagi Garay Chan retir'd, that having been part of their Dominions, as appears from p. 196]

It was the Czar Ivan Wasilowitz who made Kipzak this fair Conquest [of Kipzak] from the Tatars conquer'd in the Year 1554; for after he had re-united in by the himself the Dominion of all Russia, he apply'd Russians himself to clear the River Wolga by driving the states out of the Kingdoms of Casan and Assacan which they then possessed; in which he was so successful, that he completed the Reduction of those two Kingdoms in less than two Years, and ever since that time they have always been reckon'd two of the fairest Flowers in the Imperial Crown of Russia, the Kingdom of Astrachan, because of its Trade, and that of Casan on account of its Fertility in all sorts of Fruits and Pusse.

The Country of Kipzak or Capsak, as other Capsaks Surkish Authors call it, is the true Country of and Cothe Cosaks, whereof Search has been made to sake the this time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original. I can't tell same Peothe ethis time to find out the Original ethis time Peothe ethis time Peothe

Cb.

Of t

111

fide

the

beer

the

in a

1

inha

the

is f

ext

Mo

Fro

the

mo

the

the of

kn

pea

M

up

dif W

Tatary affign to the Country of Kipzak or Cap. fak, viz. the Lands contained between the River Yaik and the Mouth of the Borysthenes; and that it does not appear by the least Sign that that Nation ever inhabited elsewhere. The fecond is, that the Names are perfectly the same and that it is nothing but the Conveniency of Pronunciation which has formed the word Cafak, as the Russians and Tatars call those of Kipzak or Capfak. The third is, that the Cofaks to this Day preserve a strong Affection for the Tatars, whom they call their Brothers and Relations, and that they have much the fame Inclination as the Tatars.

Inhabitants of Kapshak.

Within the Bounds of the Country of Kip. zak, were formerly contained among others, the Kingdoms of Casan and Astrachan, the fame Parts are still possessed by several Branches of Tatars who are all fubject to the Empire of Russia; as the Bashkir Tatars and Tatars of Uffa who inhabit the Kingdom of Cafan, The Tatars of Nagai in that of Aftrachan, the Cosaks of Yaik, who are properly descended from the Tatars, and dwell about that River; to which we shall add those of Sa Porovi and Ukraina, in order to give a continued History of that People.]

te College whereof Course has been made to the

destine to had out the Collection.

Department I all and remained vicual engine windowski did pili s

er a contra com Lou

Wiciner and a mount of the second

the ride is the state of

art !

Cap.

Ri-

and

that

ie fe-

ame,

y of alak

pzak this

tars.

ons,

tion

Kip-

ers,

the

hes

oire

tars

fan.

an

led

er;

nd

rý

T.

Ballalor.

doi atquoda & ECT. II. which to embel

The Nation known to us at prefent by the

Of the Bashkir Tatars and Tatars of Usfa who inhabit the Duchy of Bulgar in the Kingdom of Casan.

THE Kingdom of Casan extends to a great
length along the Northern and Eastern Kingdom
fide of the River Wolga: It was conquer'd by
the Russians in 1552, ever since which it has
been reckon'd one of the choicest Flowers in
the Russian Crown, on account of its Fertility
in all forts of Fruit and Pulse.

The Bashkir Tatars, as well as those of Uffa, Province inhabit the Province of Bulgaria, which makes of Bulgaria, the Eastern part of the Kingdom of Casan; it is situate to the East of the River Wolga, and extends on one side from that River to the Mountains of the Eagles [Arall Tag] and the Frontiers of Siberia; and on the other side from the Mouth of the River Kama in the Wolga, almost as far as the Town of Samara.

'Tis suppos'd that from this Province came Bulgaes the Bulgars, who over-run the Kingdom of who Hungary and the neighbouring Provinces about Hungary the thirteenth Age, and who gave the Name came from of Bulgaria to that Space of Country which is hence. known to us at present by that Name in European Turky.

Bulgaria in Europe lies to the South of the Mouth of the Danube, between the Black Sea, Romania, Servia and the Danube.

The City of Casan is situate in 55° 30' Latit. CityCasan. upon the little River Casanka; but a little distance from the Lest [or East] side of the Wolga.

The

T

with

Lang

can (

gai.

By

Cere

perc

ligio

at P

confi

infor

mor

Wo

Rull

have

the

Tro

tle t

the

the

30

fup

in a

bui

the

cul

the

and

Co

Qu

fou

Sk

are

bu

F

Tatars of Uffa and Bashkir.

The Nation known to us at present by the Name of Baskirs or Baskirs, is thought to be a Branch of the Tatars. Those of Uffa which dwell among them are their Relations and Al. lies, iffuing from the same Stock with them, Nevertheless the Tatars of Uffa possess in particular the Northern Part of Bulgaria towards the River Kama and Town of Uffa, from whence they derive their Names; and the Baskirs the Southern Part, which extends almost as far as the Town of Samara.

Whence

These two Branches of Tatars are of the Podescended. Sterity of those of their Nation, who posses'd the Kingdom of Cafan, when the Russians conquer'd it in the Year 1552; nevertheles'is very apparent, that in their Composition there is much of the Blood of the old Inhabitants mixt with that of the Tatars.

Form.

The Baskirs as well as the Tatars of Uffa are tall and very robust; they have broad Faces, their Complexion a little fwarthy, broad Shoulders, the Hair black and the Eyebrows fo thick, that they commonly join. They let their Beards grow a Span long, and usually wear long Gowns of thick white Cloth, to which there is fasten'd a fort of Cap, wherewith they cover the Head in cold Weather; for in Summer they always go bare-headed: The rest of their Clothing is the same with that of the Per-

the Men.

Habit of

Of the Women. fants of Rusha.

Their Women also go dress'd like the common Russian Women, excepting that they wear Slippers, which scarce cover their Toes, and are tied upon the Leg above the Ancle.

Arms.

These People are good Horsemen, and brave Soldiers; the Bow and Arrows are their only Arms, which they know how to use with wonderful Dexterity.

Their

art L

y the

to be which

I AL

hem.

parti-

vards

ence

s the

ar as

Po-

es'd

con-

tis

nere |

nixt

are

ul.

fo

eir

ear

ich

ley

m-

of

2-

n-

21

re

Their Language is a Mixture of the Tatar Language, with the Russian, and perhaps with the antient Language of the Country; nevertheless they can converse very well with the Tatars of Nagai.

Ceremonies which they still observe, 'tis to be cife.

perceiv'd that they heretofore profess'd the Religion of Mobammed; but for the rest they have at present no Knowledge of the Alcoran, and consequently have neither Mullas nor Moskees; insomuch that their Religion partakes at present more of Paganism than of the Mobammedan Worship. Nevertheless since the late Emperor of Russia came to the Crown, a great Part of them have embraced the Greek Religion: and would the Russian Clergy but give themselves the Trouble, in all Probability they would in a little time convert that whole Branch of Tatars to the Christian Faith.

As the Country which the Tatars of Uffa and Country the Baskirs inhabit, is fituate between the 52° fertil. 30' and the 57th Deg. of Latit. it is not to be supposed very hot; nevertheless 'tis very fertil in all sorts of Grains and Fruits.

These People live in Burrows and Villages Inhabit built after the Russian Fashion, and maintain Villages. themselves by their Cattle, Hunting, and Agriculture. They have the Custom of Threshing their Grain on the Place where they gather it, and carry it home thorowly cleansed. This Country also produces Honey and Wax in great Quantity; and in the Northern Part there are sound abundance of grey Squirrels and other Skins.

The Tatars of Uffa, as well as the Baskirs, subject to are at present under the Dominion of Russia; Russia, but they are obliged to govern them with much Caution

Ch

Kip

Sho

ded

Coa

live

get

fed

Yai

Tat

mac

Afti

Do

othe and

Tate Afp othe are

Incl

Wi

Boo

muc

are !

fers

their

they

lage

Nan

Into

by I Opp

bour

1

1 whi dow

Caution and Mildness, because they are very turbulent, and will not be treated with too much Rigor; besides they retain a strong laclination towards the other Tatars: for which reason, whenever Russia is in War with the Tatars of Crimea, the Callmaks and other Jatars of these Quarters, they must watch the Basking and the Tatars of Uffa narrowly to keep them in awe. These two People united might raise in case of need fifty thousand armed Men.

They pay their Contributions to the Russian Receivers in Grain, Wax, Honey, Cattle and Skins, according to the Valuation of the ordinary Tax which every Family is charg'd with

by the Capitation.

III.

Of the several Branches of the Cosaks.

TATE have shewnal ready, p. 576, that the Cofaks take their Name from the Country of Kipzak or Kapsbak which they inhabit This Nation is divided into three Branches; the first is that of the Kosakki Yaikski, the second that of the Kosakki Sa-porovi, the third that of the Kofakki Donski. The first only belong to Asia, but because they are the same People, we shall give an Account of them all here.

1. The Cosaks of Yask inhabiting about Yar Ikoy and the River Yaik, which are de scribed.

De cent

The Cosaks of Yaik are descended from that Part of the antient Inhabitants of the Country of Kipzak th

ery

too

In-

ich

Ta

ars

kirs

em

ule

ian

ind

di

ith

the

ın-

oit

S;

nd

of

to

We

aî-

de-

hat

of

zak

Kipzak or Capfak, who retired towards the Shores of the Caspian Sea when the Tatars invaded their Country, where dispersed along the Coast between the River Yaik and Wolga, they lived by Fishing and Piracy, till gathering together by little and little they at length poffeffed themselves of the Southern side of the River Yaik upon the Declension of the Power of the Tatars in those Parts; and after the Russians had made themselves Masters of the Kingdom of Afracban, they submitted voluntarily to their Domination.

The Cosaks of Yaik are made much like the Like the other Cosaks; but as their living is more wild, Callmaks; and they often mix their Blood with that of the Tatars who furround them on all fides, their Aspect is not at all so good as is that of their other Countrymen; but yet in the main they are the same in outward Appearance, as well as Inclinations and Customs.

They commonly wear Gowns of a thick Habit. white Cloth, with close Sleeves which hang down to the Calf of the Leg, over which in Winter they wear long Sheep-skins: Their Boots are made of Russian Leather, but shaped much like those of the Persians. Their Bonnets are round with a broad Fur Border.

The Habit of the Women of this Branch dif-women. fers little from that of the Men, excepting that their Gowns are longer and closer, and that

they go with their Faces bare in Winter.

The Cosaks of Yaik dwell in the great Vil-Dwell in lages along the right fide of the River of that Villages. Name from the 50th Deg. of Latit. to its Fall into the Caspian Sea. They live by Husbandry, by Fishing, and on their Cattle; but when an Opportunity offers of preying upon their Neighbours, they are fure not to neglect it.

Their

Part 1

Ch.

rod

of C

re c

ess t

cco

T

hirt

and

he I

othe

with

pair fide

T

most

bamn By

Nati

how

tend

Pack

or F Polif

at th

Nati

other

T

unde

000

to R

T

Righ

from

V

with that of the Callmaks and the antient Language of their Country, which makes a particular Jargon; which nevertheless serves them to transact their Affairs with all the different Tatars in their Neighbourhood.

Always at War.

As the Cojaks of Yaik are continually fighting with the Cara Kalpakks and the Tatars of the Casatshia Orda, they take care to fortify all their Villages with Ditches well pallifado'd, to be ina Condition of Defence against them in the Winter when the River is frozen; and during that whole Season they keep close shelter'd at home, while the aforesaid Tatars range all about their Habitations to see to snap any of them; but at the Return of Summer they go in their Turn in quest of the Tatars with their Barques, and then they scour all the Eastern Coast of the Caspian Sea, and often pillage their Friends as well as their Enemies: for that purpose they always keep a great many Barques in readiness, each of which carries thirty or forty Men, with which they cruise all the Summer on the Caspian Sea, and toward Winter they draw them ashore, and hide them in their Villages to prevent the Tatari coming and burning them.

Weapons.

Their ordinary Weapons are Bows and Arrows, with the Sabre; and 'tis but fince the late Emperor of Russia came to the Crown that they have had the Use of Fire-Arms, but they are not suffer'd to have them in Summer, because they might make a bad use of them in their Piracies on the Caspian Sea, and they do not distribute Fire-Arms among them till towards Winter, the better to enable them to defend themselves against the Tatars, and as soon as the River begins to thaw they are obliged to carry them to the Town of Yaikskov; to the Way-

Yaikskoy, them to the Town of Yaikskoy; to the Way-wode

art I

tarian

Lan-

parti-

them

it Ta-

hting

of the

their

eina

Win-

that

ome,

their

ut at

rn in

then

spian

ll as

ways

each

hich

Sea,

and

tars

Ar-

the hat

ney

ule Pi-

triin-

m-

Ri-

TY

iyide

Way-

wode.

ode of which they also pay their Contribution of Corn, Wax, Honey, and Cattle, which they are obliged to pay yearly to Russia; neverthers they have their own Chiefs who govern them coording to their antient Cultoms.

The Gosaks of Taik may amount to about hirty thousand fighting Men. They are brave and very good Foot Soldiers, like all the rest of Good soldier he Nation, but they are not so turbulent as the diers. They live in good Harmony with the Callmaks, subject to Contaish, who remains Summer in great Numbers to the Eastern side of the River Taik to trade with them.

The Cosaks of Yaik profess at present for the Religion.

most part the Greek Religion as received in Russay nevertheless they still retain much of Mosammedism, and even of Paganism.

By the Account which we have given of this Error of Nation, the Reader may be able himself to judge Authors. how much those Authors are deceived who pretend that the present Cosaks are sprung from a Pack of all forts of Vagabonds without House or Home, who derive their Name from the Polish Word Cosa, which signifies a Goat; and at the same time he will be convinced that the Nation of the Cosaks is at least as antient as any other Nation in their Neighbourhood.

They are the Cosaks of Yaik who are to be understood by the Urusses, p. 312; which Name our Author gives them because they are subject to Russes.

tills great quantity

TOWN.

The Town of Yaikskoy is situate upon the Yaikskoy.

Right [or West] side of the Yaik, forty Versts

from its Fall into the Caspian Sea, and at pre
VOL. II.

16. 2

and

Vecel

ney h

pring

rove

ho

ut no

Sur loats

ach.

aspia

1. 11

ink

Th

ranc

om

CTO

nto i

hich

hich

Mil

an't

he R

hey h

Cofaks

om i

Th

Age

he B

latar.

ver-r

Thirte

ime t

leclin

fent is the only Town to be found upon that River. Count

Waywode.

The Waywode who resides there has the in spection of the Cosaks of Taik, and receive from them in Corn, Wax, Honey, and Cattle the Contributions which they are to pay yearly to Russia.

RIVER.

River Yaigik.

The River Yaigik, called by the Ruffians Yaik has its Source in that Part of Mount Caucaffus which the Tatars call Arall Tag, in 53° of La and 85 of Longit. Its Course is from N. N. E to S.S.W. and it discharges itself, after running about eighty German Leagues, into the Caspia Sea 45 Leagues to the East of the Mouth of

the River Wolga.

The River Yaik ferves at present as a Fron tier between the Empire of Russia and the Do minions of Contailb, Grand Chan of the Call maks. Its fides are very fertile in Pastures, bu destitute of Wood, especially towards the Cal tian Sea. It abounds with incredible Quantitie of all forts of excellent Fish; and I have been affured by Persons of Credit, that in the begin ning of Spring the Fish come in such great Plen ty from the Caspian Sea, whose Waters are ex treme falt, to look for the fresh Water of thi River that they almost stop the Current of the Stream, and that one may take with the Han as many as he will. It is chiefly the falto Spawn of this great quantity of Fish which taken in the Rivers Taik and Wolga, that i transported all over Europe under the Name o

Full of

Fish.

Caviaer, by which one may guess at the Quan tity that must be taken every Year.

til

The Banks of the River Yaik are so exceed ing fertile, that notwithstanding how little the Land art]

n tha

Cor

he In

Ceive

Cattle

yearly

y ly

Yaik

caffus

f Lat N.E

nning

afpia

uth o

Fron

e Do

Call

, bu

e Cal

ititie

beer

egin

Plen

e ex

f thi

f th

Han

falter

ich i

nat i

ne o

)uan

ceed

e the

and

and is cultivated, it produces Plenty of all the ecessaries of Life. Within these twenty Years ey have discover'd much Wood towards the rings of that River, and even of Oak, which oves of great Service to the Cosaks of Yaik, no often before found the Want of it much : n now they go and cut great Quantities of it Summer, and fend it down the River in great loats loaden with three or four thousand Trees th, as far as the Town of Yaikskoy and the aspian Sea.

The KOSAKKI SA-POROVI. who inhabit UKRAINA, which is described.

Kofakki The Kosakki Sa-porovi is the chief of the three Saporovi. ranches, and dwell about the River Borystbenes om the 48 to the 51° 30' of Latit. This River gros'd towards the River Samar, which falls no it on the East side, by a Ridge of Rocks hich pass from one side to the other, over hich the River falls for the Space of near Mile with fuch Impetuofity, that the least Boat m't pass without extreme Hazard: And as e Russians call these sorts of Cataracts Porovi, Whence by have given to the Cofaks who live on that Named. the Name of Sa-porovi, which signifies the laks beyond the Cataracts, to distinguish them om the other Branches of that Nation. These People in the beginning of the sixteenth ge were scatter'd over the vast Plains about Suffer'd be Borysthenes, where they were at length re-long from nited after they had fuffer'd extremely from the tars. dars for more than two or three Ages, who wer-ran their Country about the middle of the hirteenth Century; and as about the same me the boundless Power of the Tatars began to

cline by degrees thro' their Domestick Feuds,

in fh

time

1

for

the

fian.

four

ever

the

Cor

fion

littl

the

am

dle

rou

fino

qua

in

hav

fro

are

cru

bu

and

the

in

wi

an

COI

eff

fid

no

the

ha

ly,

Beat the

Tatars.

Oppose them.

and that the Russians and Poles came often to Blows with them at those favourable Junctures the Colaks did not fail to lay hold of those On portunities, to revenge themselves on the Tatan for the infinite Evils they had fuffer'd from them in times past, notwithstanding they were in some measure of the same Race with them. And the defire of Revenge having made them extremely desperate and enterprizing, they beat the Tatar in all Engagements, and at length did Wonden against them, and that without being obliged either to Russia or Poland, seeing they lived without the Protection of any of the neighbour ing Powers, as People of a free Nation, who act ed purely by a Motive of Revenge against their Enemies.

Received under the Protection of the Poles, 1562

The Poles perceiving the Cosaks might be a great Service to them against the Tatars, and even against Russia, which began then to grow formidable under Ivan Wasilowitz, offer'd them their Alliance, and receiv'd them solemnly under their Protection in a Diet held in the Year 1562; they engaged also to pay them a yearly Subsidy, to keep a good Army always on Foo for the Desence of Poland, and assigned them all that Space of Land inclosed between the Rivers Borysthenes and Niester towards the Frontiers of the Tatars to settle in, with the Town of Trethimiross, sen or twelve Leagues below Kingsfor a Place of Arms.

Ukraïna improves.

Becomes the finest Part of Poland. As that Province, the quite deferted then by reason of the frequent Incursions of the Tatara was yet exceeding fertile, the Cosaks apply themselves so well to improve the Goodness of the Land which had been granted to them, that in a little time all that Country was covered over with large Towns and handsome Villages, and

fren to

Etures

fe Op

Tatar

then

fom

nd the

emel

Tatar

onden bliged

lived

bour

t their

be of

, and

grow

then

y un

Year

rearly

Foo

then

e Ri

Fron

OWI

f the

Gow

n b

tars

oly'd

s o

tha

ove

and

in short the Province of Ukrain began from that time to be deemed the finest Part of Poland.

The Cosaks were consider'd in this manner for near a Century as most firmly attach'd to the Kingdom of Poland, feeing neither the Ruffians nor the Tatars could stir a Foot, but they found the Cofaks in their Road; they advanced Cofaks as even to the Gates of Constantinople, ravaging the Gates the Turkish Borders upon the least Occasion of Con-Complaint given to Poland. On these Occa-ple: fions they have found that infinite Number of little Isles which the Borysthenes makes below Their Rethe aforesaid Cataracts, of great Service to them, treats in amongst which there are some towards the mid-the Isles in Borysthedle, which are fo hidden by the rest which fur-nes. round them, that 'tis absolutely impossible to find them out, unless one is particularly acquainted with the way to come at them. 'Tis in the remotest of these Isles that the Cosaks have fixt their Docks and Magazines, and there from time to time they equip finall Flotes, which are a kind of Demi-Galleys, with which they Cruize in cruize all over the Black Sea, plundering and the Black burning all the Towns and Burrows of the Turks and Tatars wherever they can land.

The Cosakshad a General to whom they gave Herman the Name of Herman, who commanded in chief or General in the Province and in the Army; he was in no wise subordinate to the great General of Poland, Indepensional always acted separately with his Cosaks, acidents cording to the Measures which were taken to that effect in concert with him; in short he was considered purely as an Ally and Confederate, and not at all as a Subject of Poland.

This General was always chosen from among Chosen out the principal Officers of the Cosaks, and must of the Coshave been one of that Nation; but unfortunate-faks.

ly, a Union so useful, as well to Poland as the

Cofaks.

0 3

dive

ciall

in t

fide

that

leng

Fide

ther

the

afte

Tro

ryft

Ma

Chi

to

Sex

ceri

Ruj

Nu

fev

be

per

mi

ed

17

hac

Wa

tha

liv

M

the

Su

fai

G

Oppress'd by the Polish Lords.

Cosaks, could not continue long. The great Polish Lords had by degrees acquir'd considerable Lands in Ukraina, and as those Lands were infinitely better than what they possessed else where, they forgot nothing which might render them more valuable; and to that end they pretended to oblige the Cosak Peasants who be long'd to those Lands to Days-work and such like Services, which they were accustom'd to exact from their Subjects of Poland, who are Slaves to their Lords.

Revolt to the Ruffians.

Pretentions fo unjust, exacted with much Haughtiness, enraging the Cosaks, they took Arms against Poland, which design'd to oppress them. and threw themselves into the Protection of Russia and the Port; which kindled a cruel War between the Parties concern'd that continued near twenty Years, and like to have been fatal more than once to all Poland. The end of all this was, that the Cosaks remained to Russa; and as the Country which they possessed before had been entirely ruin'd and plunder'd during the Course of that War, they went and settled themselves in the Russian Ukraina, under a solemn Promise made them on the Part of the Czarian Court, that nothing should be alter'd in the Constitution of their Government, and that they should be suffer'd to live after their own Manner without being charg'd with any Imports or Contributions under any Denomination or Pretence whatsoever; for which they were obliged on their fide always to keep on foot a good Body of Infantry for the Service of Rufha:

Settle in Russian Ukraina.

Nevertheless this People too factious and jealous of their Liberty, no more able to accustom themselves to the Domination of Russia than the Yoke of Poland, gave so much Discontent on divers

divers Occasions to their new Protectors, (espe-Their Hetcially when the famous Mazeppa, their Hetman, man Main the Year 1708 quitted the Party of Ruffia to joins the fide with the late King of Sweden Charles XII.) King of that the deceased Emperor of Russia, finding at Sweden length that he had to do with People on whose against Fidelity he could not rely, refolv'd to humble them fo, that they should not easily rise for STATE OF the future; and to that Purpose, some time after the Battle of Pultowa, he fent a Body of Troops into the afore-mention'd Isles of the Borysbenes, where the Cosaks who had follow'd Mazeppa's Party had retir'd with their Wives and Ruffians Children after the unhappy Event of that Bat-destroy tle, and those Troops put all they found there them in to the Sword, without distinction of Age or Sex. The Effects of those who had been concern'd in Mazeppa's Plot were all given to the Russians; the Country was filled with a great Number of Troops who lived at Discretion; several thousands of Men were drawn thence to beemploy'd in the Works which the late Emperor was carrying on in feveral Parts of his Dominions towards the Baltick Sea, which destroyed almost all of them; and after the Death of their last Hetman, which happen'd in the Year 1722, on his Return from a Journey which he office of had made to the Court of Russia, that Office abolish'd was entirely suppress'd, because it was found in 1722. that the Power belonging to it was too extenlive, and confequently incompatible with the Maxims of a despotick Government. In short the Court of Russia seem'd resolv'd to put the Cosaks upon the same Footing with the other Subjects of Russia, when the Death of the late Emperor suspended the Execution of that Affair for some time. 'Tis true that the present Government has affured them fince, that they

er'd and heir Im-

TOR

ere

ta

uf-

1

m he

on

Part

great

fidera

s were

l elfe

render

y pre-

o bed d fuch

'd to

o are

much

Arms hem,

n of War

nued

fatal

f all

Tha;

fore

ring

tled

lo-

the

fand

Nati

prefe

lign

fact

twe

land

Par

Bor

Con

Tir

tha

tru of

fide

OV

the

fro

on

To

ne

w

MI

Br

in

b

CI

B

lately as a Present to Prince Menzikoff, itis not likely they are disposed to give them a new Hel man.

The Cosaks are large, and well made; they Shape. have for the most part the Nose aquiling blue Eyes, brown Hair, and a very eafy Carriage: They are robust, cunning, indefatigable, jealous of hardy, brave, and generous. They facrifice all Liberty. to their Liberty, of which they are jealous beyond what can be imagined: But they are in-

constant, deceitful, perfidious, and great Drunk-

Their Women are handsome, well shaped and very complaifant to Strangers. Both Men and Women go clothed after the Polife Fashion, except the Bonnet, which differs fomewhat from

the Poliff.

Their Arms are the Sabre and Musket, and

their Troops confift only of Foot.

Their Language is a Composition of the Palish and Russian, yet it partakes much more of the former than the latter; they fay the Phrases are very Delicate and Engaging.

The Cofaks profess the Greek Religion, such as it is received in Russia; nevertheless there are found amongst them many Roman Catholicks

and Lutherans.

bloow

Nothing can be faid at present with regard to the Forces of the Cofaks, because since the Battle of Pultowa the Condition of their Affairs has been foterribly changed. Nevertheless, if I am not mistaken, they are reckon'd still to confift of twelve national Regiments of three thoufand

592

Baturin:

nishame

Extreme

Women.

Habit.

Arms.

Language foft and [weet.

Religion Greek.

Forces:

ant

injoy-

Town

tal of

given

is not

Hel-

they

iline.

Car-

able,

ce all

s be-

e in-

unk-

ped,

Men

ion,

om

and

Po-

of

les.

re ks

rd

TS

I

fand Men each, under as many Colonels of their Nation.

UKRAINA

The Country which the Cosaks possess at Name. present, is by the Russians called Ukraina, which signifies, situate on the Frontiers; because in saft it serves for the Frontier on that side between Russia, Poland, Little Tatary and Turky.

By the last Treaties between Russia and Po-True Uland, this latter is left in Possession of all that kraina Part of Ukraina which lies to the West of the East of Borysthenes; but it is at present in a very sad Borysthe-Condition, compared with what it was at the nes. Time the Cosaks were Masters of it; wherefore that Part only of Ukraina is to be reckon'd the true Country of the Cosaks, which is to the East of the Borystbenes, and which extends on one fide from the River Dezna, (which falls almost over against Kiow into the Borystbenes) as far as the River Samar, which separates it at present from the Territories of the Crim Tatars; and on the other fide from the Borysthenes to the Town of Bielgorod, and the Mountains which lie near the Springs of the River Donetz Seviersky, which may contain about the Space of fixty German Leagues in Length, and nigh as much in Breadth.

As this whole Country is one continued Plain, Ukraina interspersed with several fine Rivers and agreeaplain.

ble Forests; 'tis easy to conceive that it must be exceeding fertile, and stored with all the Ne-Exceeding cessaries of Life; also all sorts of Grain and fertile.

Pulse, Tobacco, Wax, and Honey come from thence in so great Quantities, that this Country supplies a great Part of Russia with them.

And forasmuch as the Pastures of Ukraina are Cattle excellent, the Cattle there exceed those of all largest in Europe. the rest of Europe in Largeness; for a Man can-

not

Ch.

to t

but

dine

opp

like

on

felv

are

that

Don

rily

near

na]

land latte

their

they

the !

Heti

Ukr

Em

thou

fed

Pea

twee

lift 1

have

fend

then

as th

thro

of th

of A

as it

ing

V

not reach the middle of an Ox's Back of this Country with his Hand, unless he be above the ordinary Stature.

Plenty of Fish and Game. The Rivers swarm with all kinds of excellent Fish, and Game is also very plenty there; so that this Country wants nothing but to have a Communication with the Sea to be one of the richest Countries in Europe.

Houses of Wood.

There are but few Brick Buildings to be found in this Country, all the Towns and Burrows being built with Wood after the usual Fashion of the Russians.

III. The KOSAKKI DONSKI, who dwell upon the fides of the River Don.

Kosakki Donski, The Kosakki Donski dwell upon the sides of the River Don, from the southern Bank of the River Guiloï Donetz (which comes from the West, and falls into the Don over against the Town of Guilocha) to the Mouth of the great River in the Palus Meotis.

Shape.

Habit.

They are much of the same Size and Shape as the Cosaks of Ukraïna, and they have also the same Inclinations and Defects. They go clothed both Men and Women like the common People of Russia, but they are not also gether so slovenly; they are resolute Pirates and very able Partisans.

Frem where.

At the time the Tatars were seized of all the Country of Kipzak, that Part of the Inhabitants from whence the Kosaki Donski are descended, retir'd to the Coasts of the Palus Meotis, and the Isles which lie towards the Mouth of the River Don; where the Tatars, who are nothing

Dispossessed less than Mariners, did not care to follow them, by the Ta- and from whence they still incommoded them tars.

much by the Parties which they sent from time

0

Ch. X. Subject to the Russians.

to time towards the Habitations of the Tatars:
but when the Power of these latter began to dedine, the Cosaks seeing the Russians begin to
oppose the Tatars stoutly, did not fail to fall
likewise upon them with all their Forces; and
on that occasion they went and possessed themselves of the sides of the River Don, where they

are at present settled.

tl

his

the

ent

fo

ea

the

ind be-

of

vell

of

the

the

the

eat

pe

lfo

m-

to-

nd

he

nts

ed,

nd

he

ng

m,

m

ne

to

that begun to fignalize himself, the Cosaks of Russia.

Don in the Year 1549 put themselves voluntarily under the Protection of Russia, on very near the same Conditions as the Cosaks of Ukraina have since accepted the Protection of Poland; but as they are at least as restless as these latter, they have been obliged by degrees to clip their Wings, and that so close, that at present they are upon a Footing very little different from the Subjects of Russia. They had formerly their Helman in the same manner as the Cosaks of Helman Ukraina; but since the Advancement of the late suppress d. Emperor of Russia to the Throne, it has been thought proper to suppress that Office.

Nevertheless since the Turks have reposses sed themselves of the Town of Assort by the Peace of Prutt, concluded in the Year 1711 be-Begin to tween Russia and the Port, they have begun to recover themself up their Head again; insomuch that they selves have been obliged more than once since then to send good Bodies of Troops on that side to keep them in Duty; but they dare not handle them as they willingly would, for fear they should throw themselves at once under the Protection of the Turks, which would render the Recovery

of Assoff exceeding difficult to Russia.

The Cosaks of Don profess the Greek Religion Religion as it is received in Russia; but they are exceed-Greek.

ing ignorant therein.

They

Ch.

An

2

nev

way

the

of

ver

dw

ner

the

of !

Vi

fer:

Pla

Ca

the the tai

Livelibood. They subsist by their Cattle and Husbandry, not forgetting however to live at the Expense of one another when Opportunity serves.

Have many Towns.

They have a great many Towns and Villages along the Don, the sides of which are exceeding fertil; but they don't spread very far within the County, because it wants good Water in many Places, and affords no Wood.

All their Towns and Burrows on the Left [or East] Bank of Don, to the South of the Intrenchment (which begins near the Town of Zaritza upon the Wolga, and ends at the Don over against the Town of Twia,) are ditch'd and pallifaded against the Incursions of the Kuban Tatars, with whom they are always at Strife.

Forces.

All the Cosaks in general are excellent for Garifons and the Defense of Towns: The Forces of the Cosaks of Don may amount at present to forty thousand Men, more or less.

Arms

Their Arms are the same as those of the Cofaks of Ukraina, and their Troops likewise confish only of Foot: Tis also very rare to see a Cosak on Horseback in any occasion of War.

Name of Cofaks must foon be lost. As by the Course which Affairs take, 'tis very probable that sifty Years hence there will be no more heard of the Cosaks; I was willing on that account to give the Publick a faithful Extract of their History, because I know there is very little dependence to be had upon what the Authors which have hitherto wrote say of that Nation.

CHAP.

Element training

dry,

uges

edith-

r in

lor nchitza

t a-

alli-

ars,

for

or-

fent

Co-

on-

e a

ve-

on

Ex-

e is

the

hat

P.

Capital.

מרבינטונו

erois the

.sundfil

CHAP. XI.

Crimea rabject to

An ACCOUNT of the TATARS
of CRIMEA, BUDZIAK and
KUBAN.

the relief on of that I enjoying the Town of

A Description of CRIMEA and its chief Towns.

THE Peninsula of Crimea abounds with Crimea all the Necessaries of Life, and all forts very ferof Fruits and Pulse thrive there to a Wonder; tilnevertheless the Tatars cultivate it their usual
way; that is to say, as little as they can.

The Part of the firm Land to the North of the Peninsula, which is at present in the Hands of the Tatars of Crimea, is cultivated but in very few Places, and the Ordas which possess it dwell for the most part in Huts, after the Manner of the other wandring Tatars, and feed on their Cattle when they have not an Opportunity of Robbing.

The Tatars of Crimea dwell in Towns and Villages, but their Houses are commonly miferably thatch'd Cabins.

The Turks are in possession of the two best Turks
Places in the Peninsula of Crimea, which are possessed of
the two
best Places.

TOWNS.

Bascia Saray is situate about the middle of Bascia the Peninsula of Crimea, and is the Town where Saray. The Chan usually has his Residence; it may contain about three thousand Houses, and is inha-Chan. bited only by Tatars and some Jews.

The

Ch.

upor

This

Tata

bout

it fr

their

that

rishi

the S

their

of i

Crin

exce

mea,

Geor

brin

port

the

frica

It

thou

prefe

Buil

Tis

25 T

licks

are :

ty ir

man

of t

Wer

conc

of C

rifor

and

It W

I

T

Crim or Criminda.

The Town of Crim, or Criminda, as 'tis also called, is situate in the Crimea in a beautiful and very fruitful Plain, at 46 Deg. of Latit.

Once the Capital.

This Town was formerly the Capital of that Country, and 'tis from it that the Country has taken its Name. But fince the Tatars have been in possession of that Peninsula, the Town of Crim has intirely gone to ruin, so that at present it may contain upwards of six hundred Houses, or rather thatch'd Cabins. 'Tis inhabited by Tatars and some Jews, and is under the Dominion of the Chan of Crimea.

Run to

Hole.

Perekop a

The Town of Perekop stands upon the East side of the Istomus, which joins Crimea to the Continent, but a small distance from the Shore of the Palus Meotis. As this Istomus is but half a League broad in that Place, the Town of Perekop is with reason deemed the Key of the Crimea: Nevertheless it is but a mere pitiful Hole of about six hundred Houses, with a Castle half ruin'd. 'Tis true it has some Fortisications, but they are very ill contrived, and of very little Defence.

Intrenchment drawn cross the Ishmus.

The Tatars have drawn from this Town to the West side of the Isthmus, a Ditch with a Breast-wall behind, which serves them for an Intrenchment to defend the Entrance of the Crimea; but as that Ditch is drawn in a streight Line, without having wherewithal to slank it, this would be a poor Desence in case of a vigorous Attack.

Kirk.

Excellent Port. The Town of Kirk on the Straits of Daman, which join the Black Sea to the Palus Meetis, has also an excellent Port; but as this Place is in the Hands of the Tatars who have no shipping, this Port is good for nothing to them. The Town of Kirk may contain about four hundred Houses.

The

0

lfo

ful

at

en

it

es,

by

11-

ift

he

re

uf.

6-

le

If

ut

e-

to

0-

1;

1

d

t-

1,

1.

ır

C

The Town of Caffa is situate in the Crimea Caffa caupon a Gulf of the Black Sea in 45° 10' Latit. ken by This Town fell betimes into the Hands of the ele in Tatars, but they did not keep it long; for a- 1265. bout the Year 1266 the Genoese came and took it from them, and establish'd there the Seat of their Commerce in the East, which render'd that Town for some time one of the most flou- By the rishing in Afia; but since the taking of it by Turks in the Turks in 1474, after Constantinople fell into 1474. their Hands, the Town of Caffa has loft much of its Lustre, yet still it is the best Town of Best Town Crimea; but it has almost no Trade at present, in Crimea. except that of Slaves, which the Tatars of Crimea, the Cuban Tatars, the Mingrelians, the Georgians, and other robbing People thereabouts, bring thither in Droves, and which are transported from thence thro' all the Dominions of the Ottoman Empire, and even as far as Africa.

It may contain at present about five or six Five or thousand Houses; and all that appears there at six thouppresent any thing handsom, with regard to ses. Buildings, is as old as the Times of the Genoese. Tis inhabited by Jews, Mingrelians, Christians, (as well Armenians and Greeks as Roman Catholicks) and by Turks; nevertheless the Christians are most numerous there, and enjoy full Liber-Liberty of ty in the Exercise of their Religion. The Ro-Consciences man Catholicks sound there are for the most part of the Posterity of the Genoese Families, which

conquer'd it.

The Turks are at present Masters of the Town In the of Cassa, and they constantly keep a strong Ga-Hands of the Turks. The Turks and keep the Mingrelians in awe: Nevertheless it would be no difficult Matter to dislodge them, seeing

were settled in that Town at the time the Turks

Part 1

Ch.

Nam

refpe

hey

thene.

T

of C

Nort

he !

Rive

T

Mob

femb

6 ug

ave

much

he]

[mall

harth

T

and I

very

Sheep

quilte Cafta

put o

better

ined

their ! Elb,

Skin,

They kin. Th

Artov

terity ance,

Trave

VC

in the World.

fcent.

Divided

into three

Branches.

feeing the Fortifications of that Place are fallen to ruin.

The Port of Baluclawa is situate in 44° 40' Belongs to Latit. on the Southern Coast of this Country, she Turks and is in the Hands of the Turks as well as Cafa:

which two Places are of great importance to the Othmans, especially the Port of Baluclawa, because of the Communication with this Peninsula The Burrow which bears that Name is in

deed nothing confiderable, feeing it fcarce contains at present three hundred Houses; but the One of the Port is one of the best in the World, having best Ports Water enough for the largest Ships of War, and being cover'd from all Winds by the high Mountains which furround it. It may be about forty Paces wide at the Entrance, and forms a Bason within of eight hundred Paces long, and

four hundred and fifty broad. Chans their De-

The Chans of the Tatars of Crimea pretend to spring from Mengli Garay Chan, Son of Ha-

gi Garay Chan.

The Tatars of Crimea are those which have been hitherto best known in Europe, on account of their frequent Invasions into Poland, Hungary and Russa. These Tatars are at present divided into three Branches.

1. The Tatars of Crimea.

2. The Tatars of Budziak.

3. The Kuban Tatars.

SECT. II.

An Account of the TATARS of CRIMEA

Names.

HE Tatars of Crimea are the most powerful of these three Branches; they are also called the Tatars of Perekop, from the Town of that Name,

t L

llen

40'

try,

fa:

the

be-

ula.

m

-1100

the

ing

Var,

ligh

out

15 2

and

rend Ha-

ave

unt

ngadi-

EA.

rful

lled

that

me,

Name, or the Sa-porovi Tatars; because, with respect to the Poles, who give them that Name, they dwell beyond the Catarasts of the Borysthenes.

These Tatars at present inhabit the Peninsula Possessions. of Crimea, with part of the Country to the North of that Peninsula, which is separated by the River Samar, from Ukraina, and by the

River Mius, from the rest of Russia.

The Tatars of Crimea, are those of all the Likest the Mohammedan Tatars who bear the greatest Re-Callmaks emblance to the Callmaks, without being near of all the bugly: They are short and strong set, they have the Complexion swarthy, Pigs-eyes, not much open but very sparkling; the Turn of the Face square and slat, the Mouth pretty small, and Teeth as white as Ivory; black Hair, harsh as Hogs Bristles, and very little Beard.

They wear very short Shirts of Cotton Cloth, Clothes. and Drawers of the same: Their Breeches are very large, and made of any thick Cloth or Sheep-skin; their Vests are made of Cloth, and quilted with Cotton after the Manner of the Castans of the Turks; and over these Vests they put on a Cloke of Felt, or Sheep-skin. The letter fort among them wear a Cloth Gown lined with some fine Fur, instead of that Cloke; their Bonnets are in some measure like the Polish, and edged with Sheep-skin, or some better Skin, according to the Quality of the Person: They wear besides Buskins of red Marro-kin.

Their Arms are the Sabre, the Bow and the Arms.

Arrow, which they use with a surprizing Dexterity: Their Horses make a very bad Appearance, but are good, and have the Quality of Iravelling upon occasion, twenty or thirty VOL. II.

P Leagues

Ch

hu

the Sta

the

the

the

the

w

01

ab

an

un

ufi

ca

Er: th

25

21

P

Te b

N

fi

0

П

t

D

feeing they partake too much of the Features of their Husbands; nevertheless they are fair e-Their Ha- nough, and wear long Shifts of Cotton Cloth, with a strait Gown of colour'd Cloth or Sheepskin, and Buskins of yellow or red Marrokin. But as these Tatars are continually roving one where or another, they commonly choose those they like best from among their Slaves for their Concubines, and despise the Women of their Nation.

602

Women.

Children.

of their

Clokes

Stakes.

Spread on

bit.

They educate their Children with much Severity, and exercise them from the Age of six Years at drawing the Bow. They profess the Mahome- Mobammedan Religion, and are stanch enough to it.

The Tatars of this Country are the best disci-Tatars of disciplined in Grindle I all the Tatars, tho the Callmaks are infinitely braver than they. When they intend to make an Inroad into the neighbouring Domimake their nions, each Tatar who is of the Party provides Incursions. two spare Horses, which are train'd to follow

him every where without leading by the Hand, and loads each Horse with a Sack fill'd with Barley-Meal, and a little Biscuit, and Salt for In the March there are none but his Provision. the most considerable among them who have little Tents to cover them in the Night, with a Quilt to lie upon; for the other Tatars make themselves Tents of their Clokes, which they

Tentsmade fpread upon fome Sticks stuck in the Ground, with which they are always furnish'd for that Purpose. The Saddle serves them for a Bolster, and ut l.

ddles

Stir-

back

quite

nest,

es of

ur e-

loth.

eep-

okin.

one

hole

their

their

Se-

ffix

the

ugh

ifci-

are

end

mıides

ow

nd, vith

for but

ave

ha ake

ney

nd,

hat

er, ind and a kind of a thick Blanket, which they commonly put under the Saddle that it might not hurt the Horse, is their Covering. Each of them ties his Horses with pretty long Cords to Stakes near the Place where he refts, and there they feed on the Grass which they find under the Snow, after removing it very cleverly with their Feet; and when they are dry, they eat of

the Snow to quench their Thirst.

If any of their Horses tires, they kill him Kill their out of hand and divide him among their Friends, when they who do the same when the like happens to them. tire. On those Occasions they cut the best Flesh from about the Bone in several Slices a full Inch thick, Dress the and lay them very evenly upon their Horses Back Flesh by under the Saddle; after which they faddle as under the usual, observing to draw off the Blood all they saddle can, and thus march on again. After they have and ritravell'd three or four Leagues they take off ding. the Saddle, turn their Slices of Meat, and take great care to stroke away with the Finger the Scum which the Sweat of the Horse raises about the Flesh. After which they put on the Saddle as before, and make the rest of their way; and at Evening this Ragoust will be ready, and passes with them for delicious Eating. rest of the Flesh which is about the Bone is boiled with a little Salt, or for want of a Kettle, roafted with a few Sticks, and eaten upon the Place: Horse-Flesh and Mares-Milk are their greatest Delicates.

In this manner they very often make Incur-Make Infions of two or three hundred Leagues, with-roads of out kindling a Fire during the Night, that they Leagues might not be thereby discover'd; tho they never make their Inroads commonly but in the depth of Winter, when all the Marshes and neighbouring Rivers are frozen, that they

P 2 might

CI

an

plo

Tı

the

To

cal

Po

the

ro

Bl

dif

the

St

an

ar

CU

th

E

ke

Co

CI

of

CO

th

T

fu.

might meet with nothing to stop them on the Road.

How they At their Return, the Chan takes the Tithe divide the of all the Booty, which generally confifts in Spoil. Slaves; the Mursa of each Orda takes as much out of the Share which falls to those who are

out of the Share which falls to those who are under his Command, and the rest is divided equally among those who have been of the Party.

The Tatars of Crimea may bring into the

The Tatars of Crimea may bring into the Field about eighty thousand Men. See the Description of Ukraïna, by the Sieur de Beauplan.

Chans deposed at pleasure by the Port.

They obey a Chan who is an Ally of the Port, and his Country is under the Protection of the Turks, who treat the Chans of Crimea much like their Grand Vizier; for on the least Occasion which the Ottoman Port thinks they have to be dissatisfy'd with the Conduct of the Chan, he is depos'd without any Ceremony, and confin'd in Prison, if he fares no worse; nevertheless they always observe to place one of his Family in his room. The presumptive Successor of the Chan is always called Sultan Galga, and the other Princes of his Family bear only the Name of Sultan.

Heir always called Sultan Galga.

SECT. III.

2. TATARS of BUDZIAK.

Tatars
of Budziak.

The Tatars of Budziak dwell towards the Western Coast of the Black Sea, between the Mouth of the Danube and the River Bogt.

Independent. These Tatars are in truth a Branch of the Tatars of Crimea; but they live like Independent People, without obeying either the Chan of Crimea, or the Port. Their Form, Religion, and Customs, exactly agree with those of the Tatars of Crimea, but they are braver: They pretend to maintain themselves by their Cattle and

1.

the

he

in

ich

ire

e-

ty.

he

)e-

n.

he

on

iea

aft

ey

he

ıy,

e;

ne

ve

an

ar

he he

he

in-

of

nd

and Husbandry, but Robbery is the chief Employment of their Lives; and neither Peace, Truce, Friendship, nor Alliance can restrain often inthem: They often make Incursions into the vade the Territories of the Turks, whence they carry off Turks. all the Christians subject to the Port whom they can lay hold of; after which they retreat home.

When the Turks, or other neighbouring Powers send great Bodies of Troops against Their Rethem, they retire to certain Heights quite sur-treats. rounded with Marshes towards the Coast of the Black Sea, from whence 'tis almost impossible to dislodge them, because there is no coming at them either by Land or Sea, but by very narrow Paffages, where fifty Men might eafily put a Stop to a whole Army, tho ever fo numerous: and as these Hills which are of great Extent, are the only Lands which the Tatars of Budziak Cultivate cultivate, and that Pasturage never fails them the hilly there, they have no occasion to stir out till their Country. Enemies have march'd off; nevertheless they keep as fair with the Turks as they can, and are commonly of the Party when the Tatars of Crimea have any great Design in hand.

Hitherto the Tatars of Budziak have had no Govern'd Chan of their own, but live under the Command by their of Mursas, Heads of different Ordas, which Mursas. compose their Bodies: They may make about

thirty thousand Men.

SECT. IV.

The KUBAN TATARS.

The Kuban Tatars dwell to the South of the Kuban Town of Assoft, about the sides of the River Tatars. Kuban, which rises in the part of Mount Caucasus, which the Russians call Turki Gora, and falls

P 3

inte

CI

in

W

in

th

ab

6

A

t

b

(

would

into the Palus Meotis, at 46° 15' Latit. to the N. E. of the Town of Daman.

Govern'd by their own Chan,

These Tatars are a Branch of the Tatars of Crimea, and were formerly subject to the Chan of that Peninsula; but for about these forty Years past they have had their own Chan, who is of the same Family with the Chan of Crimea: He does not at all regard the Orders of the Port, and maintains an intire Independence with regard to the neighbouring Powers.

Dwell der Tents.

The Kuban Tatars possess indeed some paultry mostly un- Towns and Villages along the River Kuban; but the greatest part of them live under Tents, toward the Foot of the Mountains of Caucalus, where they go and shelter themselves when they are too closely press'd by the neighbouring Powers.

Live by robbing their Neighbours.

ment to

They fubfift altogether by what they can pillage and steal from their Neighbours, of what Nation foever they be. They also make Incurfions as far as the River Wolga, which they often pass in Winter, in order to surprize the Callmaks and Tatars of Nagai. 'Twas to cover the Kingdom of Casan against their Invasions, that the late Em-Intrench- peror of Russia caused that great Intrenchment to be raised, which begins near Zaritza, on the Wolga, and ends at the Don, right against the

binder Incursions. Town of Wia.

The Kuban Tatars differ in nothing from the Not fo warlike as Tatars of Crimea, excepting that they are not the Tatars fo warlike, and have less Order and Subordiof Crimea nation among them. The Turks are very complaifant to them, because 'tis chiefly by their Means that they are furnish'd with Circassian, Georgian and Abassian Slaves, which are in great request in Turky; and that they fear if they should press them too hard they might put

themselves under the Protection of Russia, which

Turks complaifant to zbem.

rt]

the

rs of

ban

orty

who

the

ltry in;

nts,

lus, ney

ing

oil-

nat

en eks

m n-

nt he

ne

10

ot

1-

y

would terribly incommode the Provinces border-

ing on Turky.

When the Tatars of Crimea are threaten'd Affift the with any great Storm, or have any great Design Tatars of in hand, the Kuban Tatars don't fail to lend them a helping hand. They may amount to Emergenabout forty thousand Men, more or less.

CHAP. XII.

An ACCOUNT of the Countries between the Euxine and the Caspian Seas, inhabited by the CIRCAS-SIAN and DAGHESTAN TATARS; the ALLANS and and the ABASSES.

SECT. I.

Of Circassia and the Circassians.

THE Country of the Circassians is situate to Circassia. the N. W. of the Caspian Sea, and extends in length at present from the Mouth of the River Wolga, to the River Bosto; and in breadth from the Shore of the Caspian, as far as the Mountains of Caucasus to the North of Georgia, which takes up a Space of above sixty German Leagues, as well in length as in breadth. Belongs to At present it is in the Hands of the Russians who the Russiare in Possession of Terki, the Capital of the ans. Country.

P 4

Terki

European

Manner.

Ch.

of the

which

and

on th

with

the

reac

whe

fide

The

yer

bro

the

tars

ny

Ar

har

COI

Co

bla

be

th

ce W

ha H

be

ec th

th

T

Terki.

Terki is situate in 43° 15' of Latit. near a Mile from the Sea, on the North fide of the Fortified River Tirk; and as it is of great Importance after the to Russia, Care has been taken to fortify it after the European Manner, with good Bastions and Half-Moons faced with Earth, and to maintain there continually a numerous Garison to keep the neighbouring People in awe. most powerful of the Princes of this Country refides here.

Circaffians

The People known to us at prefent by the Branch of Name of Circassians, is a Branch of the Moham. the Tatars. medan Tatars; at least the Circassians still retain the Language, Customs, Inclinations, and even the Appearance of Tatars, tho one may eafily perceive that there must have been a great Mixture of the Blood of the antient Inhabitants with that of the Tatars.

When thefe Ta. fia.

'Tis probable that the Circassian Tatars, as well as the Daghestans, are of the Posterity of tars settled those Tatars, who were obliged at the time the Shahs posses'd themselves of Persia, to retire out of that Kingdom to the Mountains lying to the North of the Province of Shirwan, from whence the Persians could not so easily drive them, and where they were near enough to hold Correspondence with the other Tribes of their Nation, who were then in Possession of the Kingdoms of Casan and Astrachan.

Form.

The Circassians are made much like the other Mohammedan Tatars; that is to fay, they are fwarthy, of a middling Stature, but well-fet; their Visage is broad and flat, the Features very large, and the Hair black and exceeding strong; but they are not by much so ugly as their Neighbours the Daghestan and Nagai Tatars. They shave their Heads the breadth of two Fingers, from the middle of the Forehead to the Nape

art I

near a

of the

rtance It af-

stions!

main-

on to The

y re-

y the

bam-

etain

even afily Mix-

with

as of of

ime re-

ly-

an,

fily

gh

Des

of

er

re

;

y

1-

of the Neck, excepting a fingle Tuft of Hair which they referve upon the Crown of the Head, and the rest of their Hair falls on both sides upon their Shoulders.

They wear a long Vest of coarse grey Cloth, Habit. with a Cloke of Felt or Sheep-skin knitted on the Shoulder with a tagged Point: This Cloke reaches but to half-way of the Thigh, and when they are in the Field they turn it to the fide from whence the Wind and Rain comes. They wear Boots of Horse-skin Leather made yery clouterly, and round Bonnets, but pretty broad, of coarse Felt or black Cloth, much of the Fashion of those used by the Daghestan Ta-

Their Arms are Bows and Arrows, but ma- Arms. ny of them at present begin to handle Fire-Arms, and that with much Skill.

The Circassian Women are esteemed the Women the handsomest Women in the Universe, being beautifulcommonly tall and well shaped, with a true less in the Complexion of Lilies and Roses, the finest black Eyes in the World, their Hair the fame, beautiful Arms and fine Breafts; and befides all that they are very affable, complainant, and exceeding airy, which is fomewhat fingular in the Women of that Continent. Their Husbands have the Qualification of being very convenient Husbands, giving their Wives all forts of Liberty with other Men, and even with Strangers; and as they are most of the time employed Abroad in Hunting or keeping the Cattle, their Wives have the best Opportunity in the World of obliging their Gallants with all the Conveniency imaginable: Nevertheless 'tis said they don't at all abuse that Liberty, and that Don't abesides the small Favours which they bestow buse their with Pleasure on those who know how to re-Liberty.

ceive

Cb.

beM

nor .

A

Wiv

take

out (

to m

dren

row

far a

Face

and

p001

ver 1

or 1

the !

of D

fen f

rem

Ward

Villa

mak

and

Dea

anot

mof

thele

mak

T

the

their

not Opp

that Dag

[*

Free but boneft.

ceive them in a proper manner, I mean by way of Presents, they very strictly preserve the Fi delity promised to their Husbands, giving for reason that it would be a great piece of Baseness in them to deceive their Husbands at a time when they trusted intirely to their Ho. nesty.

Have the king a Hand of their Lovers.

These Beauties are very dextrous at searching Art of ma- the Pockets of their Adorers, and claiming as their own whatever they fee. They are also well vers'd at making their Lovers pay fufficiently for the Kisses and other little Familiarities which they grant them, and are never tir'd of asking Prefents.

Summer Habit.

In the Summer they wear only a fingle Shift of colour'd Calico flit down to the Navel, and in Winter they cover themselves with furth Gowns, fuch as the Russian Women commonly wear. They cover the Head with a fort of black Bonnet, which becomes them very well; and the Widows fix behind this Bonnet a blown Bladder cover'd with some Crape or other thin Stuff of divers Colours; they wear several Strings of large Pearls of colour'd Glass about the Neck, the better to make the Beauties of their Necklaces. Necks observ'd.

This fur-· prizing whence.

Glass

This extraordinary Difference which is found betwixt the two Sexes of this Country, the Men Difference, being all very ugly, and the Women on the contrary furprizingly beautiful, affords Matter to exercise the Speculations of Philosophers and Naturalists; especially if to this we add, that the few ill-favour'd Women which one fees in this Country are so frightfully ugly, that they feem to be loaded with the Deformity of all the Women in the Nation.

Gircumeifion.

The Circassians circumcise and observe several other Ceremonies, which shew they pretend to Part L

y way

he Fi

ng for

deness

at a

ching

ing as

e also

uffici-

rities'd of

Shift

and

urrd

only

olack

and own

thin

ings

the

heir

und Vien

the

tter

and that

s in

hey

all

ral

to be be Mobammedans; but they have neither Mullas nor Moskees, nor make use of the Alcoran.

As Mohammedans, they are allowed * as many Wives as they can maintain, tho they feldom take more than one. When a Man dies without Children by his Wife, his Brother is obliged Marry to marry the Widow in order to raise up Chil-their Bro dren to the deceased: They express much Sor-thers Wirow at the Death of any of their Parents, so dows if far as to tear off their Hair and scratch their childlese. Faces. They bury their Dead very honourably, Burials. and let the Family of the Deceased be ever so poor, they do not fail to build a little House over the Grave; and these little Houses are more or less adorn'd according to the Substance of the Defunct. At the Interment of any Person sacrifice an of Distinction they facrifice an Ox, which is cho-ox and fen for that Purpose with very extravagant Ce-worship remonies; the Skin of this Ox is hung after-before the wards upon a high Pole in the middle of the Skin. Village, before which the Circassians go and make their Adorations with much Fervency, and that this Skin must continue there till the Death of some other Person of that Quality puts mother in the Place of it. In this confifts al-Greek Remost all the Religion of the Circassians; never-ligion betheless the Greek Religion begins at present to gins to make great Progress in that Country.

The Circassians are good Horsemen like all Good the other Tatars. They subsist by Hunting, by Horsemen their Cattle, and by Husbandry; yet that does Robbers. not hinder them to be great Robbers when an Opportunity offers; however, without using that Force and Violence which the Tatars of

Dagbestan their Neighbours do.

[* No Mohammedan is allowed more than five Wives by

They

Ch.

fuffice

and b

and l

their

are u

Posse

Terki.

Coun

in all

vels

Of th

into t

to the the S

of the

tainoi

Parts

Ti

derive

Turki

or Da

a Con

Voya

try of

time a

hans,

bamm

Th

Th

Dwellings. They dwell in Winter in little Towns and Villages, which confift generally of very forry thatch'd Houses, and in Summer they go and encamp the best part of the time in Places where

they find good Pasture.

Country very barren to-Cafpian.

Towards the Coasts of the Caspian Sea the Country of the Circasses is very barren, and from the River Kiselaer to the Mouth of the River wards the Wolga, which contains a Space of above fifty German Leagues, the whole Country is only one vast dry Plain, where nothing is to be found but some great Holes of Salt or stagnant Water,

Very good towards Georgia and Daghestan.

Silver

Mines.

which renders the Passage by Land from Astrachanto Derbent very dangerous and difficult; but towards the Frontiers of Daghestan and Georgia, this Country is very fine, and produces all forts of Plants and Fruits in great Plenty. There are also Silver Mines in Circassia towards the Mountains of Caucasus, the Mineral of which has been proved very rich in several Esfays which have been made of it; but the Junctures of Times would never hitherto permit working in them.

Horses.

'Tis from the mountainous Parts of this Coun-Circassian try that those Circassian Horses come, so much esteemed in Russia, that one of them bears a Price of two hundred Ducats when it is of a good breed. These Horses are far from handfom, feeing they have long Legs, no Belly nor Buttocks, a long stiff Neck with a great Head; but their Merit lies in being exceeding swift, and going at a great Rate, which partakes of the Amble, and that so fast that another Horse must always be upon a full Gallop to keep up with one of them, while the Circassian Horse never goes out of his ordinary Gate. A very little Food serves them, and in case of need even the Moss which grows about the Shrubs will fuffice; art I

is and

forry

o and

where

ea the

from River

e fifty

found Vater, Astra-

; but orgia,

forts

There
s the
which

Effays

tures king

oun-

much

ars a of a

nand-

nor lead;

wift,

es of

Horse

p up

Iorfe

very

will fice;

fuffice; tis also said that they lose their Quality, and become heavy when they are taken care of, and kept like our Horses.

The Circassians have particular Princes of Princes of their own Nation whom they obey, and these their own are under the Protection of Russia, which is in protested Possessian of the Country called Terki, where the most powerful Prince of the Country resides: The Circassians may make in all about 20000 armed Men. See the Travels of Olearius.

SECT. II.

Of the Country of DAGHESTAN, and the DAGHESTAN Tatars.

THIS Country of Daghestan extends in Extent.

length from the River Bustro which falls into the Caspian Sea at 40 Deg. 20 Min. Latit. to the Gates of Darbend, and in breadth from the Shore of the Caspian to within six Leagues of the Town of Erivan; it is altogether mountainous, but for all that it is very fertile in those Parts where it is cultivated.

'Tis from these Mountains that the Country Name. derived its present Name, Tag signifying in the Surkish Language a Mountain, and Taghestan or Daghestan, as they commonly pronounce it, a Country of Mountains. See thereupon the Voyages of Olearius and Tavernier.

The Tatars who at present possess the Coun-Most illtry of Daghestan, where they retir'd at the same favour'd time and on the same occasion with the Circas-of all the same, are the most ill-savour'd of all the Mobammedan Tatars: they are commonly below

the

Ch

fom

muc

All

deit

mol

stea

Geo

for

dre

Da

the

tiol

are

the

wit

wh

Di

by

La

Pu

the

tha

ha Pr

as

th

W

an Fi

th

M

F

the middling fize, but strongly set; they are ver swarthy, and they have some Resemblance of the Callmaks in the Nose, and the nearness of their Eyes, which are well enough cut according to the taste of the other Mohammedan Tatari. Their Hair which is very black and coarse like Hogs Bristles, is cut so that it does not fall quite so low as the Shoulders.

Habit.

They wear Gowns of a kind of very thick dark grey-colour'd or black Cloth, which falls as low as the Calf of the Leg, over which they throw a short Cloke, or instead of the Cloke two Sheeps Skins sewed together. They cover the Head with a fort of square Bonnet of thick Cloth, which they line in Winter with some Skin, and their Shoes and Stockings consist in a sort of Shoes made of one Piece of Sheep of Horse Skin sewed together on the top of the Foot.

Women.

Their Women are habited suitably; they go with the Face uncover'd after the manner of the other Tatar Women, and would not be unhandsom, if the ugly Habits which they wear did not disfigure them so much.

Arms.

The Arms of the Tatars of Daghestan are the same as those of the other Mohammedan Tatars, to wit the Bow and Arrows, the Sabre, the Lance, and the Javelin; nevertheless some of them now-a-days begin to use Fire-Arms, which however they don't well understand how to manage.

Cattle.

Their Horses are very small, but exceeding swift and expert in climbing the Mountains. They have great Troops of Cattle, of which they leave all the Care to their Wives and Slaves; for the Men put themselves under Arms as soon as they rise, and do nothing all the Day but look out for an Opportunity to execute some

Part

re ver

ince o

ness o

ordin

atars

fe like

not fall

k dark

as low

throw

e two

F the

thick

fome t in a

ep or

f the

y go

er of

e un-

wear

e the

tars.

the e of

hich

ma-

ling

ains.

hich res;

3 25 Jay.

ute me ome Deligns after their Fashion, which are steal and much the same as those of our Highwaymen fell Women All the Strangers who fell into their Hands are dren mite stript and made Slaves of without Cere-from one mony; neither do they lose any Occasion to another. fleal Women and Children out of Circaffia. Georgia, and other neighbouring Countries, and for want of fuch they fteal Women and Children from one another, and go fell them at Darbend or at Erivan and Teffis, according to the Circumstances of Trade and Time.

They profess the Mohammedan Religion, but Mohamthey take no great care to observe the Alcoran. medans

They obey diverse petty Princes of their Na-Govern'd tion, who take the Title of Sultan, and who sultans are as great Robbers as their Subjects. Amongst under the these Princes there is one who is as their Chan, Shemker with a kind of Superiority over all the rest, to whom they give the Name of Shemkal. This Manner of Dignity is elective, and the Election is made Election. by means of an Apple which the Head of the Law casts in the middle of a Circle, where all the Princes of that Nation are ranged for that Purpose, which ought to be a kind of Lot; but the good Man knows how to cast the Apple so that it shall only hit him to whom he would have that Dignity fall: nevertheless the other Princes obey the Shemkal only just as much as they pleafe.

As barbarous as the Daghestan Tatars are, Daghestan they have nevertheless one very good Custom full of which they carefully observe, viz. that none Forefis. among them shall marry till he has planted 100 Fruit Trees in a Place mark'd out; insomuch that one finds, every where throughout the Mountains of Daghestan, Forests of all sorts of

Fruit Trees.

616 Circassia dependent on Russia. Part I.

All the Forces of the Daghestan Tatars may amount to about twenty thousand Men or

They dwell in Towns and Villages built much after the Persian Manner, but not quite so

handsom.

Boinak
Seat. The Town of Boinak is the Residence of the Shemkal, and that of Tarku the most considerable one in the Country.

Independent.

They have preserved themselves hitherto entirely Independent of the neighbouring Powers, in which the Mountains of the Country, inaccessible to all but those who know the Passages of them, have always been of great Service to

them.

made on that fide.

Opposed the When the late Emperor of Russia went in Czar in 1722 to take the City of Darbend, he found much Resistance in his March from the Daghestan Tatars; but the Fortress of St. Andrew which the Russians have built since in the heart of their Country, to the North of the Town of Tarku, on the Shore of the Caspian Sea, almost half way between Darbend and Terki, is a Curb to them, and promises fair one Day for constraining them to submit intirely to the Obedience of Russia, provided it can maintain it self in the Conquests which the late Emperor has

SECT.

Ch.

Of th

tains

Caspi

Geor

ture

ly de

they

Mus

wife

their

T

parti

of ar

tians

have

conf

Cauc

they

Han

A cam
Dead
first mor
from
from
has
four
only

nay

uch

fo fo

the

ide-

en-

ers,

Jac-

ges

e to

t in

and ghe-

rew

eart

of

oft

urb

on-

di-

felf

has

T.

SECT. III.

Of the ALANS or ALAINS, an Independent People of the Mountains.

THE Nation which is known at present by Alans inthe Name of Alans, inhabit the Moun-habit Cautains of Caucasus between the Black Sea and the
Caspian, to the East of the Abasses and North of
Georgia; they are very ill-favour'd, but of Stature tall and loose, very resolute, and extremely dextrous in the Use of all sorts of Fire-Arms;
they have also the Skill to make their own
Make
Muskets, and very good Powder, tho other-and Powwise they live in extreme Poverty, having only der.
their Cattle and Hunting to subsist on.

They dwell in little Villages, and have their Indepenparticular Chiefs, whom they obey independant dent.
of any other Power. They pretend to be Chris-Christians.
tians as well as the Abasses; and it is plain they
have had the same Reason which those had to
confine themselves within the Mountains of
Caucasus, since the Country of Dagbestan, which
they heretofore possessed, is at present in the
Hands of Mobammedan Tatars.

Among the other barbarous Nations who Alains' came to invade the Roman Empire after the or Alans Death of Augustus, the Alans were one of the invade invade the Roman first; but tho they harass'd that Monarchy for Empire.

more than a whole Age, and ravaged Europe from one end to the other, we are yet to seek from whence they certainly came; and all which has been written thereupon to this time is only founded upon very uncertain Conjectures: the only thing which appears probable with regard VOL II.

Tu

tic

in

tle

in M

10 for

to to an nei

Na

Pr the a h

M

To

ber

1

to them is, that they have iffued formewhere from the North East of Europe, but from what Province we are intirely ignorant of. Nevertheless as the Oriental Authors unanimously agree to place a certain People whom they call the Alans in the Country, which is known to us at present by the Name of Daghestan, and that at present there is found a Nation of that Name in the Mountain of Caucasus, it is very likely that the Alans who invaded the Roman Empire came from this Country.

SECT.

Of the ABASSES, an Independent People of the Mountains.

Abasses Independent.

erful.

THE Abasses are certain People inhabiting the Mountains of Caucasus on the side of the Black Sea towards the 45th Deg. of Latit. for it is certain that these Abasses had been much Once pow-more powerful in the Ages past, and that their Country extended heretofore as far as the Castian Sea towards the North of Dagbestan; but fince the Tatars have extended themselves on that fide, the Abasses as well as divers other People who dwelt of old between the Black Sea and the Caspian, have lost Ground and been obliged at last to shut themselves up in the Mountains of Caucasus to shelter themselves from the Infults of those bad Neighbours.

Handsom but great Robbers.

The People who are known at present by the Name of Abasses are very beautiful and well shaped, but great Robbers; for they steal one another whenever they can, and fell them to the Turks,

art L

where

what

ever-

illy a-

y call

to us

nat at

ne in

that

pire

le of

ting

e of

atit.

uch

hat the m; ves her Sea een the res

he ell ne he ks,

Turks, who are very fond of Slaves of this Na-Breed tion, because they are commonly handsom and much Cat? ingenious; they live by Hunting and their Cattle, of which they breed very numerous Droves in the fine Valleys which are inclosed in those Mountains.

They don't dwell in Towns or Castles, but Live on several Families join together and take Posses-Hills. fion of the Top of some Hill which they find for their Conveniency, and there built Cabins to lodge in the best they can; they take care to fortify their Habitations with good Hedges and Ditches against any Surprize from the neighbouring Villages, who continually feek to make Slaves one of another for Profit fake.

They have petty Princes or Chiefs of their Princes Nation who govern absolutely; they pretend absolute. to be Christians, but have neither Church nor Christians. Priest; they don't inter their Dead, but put their Bodies in Chests made of some Trunk of Burials. a hollow Tree, and hang them in that Manner on a Tree, observing to hang one Part of the Moveables of the Deceased about those airy Tombs. See the Relation of Colchis by P. Lamberti.





CHAP

C

til

fu

int

of of w

of

lo

fer bo

an

fo

W

ab

w

ob

th

K

fre

to

St

th

Bo

Bo

th

fti

ta

at

th

te

in

th

an

be

time

CHAP. XIII.

A DESCRIPTION of Si. BERIA.

SECT. I.

The Bounds, Extent, Climate of Siberia, and of the Discovery and Conquest of it by the Russians.

Bounds.

THE Country which is known to us at present by the Name of Siberia, comprehends the most Northern Part of Asia, being bounded by the Sea of Japan on the East, by Grand Tatary on the South, by Russia on the West, (from which it is separated by the beginning of Mount Caucasus) and by the icy Sea on the North; so that Siberia in its present Condition might contain about eight hundred German Leagues in its greatest Extent from West to East, and near three hundred Leagues from South to North.

Extent.

Climate.

1

As this vast Country is situate between the 50th and 70th Deg. of Latit. it must needs be very cold in the most northern Parts of it, and the rather because there is nothing to cover those Quarters against the Violence of the North Wind, which reigns there almost three quarters

The Coasts of the Year; because as one advances towards of the Icy the Coast of the icy Sea, the Mountains of that Sea level. Country, in other Parts very high, grow level infensibly, in such manner that at length you find nothing but vast Plains cover'd with little Fur Trees and other Shrubs, and interspersed from

2

time to time with little low Hills, which give full Liberty to that terrible Wind to penetrate into the most remote Cantons of Siberia.

Siberia has been wholly under the Obedience and Conof the Russians for these 130 Years past; 'tis quest of of that Conquest our Author speaks, p. 209. Siberia by which happen'd on this Occasion: In the Reign the Coof the Czaar Ivan Wasilowitz, there was a Colonel of the Cosaks of Don called Yermak Timofewitz, who having for a long time rang'd about the Occa and Wolga with some thousand Cosaks, pillaging and ravaging all the Towns and Villages thereabouts, found himself at last so pres'd by a great Number of Troops which were fent after him on all fides, that not being able to recover the Habitations of the Cosaks, which they had taken care to intercept, he was obliged after having loft in feveral Engagements the best part of his Men, to return up the Rivers Kama and Susawaya, to try to shelter himself from the Punishment which he knew to be due to his Actions.

of is-

e-

y

n-

n

i-

0

10

d

h

rs

S

d

r

n

In this desperate Situation he propos'd to one Yermak Strobanoff, who possess'd much Lands about itz is affifthe River Susawaya, that if he would give him ed by Boats and Men to affift him in drawing those Strobanof. Boats over the Mountains, he would fall down the Tura with the eight hundred Cosaks which still remain'd with him, and see if he could take the Towns of On Zigidin and Siber, called at present Tumeen and Tobolskoy, which were the only Towns then in all Siberia. Strobanoff tearing to make this Man desperate by rejecting his Request, and finding an Advantage on the other hand in removing the Mobammedan Tatars from his Borders, accepted the Proposal, and affifted him generously with whatever might be necessary on that Occasion.

 Q_3

With

With this Affistance Yermak Timofewitz de-Yermak fcended the Tura with his Cosaks, surpriz'd the *[urprizes* OnZigidin Town of On Zigidin, now called Tumeen, and

Drives Kutzium Chan out of bis Kingdom.

from thence went and feized the Town of Sibir or Tobolskoy, drove out Kutzium Chan who then reigned there, and took his Son Prisoner: but confidering afterwards that it would be impossible for him to stand his Ground with so few Soldiers against so many thousand Mohammedan Tatars, as foon as they should have recover'd their first Surprize, he sent the Son of Kutzium Chan, named Altanay Sultan, to Moscow, and

Conquest to the Tfar.

Resigns bisoffer'd his Conquest to the Russian Court in expiation of his Crimes; which having been readily accepted, Yermak had his Pardon, and a good Number of Troops were immediately detach'd to take Possession of that Country; and from that time forward the Russians have every Day more and more advanced in Siberia, till at last they have reach'd the Shore of the Sea of

Fapan.

Yermak killed.

Siberia

Yermak Timofewitz lost his Life soon after his fuccessful Expedition; for falling down the Irtis with some Boats, he was surpriz'd in the Night by a strong Party of Tatars, who cut him in pieces with most of his Men: and as this Conquest was owing to the Cosaks, they Militia of were willing to leave them the Honour of it; called Co-fo that as often as they fent Troops thither they

faks in bo. were incorporated with the Cosaks: And this is the reason that all the Militia of Siberia to this mour of this Con-Day bear the Name of Cosaks. queft.

[In the Reign of the Tfar Phedor Evanowitz, the Country of the Samoyeds and North Part of Siberia was discover'd, as shall be related in our farther Account of Tatary.]

SECT.

to

e

20

B

of

CO

0

T

fro

the

To

Ri

to

in :

WO

to

Lif

Riv Mi rt I.

de-

the and Sibir

who ier:

im-

few

dan

er'd

ium

and

ex-

rea-

da

de-

and

rerv

till

of

his

Ir-

the

cut

1 25

hey

it;

hey

5 15

this

itz,

or

T.

SECT. II.

The Soil, Product, Coin and Trade of Siberia.

THE northern Part of Siberia produces no North fort of Grain nor Fruit; so that all that part quite lies beyond 60 Deg. of Latit. is wholly uncultivated, and the Russians who are settled in the sew Towns which are on that side are obliged to setch the Grains they stand in need of for south part their Sustenance from the other Parts situate to sexceeding the South, which are extremely fertil, notwith-standing the Cold is even there very piercing.

The best till'd Cantons of Siberia are at pre- Places in fent about the Rivers Tobol, Nevia, Ifeet, Ishim, Siberia and Tebenda to the West of the Irtis, as also the best culti-Banks of that River from Tobolskoy to the South of the Town of Tara; all those Quarters being cover'd with Villages and great Burrows on account of the great Fertility of the Country. The Lands about the Town of Tomskoy to the East of the Oby, as also the Banks of the Yenisea from the Town of Abakan, as far as that of Yemeiskoy, are likewise well cultivated; so is all the Country about the Lake Baikal, from the Town of Ilimskoy situate to the North of the River Angara to the Town of Nerzinskoy on the River Shilka, and from the Town of Selinginskoy to the North of that of Kirenskoy near the Lena; in short all the southern Part of Siberia is of a wonderful Fertility, and needs only Cultivation to produce in abundance all the Necessaries of

The Pastures there are excellent, and the Mines of Rivers swarm with Fish; nor are there wanting Copper Mines, witness the Copper Mines near Nerzin- and Iron.

Q4

skoy,

Ch.

Sku

Gra

ordi

are a

four

dep

con Par

fem

bea dar

whi

abo

lyw

the

cho

Zit

are

of

lin

W

wh

Sk

fol

the

Pr

bu

th

Q

of

C

is

in

to

lo

tr

7

skoy, and the Iron Mines of Uktus and Congur towards the Frontiers of the Kingdom of Cajan, which they are actually at work upon.

Gold and as Commodities.

As Silver is very scarce in Siberia, all Pro. silver pass visions and other Merchandizes of the Country growth are there very cheap, and all Business is carry'd on in way of Exchange by receiving Goods for Goods, according as the Parties shall agree among themselves about the Value. Gold and Silver which is brought there from China, as well as the Gold Dust which the Buchars bring there in time of Peace, are receiv'd only as Merchandizes.

Beafts and Birds become white in Winter.

Black

Zebelins

All Siberia is full of Beafts, whose Skins are fit to be employ'd in furring, as well as all forts of Game; and 'tis remarkable that towards the Coasts of the icy Sea all the Beasts become white like the Snow in Winter, as also one part 'Tis only in Siberia and the Proof the Birds. vinces depending of it that they find the black Foxes and Foxes, and Zibelins as well as the Glutons: only found and the fairest Skins of Ermins and Lynx come in Siberia, likewise from thence: Castors are also found

there in plenty, and those of Kamtzchatzka, among others, are of an extraordinary fize.

All the rich Skins carry'd into the Treasury.

As all these Skins are very precious and rare, none are fuffer'd, be they who they will, to trade in them, but the Inhabitants of the Country who have of them are obliged to carry them to the Commissioner of the Treasury, who must pay them at a fixt Price. But that gives occasion to all forts of Impositions: nevertheless there is yearly carry'd out of Siberia a prodigious quantity of these sorts of Skins, by the Connivance of those who are paid to hinder their carrying out, for they fearch in feveral ry'd out by Places those who pass out of Siberia into Russa, in order to prevent their carrying any choice Skins

Great Quantities car-

Connivance.

Ch. XIII. Product of Siberia.

art]

ongur

alan.

Pro-

intry

efs is

ving

hall

ploc

nna.

ring

Ier-

are

orts

the

me

art

ro-

ck

15:

ne

nd

2-

n-

0

ľ

Skins with them which are raw; but a small Gratification settles that Affair. With the other ordinary Skins the Inhabitants of the Country are allow'd to traffick as much as they please.

The Zibelins are a fort of Martins which are Zibelines found no where but in Siberia, and the Countries a fort of depending on it: They are bigger than the Martins. common Martins which are found in the North Parts of Germany; but excepting that they resemble them perfectly. For the Zibelins to be heautiful, the Hair should be close, of a fine dark brown Lustre, and interspersed with thin white Hairs; the best come from Jakutskoy and about the River Lena. They shoot them commonlywith Arrows of Wood, rounded at the end that they might not make Holes in the Skin. In the choicest Furs they employ only the Back of the Back, the Zibelins; the Bellies which are of a bright brown choicest are kept for the inferior fort. And of the Tails Fur. of these Animals are usually made those Zibein Tippets and Muffs which our Dames wear in Winter.

As all the People of that vast Continent Commerce which we call Siberia pay their Contributions in of Siberia Skins, and as also all the best Skins ought to be with Chifold by the Inhabitants to the Commissaries of the Treasury of the Crown at a certain fixt Price, they not being permitted to trade freely but with the worst fort; 'tis easy to conceive that there ought to enter yearly a prodigious Quantity of valuable Skins into the Magazines of the Court of Russia; and forasmuch as the Confumption which is made of them in Europe is not great enough to be able to empty them intirely, besides that they take care not to let too many Skins go out at a time, for fear of lowering the Price too much in foreign Countries; the Contiguity of the Estates of Russia with

with those of China since the Mungals of the

East are in possession of it, has made them think

of the Establishment of an advantageous Trade

with that Empire for the Sale of those Skins

which are in great request in China; and it was

first agreed with the Court of China, that there

should yearly arrive at Pekin a Caravan of Sibe.

ria, with Skins and other Merchandizes of that

Country growth; that the faid Caravan should

enjoy a full Liberty of Trade during its Stay in

China, and that it should be permitted at its

Return to import as much Merchandizes of the

Growth of China as it should think fit; that

the Expenses also of the Caravan should be en-

tirely defray'd by the Court of China, from the

time of its Entrance within the Dominions of

that Empire, till its Departure out of it again

on its Return; and that the Subjects on both

the E occas

Ch.

had, of Sil It

in th lity to ac

ence brin Ref

Rul ftan

Chi Yea

Pre was

Chi

na far

> the of

afi up

17 P

th

the

fides should enjoy a full Exemption from all Customs at going out and coming in, and from all other Imposts, with regard either to themfelves, or their Merchandizes. The Commerce subsisted for several Year on that Footing between Siberia and China, greatly to the Advantage of the Court of Russia: But fince the last Broils that happen'd between Russia and China, on account of the Town of Albassin, the Chinese have begun to perplex exceedingly the Russian Caravans; and as they are not fo much under a Necessity at present to fetch their Skins from Siberia, fince the Mungals of the East have extended their Dominion along the Banks of the River Amur, where much Zibelins and other Skins are found, tho they are not fo valuable as those which come from Siberia; they have by little and little not only very much limited the Commerce of Caravans, but they have also refused them entirely

Interrupted.

t there

f Sibe-

of that

hould

tay in

at its

of the

that

e enn the

ns of

gain

both all

rom

em-

on

tly

But

uf-

Al-

X-

ey

to

n-

n

e

Part ! s of the the Entrance of their Dominions, upon the least m think occasion of Complaint which they thought they Trade had, which has very much prejudiced the Trade e Skins of Siberia. l it was

It is true that the Court of Russia having fent in the Year 1719, Mr. Ismailof to Pekin in quality of Envoy Extraordinary, he found means to accommodate in some measure all the Differences with relation to Commerce, and even to bring the late Emperor of China to agree to the Residence of an Agent sent from the Court of Russia at Pekin, to cultivate the good Underfanding between the two Empires: but the Chinese having fent back of a sudden in the Year 1722 the aforesaid Agent, upon some new Pretence of Discontent, the Court of Russia was refolved to come to a new Rupture with China, when the Death of the Emperor of Chi-Death of na happening in the Month of September of the Emperor same Year 1722, put off at first for some time of China the Execution of that Defign, which the Death in 1722. of the late Emperor of Great Russia quite laid aside, insomuch that the Affairs there are much upon the same Footing still; and since the Year 1722 there have gone no Russian Caravans to Pekin.

Those Caravans are under the Direction of Kairaa Commissary, who receives on the Account of wans. the Treasury of Siberia all sorts of Skins and Merchandizes of the Growth of the Country, at the Price which the Zelawalnicks, or sworn Appraisers of the Treasury set upon them, and which is either high or low according as he knows how to manage his Affairs with them; it ought to pay the Price of them at its Return; either in Chinese Commodities or ready Money: and to the end the Caravan may trade to the best Advantage, 'tis forbidden under pain of

Ch.

in Ch

oblig

God

it;

went

the !

diffe

whic

ranc

habi

any

Con

he c

he v

othe

rest

rin :

fary

beri

cati

der

OW

Wei

mai

infi

the

int

Death to all the Subjects of Russia to traffick in those forts of Merchandizes with the Subject of China: nevertheless enough of that is done by Connivance of the Waywodes, or Governors of the Frontier Towns, who find their Ac count in it, for which the last Treaty between Russia and China has furnish'd them with a very convenient Opportunity; for as it is thereby agreed, that the Subjects of Russia might have full Liberty to come with certain small Wares. and especially Skins of Russia, to trade with the Mungals at Urga, they never fail under that Pretence to carry there the finest Skins of Siberia, which the Chinese come there to buy in so great Abundance, that the last Caravans which went from Siberia to Pekin, had much ado to fell their Merchandizes at a moderate Price. they found the Chinese so over-stock'd with Skins brought out of Siberia in that manner.

Commissaries of Siberia corrupt.

Mean time to do Justice to every one, it must be confess'd that the bad Conduct of most of the Commissaries of the Caravans of Siberia has contributed much to give the Chinese a Disgust to that sort of Commerce; for instead of having taken care to give these Commissions to Men of Understanding and good Conduct, they usually favour'd in times past none but Cheats, whose only Merit consisted in being made for the Intrigues of the Governors, and knowing how to rob the Treasure of the Crown, and give them a good Share of it; and as, for the rest, they were only complete Debauchees and Drunkards, 'tis easy to imagine what Order they were capable of preserving in the Caravan, which was fometimes compos'd of near a thoufand Persons: For the Russian Carriers and Grooms finding the Aqua Vite, of which 'tis well known they are great Lovers, at Freecost

Part!

raffick

bjech

done

over-

ir Ac.

tween

a ve-

ereby

have

ares.

h the

that

f Si-

in fo

hich

o to

rice,

with

, it

nost

eria

Dif-

of

to

ney

its,

nd he nd ler

in, und tis ft in

in China, by virtue of the Conventions which obliged the Chinese to defray the Caravans, God knows if they fail'd to take their fwing of it; and then when they were very drunk, they went and committed a thousand Disorders in the Streets of Pekin, beating and infulting indifferently all those whom they met in their way; which they might do with the greater Affurance, because it was severely forbidden the Inhabitants of the Town to abuse any Russian on any Account whatfoever: and instead of the Commissary doing good and speedy Justice as he ought to the Chinese, who came to make their Complaints to him on the like Occasions, he was very often himself the Author of those Diforders, and by his Example encourag'd the others in all forts of Brutalities. Among the relt, a certain Callmak, whom the Knees Gagarin fent with the Caravan in quality of Commiffary, in the Time that he was Governor of Siberia, surpassed all others in these fine Qualifications; and in regard he more than that undertook to abuse excessively the Chinese who owed Money to the Caravan; the Gbinese who were just at that time in War with the Callmaks, imagined that it was with a Design to infult them that they fent that Brute among them: And fince that time they have taken an intire Disgust against Caravans.

SECT.

Co

Bo

Dif

the

Wi

who

whi

D00

hap

any that

ulua

Tim that

with of tl

most

prete

more

conc

they

T

divid

which

Al

afores

Ruffic

marof

lians

that t

SECT. III.

The Inhabitants of SIBERIA.

Inhabitants of Siberia. HIS Country is at present possessed by three sorts of Inhabitants, viz.

- I. The Pagan People, who are the antien Inhabitants of the Country.
- 2. The Mobammedan Tatars, who are those from whom the Russians have conquer'd it
- 3. The Russians, who are at present Master of it.

§ 1. The PAGAN Inhabitants.

Victuals.

All the heathen People which inhabit Siberic lead exactly the Life which is described, p. 35. They cannot but think it the Height of Folly to seed and take care of Animals in order to eathe Flesh of them, since others are to be sound nourish'd and look'd after by Nature her selfor that Use. They seldom dress their Flesh and never their Fish; but they dry it in the Sun in Summer, and eat it in that manner without Salt or any other Seasoning: And when they have a mind to treat themselves handsomely, they dip their dry Fish in Fish Grease.

Drink. Habits. Their common Drink is Water, and when they have kill'd some Beast, they drink the Blood of it reeking hot with as much Pleasure as we would the best Wine.

Clothes.

Their short Habits are usually made of the Skins of Fishes, or young Foxes and Dogs; and in the Winter they cover themselves with long

Coats

Coats of the Skins of Rein Deer or Bears, which are a kind of riding Cloaks to guard the whole Body from the terrible Cold of these Climates.

They are so lazy, that they do not without Difficulty prevail upon themselves to make in the Summer their Provision of Fish for the Winter; and it is very rare to find any of them who think of the Year which is to come: All their Riches confift in Dogs and Rein Deer, which serve them instead of Horses. In this poor Condition they think themselves no less happy than the best furnish'd Nations, and when any one goes about to remonstrate to them that they live more like Beafts than Men; their usual answer is, That their Forefathers in all Times have lived after the same Fashion, and that they are resolved to do the same. That with regard to the present time, they see many Notions of of the Russians, who notwithstanding they al-in this most toil themselves to death with Working, and world. pretend to be of a Religion all Divine, yet are more unhappy than themselves; and as for what concerns Futurity, as that is very uncertain,

they leave it to the Disposal of the Creator.

The Pagan People who inhabit Siberia are divided into several Nations; the principal of

which are,

art I

d by

itien

thol

'd i

ifter

beri

· 35

ea ea

ound fel

lesh

th

vith vhe

om-

vher

the

fur

the

ong

oat

I. The WOGULITZI.

All the Country about the Tura from the aforesaid Mountains [which separate Siberia from Wogul-Russia] to the River Irtis, drawing towards Sa-itzi.

marosf, is inhabited by a Nation which the Russians call Wogulitzi: 'Tis commonly supposed that this Nation is a Branch of the Tatars; but

as

as the Wogulitzes are Pagans, and of the groffet fort, and that all the other Tatars who dwell on that fide, whether in Siberia or in the Kingdoms of Cafan and Aftrachan make profession of the Mohammedan Worship, they ought rather to be reckon'd among the Pagan People of Siberia, than those at present called Tatars, besides they bear a greater Resemblance to the first than the last; but they are more civiliz'd than the other

More civi- People of Siberia, because they dwell among the liz'd than Russians, with whom they drove a great Trade before the Reduction of Siberia, under the Pow-

er of Rusha.

As gross as the Paganism is in which the Wogulitzes are involved, they have nevertheless Notions of an One God, Creator and Preserver of all Things; they believe all a Refurrection of the Dead, and a Recompense of Good and Evil after this Life; but that is in effect all. Nevertheless it is pretty remarkable, that they won't hear speak of the Devil; and when one urges them upon that Head, they fay if there be one, it must not be that he can do them any harm, feeing they have no Instance of it among them.

All their Worship consists in this, that all the Heads of Families in each Village affemble once a Year at the end of Summer, and go facrifice in fome neighbouring Forest one of each Kind of their Cattle, the Skins of which they hang upon one of the fairest and straitest Trees of the Forest, and afterwards prostrate themselves several times before them, without making otherwife any Prayers: after which they eat the Flesh of those sacrific'd Beasts with great Tokens of Joy, and then return home: and doing this, they believe they have acquitted themselves towards God for all the rest of the Year. They cannot give any Reason or other Explanation of this

pretended

Ch.

preter

aying

fame,

to im

W

ly jud

they

dothe

the I

with

a Cor

the R

they o

a mii

they

remo

neare

tainn

W

tires

neigh

brou

for t

to h

Husl

very

proh the]

of N

lants

that

their

thos

but

use o

aH

Fire

V

art L

offeff

H on

the

o be

eria,

they

1 the

ther

the

rade

ow-

Wo-

No-

r of

n of

Evil

ver-

on't

rges

one,

m,

em.

the

nce

fice

up-

the

fe-

efh

of

rds

not

ded

pretended Sacrifice, contenting themselves with sying, that their Ancestors made use of the same, and that they thought themselves obliged minitate them therein.

With fo few sacred Ceremonies one will easi-No Priess. It judge they have no need of Priests, neither do they care to have any. They bury their Dead Burials. It dothed in their Habits; and if the Effects of the Dead will permit it, they put some Money with him in the Grave, which is no more than a Consequence of the salse Notions they have of the Resurrection. They take as many Wives as polygamy. They can maintain, and buy the Girls they have a mind to espouse of their Fathers, after which they go and lie with them without any other Ceremony, excepting that they usually invite the nearest Relations on both sides to a small Enter-timment which they give upon that Occasion.

When the Wife is near her Lying-in, she re-women in the into a Hut set up for that Purpose in some Childhed. The neighbouring Forest; and there after she has brought forth her Child, she is obliged to stay for two Months before she is suffered to return to her Husband; and during that time the Husband is to keep without seeing her. They very carefully observe not to marry within the prohibited Degrees, nor to marry again after the Death of any of their Wives before the Year

of Mourning be out.

They go habited much like the Russian Pea-Habit like lants, and their Women like the Women of the Russiants, and their Women like the Women of the Russiants. They dwell in Villages, and their Houses are built exactly of the Fashion of those which are seen in the Villages of Russia; but instead of Stoves which the Russians make the of, they have in the middle of the Chamber a Hearth, and a Hole a-top directly over the Odd Chim-Fire-place to let the Smoke out. In Winter they neys.

VOL, II,

R cover

Ch

oth

Co

Ar

of a

blan

neit

hav

exce

T

moye Mou

as fa

the i

lika .

Adhe

and

time

vince

guage

the J

Perm

the L

Siberi. liged

versin

Tiket

cover that Hole with a large Piece of very tranfparent Ice as foon as the Wood is burnt to Charcoal, which keeps the Heat in the Room at the same time that it serves them for a Window.

Sit Crossleg'd. They make no use of Chairs, but have a Bench quite round the Chamber of about an Ell high and two broad, on which they sit cross-leg'd after the *Tatar* Fashion; and this Bench serves them also for a Bed.

Eat neither Chickens nor Swine, As there are but few Parts of the Country they live in where Corn comes to Maturity, they live almost all upon their Cattle, and by hunting Elks and other Fallow Beasts; but they eat neither Chickens nor Swine.

For the rest, the Wogulitzes are all subject to Russia, and live very peaceably on what they get by their Labour: They pay their Contributions in Skins to the Treasury of Siberia.

2. The BARABINSKI.

The Barabinski are a fort of Callmaks, and Callmaks inhabit the Plains between the River Iris and Oby: These People are partly under the Dominion of Contaish, and partly under that of Russia.

Much Furs They live by Husbandry, their Cattle and in their Hunting; but as there are abundance of Furs Country. in the Countries, which those inhabit who are under the Russians, they pay the greatest Part of their Capitation in Skins.

3. The SAMOYEDS.

Samoyedi The Samoyeds who dwell between the Oby and Mantzela. the Lena, towards the icy Sea, are called Samoyedi Mantzela, to distinguish them from the other

1.

in-

to

om

in-

2 2

Ell

ofs-

ach

try

nteat

to

hey

tri-

and

and

mi

Rus-

and

Furs

are

Part

and Sa

1 the ther other Samoyeds who inhabit towards the northern Coasts of Russia, from the western Shores of the Guba Tassaukoya, to the Neighbourhood of Archangel and the River Dwina.

These People are the most stupid and poor Most stupid of all Siberia: Their Outside has a great Resem-and poor of blance of the Callmaks, excepting that they are Siberians. neither so well shaped, nor so lusty; that they have ugly Mouths, with hanging Lips, and are exceeding dull.

4. The OSTIAKS.

The Offiaks dwell to the South of the Sa-Offiacks. moyeds, about the 60 Deg. of Latit. from the Mountains which separate Russia from Siberia,

as far as the River Yenisea.

The People of this Nation are shaped much shaped ike the Russians; but they are generally below Russians. the middling Stature. 'Tis suppos'd they are descended from part of the Inhabitants of Welika Permia in Russia; who, moved by their Adherence to Idolatry, quitted their Country, and came and fettled in these Quarters at the time Christianity was introduced into that Province: At least we are affured that the Lan-Their Language of the Oftiacks has much Agreement with guage. the Jargon of the Inhabitants of the Province of Permia; and on the contrary no Affinity with the Language of the other Pagan People of Siberia, their Neighbours; so that they are ob-Pagans. liged to make use of an Interpreter in converfing with them.

R 2

5. TUN-

Ch.

ving

not moft rally

berio

T

diffe

the

the

both

wer

a In

to C

felv

four

tries

lie t

in

Infe

ver

to t

dov

out

Sho

orn

low the wh

but

ftro

nec

Sk

ing

W

in

5. The TUNGUSI.

The Callmaks and Mungals of the West breed no Cattle but what eat Grafs, and above all Things they abhor Hogs; whence it is that they have given, in Contempt, the Name of Tongus, or Hogs, to certain People of Siberia, which dwell near their Frontiers, and whom we know at prefent by that Name; and as the Mungals of the East are not so scrupulous in that Point, feeing they breed Hogs in abundance, they give them likewise in derision the

Mungals Name of Tongus; and hence it is that some take confounded occasion to confound the Mungals of the Fast withthem, with those other Tongus or Tunguses, which we

have spoken of.

These People possess at present a great Part of the eastern Siberia, and are divided by the Russians into four principal Branches; which 4. Branch- are, 1. The Podkamena Tungusi, who inhabit es of them. between the River Yenisea and that of Lena, to the North of the River Angara. 2. The Sabatski Tungusi, who dwell between the Lena and the bottom of the Gulf of Kamtzchatka, about the 60th Deg. of Latit. to the North of the River Aldan. 3. The Olenni Tungusi, who live towards the Springs of the Lena and the Aldan, to the North of the River Amur; and, 4. The Conni Tungusi, who inhabit between the

Lake Baikal, and the Town of Nerzinskoy, and along the River Amur.

'Tis easy to perceive that these People are of the same Race with the rest of the Tatars, because they have almost the same Inclinations as well as Afpect; nevertheless they are not quite so swarthy and ill-favour'd as the Callmaks, having

Form.

ying the Eyes much more open, and the Nose not fo flat as these last: They are for the most part of Stature tall and robust, and generally more active than the other People of Si-

The Podkamena Tungusi, and the Sabatski Podkamediffer but little in their manner of Living from Sabatski the Oftiaks and Samoyeds, their Neighbours, to Tunguli. the West and North, except that in Summer both Men and Women go as naked as ever they were born, wearing nothing commonly but a small Hair Girdle of about a Span's breadth to cover their Nakedness. And to defend them- Flies profelves from the Flies, which in Summer are digious nufound in prodigious Numbers all over the Coun- merous in these N. E. tries of the North, and chiefly in those which Countries. he most Eastward, they always carry upon the Arm a Pot with a Bit of rotten Wood kindled in it, the Smoke of which drives away those Infects. Their Hair is black and generally very long, which they tie together pretty close to the Head, and let them hang in that Fashion down the Back. In Winter they wear Clothes Winter of the Skins of Stags or Rein Deer, the Hair Clothes. outward, and close Breeches, Stockings and Shoes of the fame Skins, and all of a piece. To ornament their Habits, they border them below with Dogs Skins, and instead of a Bonnet, they cover the Head with some piece of Skin which they fit according to their Fancy.

They make use of neither Hemp nor Flax, but they make their Cords and other fort of frong twisted Thread, which they may have need of in their little Houshold Affairs, of the Skins of Fish. They live in Summer by Fishing, and in Winter by Hunting, not knowing what it is to breed other Cattle beside Rein Deer Breed no and Dogs, which serve them instead of Horses; Rein Deer

breed ve all that

art I

ne of beria, n we

s the is in

bunthe

take Faft 1 We

Part the

nich abit

to Saena

aof

ho the nd,

the nd

of eas

ite 2-

ng

Ch.

a th

the]

to fi

mit

1

all t

thei

the

ver

fhic

the

the

yet.

Bre

lies

of

har

2 3

T

210

an

ne

in

ve

bi

H

fa

V

T

h

and forasmuch as the Sabatski Tungusi make use only of Dogs in their Sleds, and that the Flesh of those Beasts makes all their Dainties, the Russians have given them that Name which

fignifies the Tunguses of the Dogs.

Believe in one God, but worship their Idols.

They acknowledge one God Creator of all Things, but that is all; for they neither honour him or ever pray to him, and in all Emergencies of Life they address themselves to Idols resembling human Creatures, which every one makes for himself the best he can out of a Piece of Wood; and they honour or abuse these Idols according as they think they have reason to praise or complain of them. They have no other Priests than some Shammans, whom they consult rather as Sorcerers than Priests. They expose their Dead on Trees till they are quite rotten, after which they bury them with the Face to the East. They make all forts of black Marks on the Face and Hands, which ferves for an Ornament to the Women, and to the Men for a Name to make themselves known to those with whom they may have contracted.

Burials,

Mark their Faces with black Spots.

Olemni Tungusi. The Olenni Tungusi live also by Hunting and Fishing; but at the same time they feed on Beasts, and go clothed the same way in Summer as in Winter with the Skins of Sheep or young Deer. They wear their Hair like the other Tunguses we have spoken of, and make use of Bonnets of Fox Skins, which they catch in cold Weather.

Strange way of Swearing. They have a fingular way of taking an Oath: for he who is to do it takes a Dog, and having laid him on the Ground, he runs a Knife into his Belly under the Left Fore-leg, and at that Orifice fucks out all the Blood to the last Drop. 'Tis the greatest Confirmation they can give to

et l

e use

the

vhich

of all

nour

ncies

fem-

akes

e of

dols n to

0 0they

hey

uite

the lack

rves

the

n to

and on

ım-

10 C

0-

use

in

th:

ing

nto

hat

op.

to 2

a thing, feeing they are firmly perfuaded that the Blood of the Dog will not fail that Instant to suffocate him, who has the Rashness to com-

mit a Perjury of that Nature.

The Conni Tungusi are the least barbarous of Conni all these People; they feed like all the rest on Tungusi. their Cattle, and clothe themselves much like the Mungals, whom they refemble much in e-They cut their Hair after the Favery thing. thion of the Callmaks and the Mungals, and use the same fort of Arms which they do, except the Sabre, which they have not had the Use of

They don't cultivate the Land; but instead of Use no Bread they make use of the Roots of yellow Lillies, which grow in great plenty in those Parts, of which they make a fort of Meal after they have dryed them; and of this Meal they make a Spoon-meat which they reckon very delicious. They also eat very often these Roots when they

are dried, without making Meal of them.

They are good Horsemen, and their Wives Women and Daughters ride as well as themselves, and ride and never go out without being well arm'd; hav-use Arms. ing also the Reputation of managing their Arms

very dextroufly.

All the Tunguses in general are exceeding Tunguses brave and robust; they all dwell in moving brave. Huts or Houses. Their Religion is nearly the fame with them all, and they all take as many Wives as they can maintain.

There are but a small Number of the Conni Tongusi subject to China, all the rest of those People are under the Obedience of Russia, which has from them the finest Skins which come from

Siberia.

Ch.

Eaf are

of a

with

kill

any

the

fran

Co this Par

paf paff

55 Col

mu

of

De

tha

fou Shi

VOI ver

Mo

the

ate

mo tua No

tha

in

in

6. The BURATTI.

The Buratti inhabit to the South of the A fort of River Angara, between the Yenisea and the Se-Mungals. linga, and are a fort of Mungals.

> These People feed on their Cattle, and are tall and strong; but not by a great deal so swar.

thy as the other Mungals.

7. The YAKUTI.

The Yakuti inhabit all along the Lena: These People are made much like the Tunguses, and are the only Inhabitants throughout Siberia who Most inge- make use of Rein Deer to ride on. 'Tis said nious of they have more Wit, and confequently more the Pagan Malice also than the other Pagan People of that Inhabi-Continent. tants.

8. The YUKAGRI.

The Yukagri inhabit towards the Coast of the icy Sea, to the East of the Mouth of the Lena: They don't differ much from the Samoy-Like the Samoyeds, eds; nevertheless they are not altogether so stupid and ill favour'd as those.

9. The TZUKTZCHI;

10. TZCHALATZKI; and II. OLUTORSKI.

Just in the N. E. Point of Asia, and about Cape Suetoinos dwell two confederate Nations called the Tzuktzchi, and the Tzchalatzki; and Southward of them towards the Shores of the Eastern

Eastern Sea, another called the Olutorski, who Olutorski are the most fierce of all the People of the North fiercest of of Asia. They will not by any means trade People of with the Russians, of whom they inhumanly the North. kill as many as fall into their Hands, and when any of them fall into the Hands of the Russians they kill themselves; for which reason the Rushans were obliged heretofore to travel along the Coast of the Gulf of Kamtzchatka to enter into this Country, in order to avoid encountring Parties of these People; but for some Years past they have begun to go there by Water, paffing over from the River Ochota, about the 55 Deg of Latit. to the nearest Point of the River Country of Kamtzchatka, which faves them Ochota. much Travel and Fatigue. The late Emperor of Rusha sent five or fix Years before his Death, an Officer of the Marine to the fide of that River, to examine if there could not be found Wood thereabouts fit for building large Ships, and he made at his Return a pretty favourable Report; but several Incidents intervening from time to time hinder'd that great Monarch from carrying this Design any farther.

12. KAMTZCHATKA, and the KAMTZCHADALS.

The Country of Kamtzchatka, which is fitu-Kamtzate between the 150 and 170 Deg. of Longit. chatka
is a great Tongue of Land which stretches almost North and South from Cape Suetoinos, situate in 62 Deg. of Latit. as far as about the
North of Japon, and the 41 Deg. of Latit. so
that it is above three hundred German Leagues Extens.
in length, but its breadth is very unequal; for
in some Places it is above a hundred Leagues
broad.

f the

war-

hefe and who faid

ore hat

of he

yu-

S

Ch

tru

yet

the

the

Cr

the

ber

to

the

ke

Ra

tin

ba Bu

an

WE

CO

Co

an

th

K

fix

C

M

an

Ve

broad, and in others it is not more than thirty or

forty.

Bounds.

The Country of Kamtzchatka is separated from the rest of Siberia by a great Arm of the Eastern Ocean, which stretches directly from South to North, from the northern Shore of Corea as far as the 60th Deg. of Latit. leaving between it and the icy Sea a Space of Land not above sive Deg. over, by means whereof the Country of Kamtzchatka becomes contiguous with Siberia.

Different Inhabitants. It is inhabited by divers People, whereof those who possess the South part of the Country are very different from the other People of this Continent, both in their manner of living and Dress; and forasmuch as in other Respects they resemble the Japonese, 'tis believ'd that they are Colonies from Japon, which is separated from the southern Point of this Country only by a Strait of sisteen or twenty Leagues, full of small Islands.

Tributary
to the
Russians.

The Kamtzchadals who possess the largest Share of this Country towards the middle of it, pay Contribution to the Russians in Skins, and especially in Skins of Castors of an extraordinary bigness. Since the beginning of this Age [1700] the Russians have established Colonies there which have already begun to build several Burrows and Villages, and highly commend the Goodness of the Soil in this Country. A Chain of very high Mountains which begin at the Icy Sea, run thro' this Country in a streight Line from North to South; and 'tis reported that there are very rich Mines, and excellent Mineral Waters in the South part of this Country.

The Inhabitants of the great Island which lies to the East of Cape Suetoinos pay Contribution to the Russians in Skins; but those of another great Island which is to the East of this Coun-

art 1

ty or

from

ftern

th to

is far

en it

five

v of

ereof

ntry

this

and

ects

that

epa-

ntry

ues,

gest

it.

and

rdi-

ge

nes

the ain

Cy

m

re la-

es

er n-

Y

ra.

try about the 50th Deg. of Latit. and whose true Extent eastward is yet unknown, pay none yet.

This Nation is much more civilized and better shaped than their Northern Neighbours; they also diet and go clothed better; they point their Javelins and Arrows with a very sharp Crystal instead of Steel, which render the Wounds they make very difficult to cure.

There is a great deal of Probability that the Us-man-Tribe of the Ur-mankatts is mixt among the o-katts ther Pagan People, which at present inhabit Siberia, to which they are Neighbours, according to the Marks which the Author has given us of them, p. 38. and of whom they have fince then taken up the manner of Living; for excepting the Rushans who have fettled in Siberia fince the time that this Nation seized it, and some Mohammedan Tatars who are dispersed among the Burrows and Villages on the fide of Tobolskoy, and who are of the Posterity of those who were in possession of Siberia when the Russians conquer'd it, all the other People of that vast Continent live in Forests and upon the Banks of Rivers, where they live in Summer by Fishing. and in Winter by Hunting.

SIBERIANS in General.

Of these [12] Nations, there are none but Live by the Wogulitzes, the Barabinski, the Buratti, the Huming Kamtzehadales, and the Olutorski, who have and Fishfixt Habitations; all the other People of this Country live in Huts. They dwell during the Winter in Forests, seeking Food by Hunting; and in Summer they search the sides of the Rivers in order to subsist by Fishing.

The

ver the

Snow in

Sleds.

Ch.

whe

con

Hea

fice

whi

not

mif

are

Tz

the

the

dw

An

Ri

ne

N

fef

fo

M th

of

V

In

CI

P

The Skins of Fish are their Clothing in Summer, and the Skins of Elks and Rein Deer serve them for the same Use in Winter. All their Riches confift in a Bow and Arrows, a Knife, a Hatchet, with a Kettle at the most: and the Scrapings of a certain Wood ferves them for a Feather-bed to lie down on. Rein Deers and Dogs serve them instead of Horses. and are more useful to them in Winter than Travel o- Horses could be, because they can travel on the Snow, which is some times a Pike's depth. without finking in it as a Horse would; and in this manner four Dogs draw a Sled, very well, loaded with three hundred Pound Weight, for fix or eight German Leagues. These Sleds are exceeding light, being four or five Ells long, and as much broad, which they must be that a Man may lie down in them. I aid that so

> They are chiefly the Samoyeds and the Yukagri who make use of Rein Deer in their Carriages, for the rest of these People commonly employ

only Dogs.

Dog Pofts.

And Sta-

ges well

regulated.

All over the North of Siberia there is no other Conveniency for going from one Place to another in Winter but the Dog Posts, which have their Yams or Stages as well regulated, at proper Distances, as the best order'd Posts among us can have: and according as the Traveller is in hafte, they increase the Number of

Dogs for drawing his Sled. [11] shall 10

Places apeach Government to receive bution Skins.

'Tis the same way that the Commissioners of pointed in the Treasury of Siberia, go in Winter to the Places appointed for that purpose in each Government, to receive the Contributions of those the Contri-People in Skins, according to the Quality of the Cantons they inhabit. For that purpose they have built in these Places Wooden Houses,

where

art I

ig in

Deer

All

Vs, a

oft:

erves

Rein

ries,

than

On

pth,

and

rell,

for

are

ng, hat

(FIL

gri es,

oy:

17 0-

to

ch at:

a--

of

of

e

-

e

7.

Sorie Por-

where the Commissioners repair in Winter, accompany'd with some Cosaks, and then all the Heads of Families within the Verge of each Office flock thither with the Quantity of Skins, at which every Family is taxed, that they might not be liable to the Extortions of these Commissioners in case of any Delay.

Of all these People, and divers others which People are spread over Siberia, there are none but the who pay Izchalatski, the Tzuchtzchi, the Olutorski, and bution to the Kurilski, who possess the Southern Point of Russia. the Country of Kamtzchatka, and the Kilaki, who dwell to the North of the Mouth of the River Amur, who pay no Contributions hitherto to Russia; all the other People of this vast Contisur frists nent pay without exception, according to the Nature of the different Cantons which they pof-

Their Religion consists for the most part in Religion. some Honour which they pay the Sun and Moon, and in the Worship of their Idols. All these different People have commonly two forts of Idols, viz. the Publick which are held in Idols Pub-Veneration by a whole People, and the Private lick and which each Master of a Family makes himself Domestick. in order to pay his Devotion to. Both forts are commonly no more than round Logs of Wood made round at one end to represent the Head, with a Nose, a Mouth and Eyes very odly shaped; nevertheless some of these People have publick Idols pretty well made, which must come to them from China.

The Houshold Idols are sometimes liable to Domestick be very ill treated by these People, when they Idols. have reason to believe they don't take care enough of their little Fortune; for on those Occasions they put all the Affronts on them imaginable, so far as to drag them thro' the Dirt

with

Cb

infe

Par esp

the

afte

felv

no

Pai

are

fio:

it;

to

the

Co

and

WI

gre

the

cife

Sib

Ru

En

by

me

T

and

fio

are

pe

so the Por-with a Cord about the Neck, and throw them tuguese into the Fire or the River: But when these poor treat their St. Antho-Creatures think they have reason to be satisfy'd ny on the with the Protection of their Idols, there are like Occar no Honours which they do not heap upon them safter their Manner, by covering them with black Fox Skins and Zibelins, and placing them in the most honourable part of their Cabins:

They then grease their Mouths with Fish Fat, and present them with the warm Blood of some Beast newly kill'd, as it were to serve them for

Report of these People dealing with the Devil false.

Drink.

What has been spread in the World, about the Commerce which some of these People have with the Devil is a mere Fiction, which owes its Foundation to the great Stupidity of these poor People, and more yet to the Ignorance of the greatest Part of those who resort to them. Nevertheless it is certain there are many among them who take the Name of Conjurers; but they are only Cheats who abuse the Simplicity of those People in order to squeeze some Presents out of them.

Live in a State of Nature.

For the rest, all these People live wholly in a State of Nature, without other Laws than those which the Fathers prescribe to their Families. They marry as many Women as they can maintain, and take no thought for the morrow; they take great care to pay the Debts which they contract, and never do harm to any body unless he begins by doing it to them. They are very mindful of rendring the last Honours to their Dead, according to their several Customs, and observe a great Resignation on the several Accidents of Life.

Punctual in paying their Debts.

Tormented As the Nourishment which they are accustowith scor-med to take is very unwholsome, and for the butick Hu-most part crude, they are grievously tormented mours. rt]

nem

1000

fy'd

are

iem vith

em

ns: at,

me for

out

ple

ich

of

10-

ort

ire

n-

he

ze

12

ne

es.

n-

ey

n-

he

TY

11

nd

c.

with fcorbutick Distempers, which eat the Parts infected like a kind of Gangrene, and infect one Part after another till it kills them. The Samoyeds especially, and the Ostiaks are very subject to these Maladies; but the most of them search after no Remedy, and very patiently fee them-for were felves rotting alive, because they say they have of Remeno Knowledge in Phylick.

§ II. The MOHAMMEDAN Tatars.

The Mohammedan Tatars make the second Whence de-Part of the present Inhabitants of Siberia. They scended. are of the Posterity of those who were in possesson of this Country when the Russians conquer'd it; the greater Part of whom thought it better to fubmit to those new Masters, than to follow the desperate Fortune of their Chan.

These Tatars dwell for the most part in the Country about Tobolskoy, and towards Tumeen, and live by Husbandry and the Trade they have with the Buchars and Callmaks. They possess a Enjoy great Number of Burrows and Villages along Liberty of the Irtis and the Tobol, and have the free Exer-Conscience. cife of the Mohammedan Religion throughout Siberia. In short they enjoy the Protection of

Empire. The Mohammedan Tatars of Siberia are not Women by much so ill-favour'd as the other Moham-very pretmedan Tatars, and have very pretty Women. 29. Their Habit differs very little from the Russian, and they testify on all Occasions much Submistion to the present Government of Siberia.

Russia as much as the natural Subjects of that

They have some Mursa's among them who Govern'd are as their Chiefs: The most powerful of these by Murpetty Princes is called Shahanoff, and has his fa's.

Abode

Abode in a Burrow of about feven hundred Hou-

Ch

100

hav

the

Ibo

nO 1

T

try

con

of t

nor

Pof

ufua

lity

that

they

veri 1

25

skoy

buil

Ruj

tho

has

gair

of]

beg

the V

too

fes, four Wersts from Tobolskoy. He has above twenty thousand Tatar Families under his Obedience, and 'tis suppos'd there are in all about an hundred thousand Families of Mohammedan Tatars fettled in Siberia.

100000 Families of 'em in Siberia.

& III. The RUSSIANS.

2000 Burrows and 30 Towns built by

The Russians who make the third Part of the Inhabitants of Siberia, have fettled there fince the Country has become subject to Russia; and the Number of them has increased so much in fo short time, that they have built above thirty Towns fince their Arrival in this Country, bethe Russi- fides above two thousand large Burrows and Villages which they at present possess in different Cantons of this vast Continent. The Number would have been still greater, if the same inhuman Waywodes, whose ill Usage obliges them to quit their Country, did not also follow them into Siberia, where they think they have acquir'd a Right of oppressing the People at Discretion, because they are from under the Eye of the Government, and in a conquer'd Country.

Oppression. of the Waywodes.

I must not forget to observe here, that there Nation of should be in Siberia a certain People called by ple fictions the Russians Pestraya Orda, that is to say the

Pied Tribe, because they affirm that these People have naturally great black Spots all over the Body, and in the Face, like fuch as our Horses or other pied Beasts may have: But as among fo many Persons who have been upon the Place, of whom I have enquir'd News, I have not met with one who could fay he had feen fuch a Man, and that the late Monarch of Russia was

t I.

OU-

ove

be-

out

dan

the

nce

in

rty

be-

fe-

m-

me

zes

ve

at

ye

ın-

ere

by he

he

les.

ng ce,

ot

1 2

as

00

have had one of those People at his Court, in case there had really been such a Nation in Siberia: I believe that all which is told on that Subject is no more than Fiction.

SECT. IV.

The Division, Government, Buildings, Towns.

Steria is at present divided into as many Go-Division. Vernments as there are Towns in the Country; each of which hath its Waywode, who commands in chief throughout the Jurisdiction of that Town, under the Orders of the Governor General who resides at Tobolskoy. This last Tobol-Post is one of the most honourable, and prosita-skoy ble at the same time, in Russia, and the Court Governor. Usually nominates to it Persons of the first Quality; but since the last Governor-General of that Country desired to be recalled in 1722, they have thought sit to send only a Vice-Governor thisther.

The Spiritual Government in Siberia is in the And of Hands of a Metropolitan of the Greek Church, the Greek as established in Russia, who resides at Tobol-litan.

All the Towns and Villages of Siberia are Buildings built of Wood, after the common Manner of Wood.

Rusia; and the Fortifications which most of those Towns have are likewise of Wood, which has been a Defence good enough hitherto against the People who have had no Knowledge of Fire-Arms: But since Powder and Cannon begin to be known to the Callmaks, and that the Chinese no longer take the Field without a VOL. II.

C

Ri

wh

10

dr

Sil

bo

Ba

F

th

by

tv

Si

th

of

al

good Train of Artillery, they will be obliged to fortify the Frontier Towns after the European Manner.

Nerzinskoy.

Nerzinskoy is the only Townwhich the Rulsians have at present about the River Amur. It is situate upon the River Nerza, five hundred Toises [or Fathom] from its Fall into the Amur, about 52 Degrees 10 Minutes of Latitude and 128 Deg. of Longitude. 'Tis large and well peopled, with a ftrong Garison, and Cannon sufficient for its Defence in case of an Attack, which is not to be fear'd, confidering the great Number of Rivers, and the great Extent of uncultivated Country, which the Mungals and Chinese have to pass, before they can come The Parts about this Town are very mountainous, but for all that are very fertile.

These Mountains, which extend from the Lake Baikal along both fides of the River Amur, abound much on its Northern Bank in Mines of Brass, and also of Silver; but hitherto there has been no Conveniency for working therein.

The City of Argunskoy is situate upon the Northern Bank of the River [Argun] in 50 Deg. of Latit. 'Tis the farthest Town which the Rusfians possess at present towards the Frontiers of the Mungals of the East, and for that reason they always keep there a good Garison, with whatever else is necessary in a Frontier Town. 'Tis moreover well peopled, and the neighbouring Country very fertile: A great Trade is carry'd on there with the Mungals of the Frontiers, which does not fail to bring a great Refort of People from Siberia.

At some distance from Argunskoy, a small River, to which the Russians have given the Name of Serebrenka, falls from the North East into the River Argun; and it is about this little

River

Argunskoy.

Part I. Ch. 2
iged to River
which

Ruf-Amur, undred to the of La-

s large

1, and

of an

dering

at Ex
ingals

very le. Lake r, aes of

the Deg.

Rufes of alon with

wn. ghade on-Re-

all the

aft tle er

1

River that the Russians have found Silver Mines, silver which they have begun to work within these ten Mines. or twelve Years; hitherto they have indeed drawn much Iron out of it, but very little Silver.

The City of Selinginskoy, which is situate a-selinbout the 52 Deg. of Latit. upon the Easternginskoy. Bank of the River Selinga, is the most advanced Fortress which the Russians at present possess on the Frontiers of China. 'Tis by that Place, that by virtue of the last Treaty of Commerce between the Russians and Chinese, the Carawans of Siberia at present enter into the Lands under the Dominion of the Emperor of China, instead of passing, as they did heretofore, by Nerzinskoy

and Argun.

The Russians had built formerly a Town of Albatinabout five hundred Houses, called Albassinskoy, skoy upon the fouthern Bank of the Amur, at the Place where the River Albaffien falls into it from the W.S.W. But the Mungals, jealous to fee the Ruf-Taken by fians seizing by little and little the sides of that the Mun-River, came in the Year 1715 and besieged that gals and Chinese Place with the Affistance of the Chinese: and in 1717. inasmuch as Russia was too far ingaged at that time in a War with Sweden, to mind much what was doing in a Country fo remote, it fell at last into their Hands after a Siege of two Years, and was entirely demolish'd by the Commands demolish'd. of the late Emperor of China. After that it was agreed on by both Parties, that neither the Russians nor the Mungals should for the time to come build Towns on the Southern Bank of the River Amur between the River Argun and that of Albassien; but that Part should remain in the Condition it is at present, as a common Bound between the two Empires.

The

Ch

ver Sur on the

bef

Bre

Wi

tan

No

18

La

M

Po Co

an

ing

the

A

th

an

Gi

va

pe

TIV

tic

th

hi

The Land hereabouts is exceeding fertile. See the River Amur.

SECT. V.

Of the Lakes and Mountains of Siberia.

LAKES.

Baikal Lake of fresh Wa- fre

THE Lake Baikal [perhaps Bai-kol] may be about thirty German Leagues in length from East to West, and fifteen Leagues in its greatest breadth. Its Waters are fresh and white, and greatly abound in all forts of Fish

Sea-Dogs.

of an extraordinary Relish and Size. It also breeds Sea-Dogs, which is rare enough in fresh Water Lakes; nevertheless they are found also in the Lake of Ladoga, and that of Onega, which are to the North of St. Petersburg.

Angara
the only
River issuing out of
it.

'Tis observable, that notwithstanding the great Number of Rivers which fall on all sides into this Lake, the River Angara is the only one that issues out of it, which runs to the North West, and empties it self into the Yemsea towards Yeniseiskoy: and in regard one perceives no other Channel by which that Lake can discharge its Waters, 'tis commonly believ'd in this Country that the great River Lena, which has its Spring in the Mountains two days Journey to the North of that Lake, issues out of it by some subterraneous Communication.

Sailing Islands. There are divers failing Islands in this Lake, which are driven sometimes to one side, and sometimes to another, according as the Wind changes its Point.

art I.

. See

may

igth

n its

and

Fish also

resh also

ega,

the

nly

the

isea

ves dif-

in

ney

by

ke,

ind

ind

115

This Lake is above fifty Fathom deep all o-Depth ver, and it is very difficult to cross it, as well in Summer as Winter, the least Wind raising upon it frightful Tempests, which supported by the great Depth of the Water are a long time before they come to a Calm: They make also in Winter Crevices in the Ice of some Pikes Breadth, which are very dangerous to Travellers. The Place where this Lake is passed in Winter by means of Sleds, is not above six good Leagues over.

The Ofera Teleskoy [called by the Callmaks Al-Ofera Telan Nor] is fituate towards the 52 Deg. of Latit. leskoy. North of the Lake Sayssan, and may be about 18 Leagues long and 12 broad: It is in this Lake that the great River Oby has its Source.

MOUNTAINS.

Nature has separated Russia from Siberia by Mountains a long Chain of very high Mountains. Those between Mountains begin at the Shore of the icy Sea, op-Russia and posite to the Strait of Nassaw, and the new Country which the Russians call Nova Semla, and run directly from North to South, till having joined the River Wolga on the other fide of the Town of Samara, they take the Name of Arall-tag, or the Mountain of the Eagles; from Called thence they turn off to the East South East, Arall-tag. and running continually between Siberia and Grand Tatary they fink infenfibly whilft they advance Eastward, insomuch that at last they appear but like common Hills, by the time they arrive in the North of Turkestan. In this Condition they continue running along the Borders of this Country, till coming to about the 50° of Latit. and 93 of Longit. they rife again to be high Mountains, and to the North of the Caf-

5

pia

Ch

firf

wh

tof

in . Oa

not

W

Wi

ing

tun

pe

Ca

fr

th

th

at

al

G

C

tl

to

S

fe

b

(

Divides into two Branches Uluk-tag. pian Sea divide themselves into two Branches: of which the first, called by the Tatars Uluk-tag, that is to fay the great Mountain, runs directly East till it meets the River Irtis to the North of the Lake Sayssan; and the second called Kitzik-

Kitzik-tag, tag, or the Little Mountain, takes its Course fouthward towards the Bucharias. 'Tis of these two Branches that mention is made Page

10.

Marshes in the midf of thefe Mountains.

Way in Summer.

I shall observe here, that one cannot go from Russia into Siberia without crossing this Chain of Mountains, which they effect by means of Sleds: for in the Summer 'tis absolutely impossible to pass them, because of the great Marshes which possess the middle Part of these Mountains throughout, and the only way in Summer of passing into Siberia is to fail up the Rivers Kama and Susawaya, which falls into the Kama from the South East, till you come to a Place called Utka, from whence you travel by Land to the River Nevia, on which you may pass down the Stream as far as Tobolskoy; but it is more than an hundred Leagues about, and besides that extremely fatiguing, by reason of the Rapidity of the Rivers Kama and Susawaya, which one must mount against the Stream.

Excellent Iron.

The best Iron in all Russia, and possibly in the whole World, which is known in that Country by the Name of Iron of Siberia, comes from these Mountains: 'Tis smelted and wrought with as much ease as Copper, and I have seen Cannons of this fort of Iron, which were not inferior to Brass Cannons, either for Beauty or Goodness.

Cannon of that Iron as good as Brafs.

There is also nigh the ordinary Road, which Gerwinska is taken in the Winter to pass those Mountains in the way from Solikamskoy, which is the last Kamen. Town of Russia, to Werkaturia, which is the t I

les:

tag, Etly

1 of

zik-1rle

iese age

om n of

ds; to ich ins

of

om led the

the

nan

hat

ity

one

in

111-

ith

ın-

fe-

or

ch

ins

aft

he

rft

first Town of Siberia, a very high Mountain which the Russians call Geswinka Kamen; the top whereof consists of a Plain of four Wersts in Diameter, where there is found much Silver silver Oar, and very rich; but to this Day they have Mine. not been able to work there because of the North Wind which blows almost throughout the Year, with so great Violence, that there is no defending the Miners; neither is it good to stay any time upon the top of this Mountain, which properly is no other than the beginning of Mount Caucasus.

SECT. VI.

Of the Rivers of Siberia.

THE River Tura has its Rise in that Part of River Mount Caucasus which separates Siberia from Russia in 59° 30' Latit. to the North of the Kingdom of Casan, and running thence to the E. S. E. joins the River Tobol in 57° 40' Lat. at some distance from the Town of Tumeen.

This River is very full of Fish, and its Banks Fishy. are very pleasant, and abound with all sorts of Game. The finest grey Squirrels of all Siberia Finest grey come from the Country about this River; but thereathe Inhabitants are not permitted to sell them bouts. to any but the Commissaries of the Treasury of Siberia. [The Wogulitzi dwell about this River.]

[The Country of Tura, mention'd p. 151. feems to take its Name from this River, as has been observ'd, p. 454.]

The River Oby which has its Rife from the River Oferoy Teleskoy, or Altan Nor, bears at first the

S 4

Name

Ch.

the

felv

this

gat.

eve

ters

mel

COV

fide

Wi

Rea

fian

W

Ice

lea

Riv

lea,

hav

ring

anc

are

fwe all

hay

like

Abi

Spr

the

Co

of]

afte

tila

ties

ver

and

Name of By, and does not take that of Oby till after it has receiv'd the Waters of the River Chatun, which falls into it from the S.E. about twenty Leagues from the Ofero Teleskoy. The Course of the River Oby is nearly N.W. till such time as the River Irtis falls into it, coming from the S.S. W. in 60 Deg. 40 Min. of Latit. after which it turns directly North, and runs and empties it self about the 65th Deg. of Latit, into the Guba Tassaukoya, by which its Waters are carry'd into the icy Sea, over against Nova Semla, about the 70th Deg. of Latit. after a Course of about 500 Leagues.

Full of Fish.

This great River abounds exceedingly in all kinds of Fish: Its Waters are pure and light, and its Sides are very high, and every where cover'd wirh great Forests; but they are not cultivated, except in very few Places towards Tomskoy and Kujnetzskoy. There are found upon the Banks of the Oby very fair Stones of a fine

Sort of A. Grain; and among others transparent Stones red gats found and white, every way refembling Agats, which

in it. the Russians have in great Esteem,

No Towns on it but those built by ans.

There are no other Towns along the fides of this River, but those the Russians have built since they possessed themselves of Siberia. The great the Ruffi- Number of Rivers which come from both fides, to mix their Waters with those of this River, inlarge it to that degree, that at the Town of Narym, above 150 Leagues from its Difemboga-

tion, it is half a League broad.

The Guba Tassaukoya, thro' which the River Guba Taffaukoy. Oby discharges itself into the Icy Sea, is a great Gulf of that Sea, of which to this Day we have had little or no Knowledge. It extends from the 65th Degree, as far as the Straits of Nassaw, and is not less than seventy German Leagues in its greatest Breadth. Considering that besides the

art I.

by till

River

bout

The

fuch

from

after

and

t, in-

aters

Vova

er a

all

ght,

CO-

cul-

m-

the

ine

ed

of

ce

at

S,

r,

of

1-

the Oby, the Rivers Nadim, Pur and Tass, and a great Number of lesser Streams empty themfelves in it, 'tis no wonder that the Waters of this Gulf should be fresh till very near the Waygat. Its Bottom is all over Clay, and pretty even: and inasmuch as the Cold in those Quarters is too excessive for all the Ice of the Guba to melt intirely in the Summer, it is continually over'd with Pieces of Ice, which float from one fide to the other upon this Gulf, according as the Winds and Current drive them: which is the Reason that the Strouses, or Boats of the Rus- No sailing hans, dare not venture far into the Guba. for Stron-When the Spring happens to be fo mild that the Boats on Ice which comes down the River Oby and Yeni- she Guba. lea melts before it gets to the Mouths of those Rivers, then the Waters of the Oby, the Yenifea, the Irtis, and all the other Rivers which have a Communication with them, are low during all the Year: but if the Spring proves cold and moist, so that the Mouths of those Rivers are block'd up by the Ice, then they commonly swell in such a manner that they overflow on all fides, and cause all the other Rivers which have Communication with them to do the like.

The River which the Russians call Yenisea [and Yenisea Abulgazi Chan, Ikar, or Ikran Muran] has its River, or Springs directly to the South of the Springs of Ikran Muthe Selinga, about the 45th Deg. of Latit. Its Course is at first N. W. but about the 47th Deg. of Latit. it turns of a sudden to the North, and afterwards keeps constantly the same Course, until after having run above 500 Leagues, it empties it self in the icy Sea at 71 Deg. of Latit.

The River Yenisea is one of the greatest Rivers in the World; its Waters are very pure and good, but it does not abound much with

Fish.

Ch.

unive

the fi

firmi

which

he co

give

it, W

venti

VOUC

be de

Mou

they

Skul

een

with

each

knov

fome

thefe

ferv'

with

gula

With

fuch

of a

be 1

Cou

then

to fi

1

Riv

little

Def I

linge

Des

of v

From its Springs as far as the 52d Deg. its Banks are inhabited by the Mungals and Callmaks, but from thence to its Mouth it passes only thro' Countries subject to the Russians. The Town of Abakan towards the 53d Deg. 30 Min, of Latit. is the farthest Settlement which the Russians have on this River to the South; and the Town of Turukan at 65 Deg. of Latit. the This great River farthest Settlement North. receives in its Passage thro' so great a length of Country the Waters of fo many Rivers which fall into it on both fides, that about 200 Leagues from its Mouth at the Town of Yenifeiskoy in 59° 10' of Latit. *it is a good half League in breadth. and towards its Mouth above five Leagues.

Yenifeiskoy.

> In the Spring when the Snow begins to melt, this River, as well as those of the Oby and Lena, fometimes fwell to fuch a degree that they carry along with them confiderable Pieces of Mountains which they meet in their way; and it is in these Places that they find very often beyond the 60th Deg. of Latit. deep in the frozen Earth, a kind of Horns which in all respects resemble Ivory; they have the Colour, the Lustre, the Veins, and even the hardness of it, and differ

Ivory.

Horns like from the true Ivory only in this, that they are more brittle, and consequently more difficult to be wrought, and that they fooner lofe their first Whiteness and grow yellowish. These Horns are commonly of seventy or eighty Pound Weight the Inhabitants of the Country give them the Name of Mamut, but they know not to the minute what they really are; fome pretending they are the Teeth of Elephants drown'd in the

Mamut.

[* By Isbrandt Ide's Map, where he pretends the Pla ces he passed thro were set down according to his Observati on, Yenizeiskoy lies in about 560 40' of Latis. but de Lille raises it to 64 Deg. in his published in 1723.]

univer-

et l

Deg.

Callpaffes

The

Min.

the

. the

iver

h of

hich

gues

59°

dth,

S.

nelt,

ena,

arry

un-

s in

ond

rth,

ible

the

ffer

are

t to

first

are

ht:

the

this

ing

the

Pla

ati

ille

er-

universal Deluge, and preserv'd to this Day in the frozen Earth of these Quarters; others affirming that they are the Horns of a great Beaft which lives under Ground, and dies as foon as he comes to breathe the Air: Moreover they give an exact and circumstantial Description of t which to me has altogether the Air of Invention, no one having hitherto been able to rouch that he hath feen fuch a Beaft. What may be depended on is, that I have learned from the Mouth of many Persons of Distinction, that hey have seen these Horns with a Piece of the Skull fasten'd to them; that they have also ken entire Jaw Bones of this pretended Beaft, with Teeth of eighteen or twenty pound Weight each; but that it was impossible for them to know for certain if they were true Bone, or some other Substance; and that in as many of these Horns as they have seen, they have oberv'd all the Roots to be hollow, and filled with a certain Matter resembling dry and coagulated Blood.

[There are commonly found in Ireland Horns with the Scull of a Beast called the Moose, of such Dimensions as demonstrate it to have been of a vast size, yet no such Beasts are now to be seen there; nor do the Histories of the Country, as far as I can find, give any Account of them, or have the People any Tradition relating

to fuch Animals.]

The River Argun carries its Waters into the River A-River Amur; and as this great River is very mur.

little known to this time, I shall give some small

Description of it in this Place.

In the Mountains which run between the Selings and the River Argun, towards the 50th Deg. of Latit. two Rivers have their Springs; of which that which is nearest the Selings is cal-

led

Ch.

Gorb

Bank

of th

Rive

to C

it is

build

Gorb

form Year

bitan

Prete

Year

Rulli

T

muc

the S

Goo

therr

Si

posse

com

Songo

and 1

whic

nefe !

Nau

Lon

T

led Ingoda, and the other Onon. These two Rivers after having run separately long enough from the S.S. W. to the N. N. E. join at length about the 52d Deg. 30 Min. of Latit. and take the Name of Shilka; that River running thence E.S. E. receives about the 135th Deg. of Longit. the Waters of the River Argun, and then changing again its Name it takes that of Amur, which it retains thence-forward till it falls into the Gulf of Kamtzchatka, about the 44th Deg. 30 Min. of Latit. and 152 Deg. of Longit. From the Place where it takes the Name of Shilka to its Mouth, its Course is constantly E.S. E.

Courfe.

The River Amur is not less than 400 Leagues in Length, reckoning from its Springs; and as several considerable Rivers discharge themselves on both sides into this great River, its Breadth at the Mouth is not less than 6 Leagues.

Between Mountains. Its Banks are very high, and bounded on either fide by great Chains of Mountains interspersed here and there with little Valleys of an extraordinary Fertility. Its Waters are clean and good, abounding with all forts of excellent Fish. Itis of a great Depth all along, and near Nerzinskoy, where the River Nerza falls into it from the N.N. W. it is as broad as the Rbine at the Town of Arnbeim in Guelderland, and deep enough to bear Galleys.

Divides
Siberia
from the
Mungals.

i.

This River makes at present the Frontier between the Country of the Mungals, who are subject to China, and the eastern Part of Siberia which belongs to the Russians. By virtue of the last Treaty between the two Empires [after the demolishing of the Town of Albassian] the two sides of that River, from its Springs to the Place where it begins to take the Name of Amur, belong to Russia, and the River Argun determines the Limits of it with its southern Bank, as the

t L

Wo

ıgh

gth

ake

nce

git.

an-

ur.

nto

30

om

a to

ues

and

em-

its

ues.

ei-

per-

ex-

and

ish.

zin-

the

own

h to

be-

fubperia f the two Place

benines the Gorbitza determines them with its northern Bank. But from the River Argun to the Mouth of the Amur, all the fouthern Bank of that great River is in the Possession of the Mungals subject to China; and with regard to its northern Bank it is stipulated, that the Russians should not build any Towns to the East of the River of Gorbitza.

The Land about the Place where Albassinskoy Banks ferformerly stood, is so fertil, that the Harvest of one til.
Years sowing was sufficient to support the Inhabitants of the Town for three Years: And they
pretend that in the Year 1721 there still grew
Corn, of its own accord, sown ever since the
Year 1716, which was the last wherein the
Russians sowed Grain there.

The Parts about the River Amur afford Skins. much Skins; but those which are found on the South side of the River fall very short in Goodness of those which are found on the nor-

thern fide.

Since the Mungals of the East have been in The People possession of China, the Inhabitants of Corea of Corea come by the River Amur, ascending the Rivers come up the River songora and Shingal to trade with the Mungals; to trade. and they advance at present as far as the Naun, which is a Town that the Mungals and the Chinese have built some years ago upon the River Nauda, in 46 Deg. of Latit. and 136 Deg. of Longit.

SECT.

21

ta

Wki

tai

ret

Po

till

wh

alw

ther

that

fam

this

Ir

and

no f

Teni/

Streig

to th

Sumr

to an

der to

Wind

isdifp

the L

hifts

ately

bourir

many

turn ar

It h

Was 10

that fo

SECT. VII.

Of the Icy Sea and Streights of Waygat: After not contiguous to America

Icy Sea, or Azoch Zingis.

by the Icy Sea, which is bounded on the West side by the Streights of Nassaw, and by Nova Semla, or the new Country (the Extens of which is unknown to this Day) to the N.E. 'Tis this Sea which is referr'd to, p. 39. by the Name of Azoch Zingis, or bitter Sea, which implies in general all Seas whose Waters are salt and it is for that reason that the Callmaks give that Name as well to the Icy Sea, as to the Sea of Japon and the Caspian Sea, which are the three Seas known to them.

of Nassaw, Waygat, is inclosed on both sides from the N.E. or Waigat. of the Isle of the States, which is at the Entrance

of the Isle of the States, which is at the Entrance of the Waygat, far beyond to the N.E. of the Mouth of the River Yenisea, by a Range of Rocks of Ice of a prodigious Height, which running nearly from West to East hinders the Sun from penetrating enough in Winter to melt the Ice in this Strait; insomuch that it never thaws, unless some violent Storm, raised by the N.E. Wind which reigns most in this Streight, comes and breaks the Ice, which does not long continue so.

Rocks of

In all Probability 'tis these two Ranges of icy Rocks, whose Height increases every Year, which make the North Wind so piercing in the neighbouring Countries which lie almost directly South of Nova Semla, that it is almost impossible to guard sufficiently against it. The Samoyeds and Ostiaks which dwell beside the Guba and

Afia

Mhed

i the

d by

kten

V.E

7 the

hich

falt :

give

Sea

hree

alled

N.E.

ance

the

ocks

ning

rom

Ice

un

Vind

and

inud

ficy

ear

the

ect-

pof

Sa

ruba

and

and the Icy Sea, pass from time to time these Rocks and the Streights, to go into Nova Semla and hunt Bears, Elks, and Rein Deer; but they ake care not to advance far for fear of the North North Wind, which especially in Winter infallibly Wind fakills all those whom it surprizes in the Plain: And forafmuch as these People can tell by cermin Tokens when that Wind is coming, they retire to the Entrance of some Cavern shelter'd from the North, in order to have it in their Power to lodge themselves in case of need unill the Wind changes: However, let them take what Measures they will on that Occasion, they always leave fome of their Company behind them; on which Account there are not many that will venture to go there: and 'tis for this ame Reason that we cannot tell exactly whether this Country be inhabited or not.

In regard the Streight between Nova Semla No failing and Siberia is always cover'd with Ice, there is till beyond no failing for Vessels out of the River Oby or sea for the Tenifea which have their Mouths in this Ice.

Streight: But from the Lena and other Rivers to the East of that great River, they pass out in Summer going along the Coast from one River to another to carry on their Traffick: But in order to that they must be careful to mind the Wind, and nick the Opportunity when the Ice sdifperfed by the SouthWind which comes from the Landward; for as foon as it changes and hists about to the North, they must immediately feek to shelter themselves in the neighbouring Bays and little Rivers, seeing that as many of them as the Ice intercepts in their Return are infallibly dasht to pieces.

It has been believ'd till the present, that Asia Asia not was joined on the N.E. to North America, and contiguous that for this Reason it was impossible to fail to Ame-

from

from the Icy Sea into the eastern Ocean; but since the Discovery of the Country of Kamiz-chatka, 'tis known for certain that America is not contiguous to Asia, for the Russian Ships coasting the firm Land, pass at present Cape Suetoi Nos, or Holy Cape, and go traffick with the Kamtzchadals upon the Coast of the eastern Sea, about the 50th Deg. of Latit. but they must for this purpose pass between the Continent and a great Island which lies to the N.E. of Cape Suetoi Nos. It is so lately fince the Country of Kamtzchatka has been discover'd, and it is so remote from the other Dominions of Russia,

that we have not yet come to an exact Knowledge of it; what has been already related is all that I have been able to learn for certain of

it, after a diligent Enquiry.



SOME

GI

art I

3 but

ica is Ships Cape

with

must t and Cape ry of

is fo

ussia, now-

ed is

in of



SOME

OBSERVATIONS

CONCERNING

GREAT RUSSIA, TURKEY, ARABIA, PERSIA, INDIA and CHINA.

PART II.

CHAP. I.

OBSERVATIONS relating to GREAT RUSSIA.

SECT. I.

Its Extent, Bounds, Nature of the Soil, Commodities.

USSIA in it self, exclusive of Si-Russia, beria, extends at present from the Extent.

Town of Terki near the Caspian Sea, situate in 43° 15' of Latit. as far as Petzora towards the Waygat, situate

in 70 Deg. and from the western Point of the see of Oesel in 41 Deg. of Longit. to the Mountains

VOL. II.

T tains

Ch

the

pro

WO

as f

fia.

tha

of

the

are

WI

yie

To

M

of

th

Q

0

0

15

Bounds.

666

Leagues from West to East. 'Tis bounded on the North by the Icy Sea, on the East by that Part of Caucasus, called the Mountain of Eagles; on the South by Persia and Turkey, and to the West by Poland, the Baltik Sea and Sweden.

Never afflicted with a general Scarcity.

This vast Country enjoys this great Advantage, that as it is situate under divers Climates, it is never afflicted with a general Scarcity; for if Corn does not thrive in Livonia, it does in Ukraina, and if not in Ukraina, it grows in the Kingdom of Casan, or about the Springs of the Wolga and the Dwina. And forafmuch as all those different Provinces are extremely fertil, 'tis enough if one of them affords a good Harvest to supply the Necessities of all the rest; so that Russia finds Relief within it felf in such publick Calamities.

Soil fruitful below 60 Degrees.

Corn ripens in very few Places beyond 60 Deg. of Latit. but below that all the Country is exceeding fertil in all forts of Grains, and e-Towards the Mouth of the River ven Fruits. Don, and the Coast of the Palus Maotis, the Soil is very good for Vines; and about Aftrachan, there are Places to be found where Mulberries thrive as well as they do in Lombardy; but the Wine they make is very poor, tho the Grapes 'tis made of have an excellent Flavour, and are extraordinary large.

Mulberry Wine.

Commodi-

ties.

The principal Commodities which are brought at prefent from Russia, are Furs, Leather, Com, Tallow, Hemp, Cavear, Rhubarb, Potalhes, Ifinglass, Sails, Timber, Wax, Honey, Hogs Briftles, Pitch and Tar of all forts, and Fea-

the ngit. 400

Sea, I the and altik

vanites, for

the the all rtil,

larfo oub-

60 try l e-

the ra-

dy; the

ght m,

es, ess

ears: thers: In a word, would they but a little improve the Advantage this Country possesses, it would soon surpass all the rest of Europe, whereas sew of the European Dominions exceed Russes

One meets with as many Melons in Moscow Delicious as in any Place in the World, and so cheap, Melons that a very fine one may be had for the Value Bucharof a Peny; however the biggest are not ski. the best, for there is a sort of Melons which are very little, and quite round like Oranges, with a green Rind, and these are the best, not yielding in the least to the choicest Melons of Tours, if they do not even surpass them. These Melons are called Bucharski, because the Seed of them comes from Great Bucharia.

There grows a particular kind of Apples in Transpathe Gardens about that City, which have the rent Ap-Quality of being quite transparent as an Apple ples. of Wax may be; fo that when they are full ripe, one may count all the Pippins which are in the of an ex-These Ap-quisite Apple, holding it up to the Light. ples are very juicy, and of an excellent Taste; Taste. the Russians call them Nalivi. 'Tis plain that it is the Soil about Moscow abounding exceedingly with Salt Petre which gives them that Quality; for some of the principal foreign Merchants of that Town have affured me that they have fent Trans-Trees from thence to Holland and England, but planted that the Apples which those Trees bore in those they lose Countries have not been more transparent than lity. the common Apples of those Parts; and that on the other hand Trees fent from thence to Moscow have taken the Quality of the Nalivis.

The great Cucumbers green and full of Wa-Excellent ter, which our Physicians maintain to be very Cucumunwholesom, and which truly in these Climates

T 2

are

Cb.

give

andr

in I

Wold

the (

the '

Timi

he a

Tim

whi

fell

Cha

fia,

Ori

of t

at] of i

fatis only the

fait the

We

din wil

to

the

Co

ing

are

Wit lha

'tis

OVO

Wa

1

are so, have a quite contrary Quality in Russia. feeing they fweeten and cool the Blood without loading in the least the Stomach; so that let one eat what Quantity one will, he shall never find himself disorder'd by them, especially if they be kept in falt Pickle.

The Ania Fiction.

[Kampfer has shewn that the Agnus Scythicus, mal Plant or Boromets, commonly called the Animal Plant, supposed to be produced in the southern Part of the Tar's Dominions, about the Kingdom of Astrachan, and confidently reported by so many Authors, is a meer Fiction, occasioned by the Affinity between that Word, viz. Boromets and the Russian Borannets (in the Polish Boranek) whereby is denoted certain Sheep about the Cafpian Sea, in the Bulgarian Tatary and Chowarazm. See the Preface to Dr. Kampfer's History of Japan, and his Amanitates Exotica.]

SECT. II.

The Original, Name, and Qualities of the R USSIANS.

Russians Original.

THE Orientals pretend that the Russians draw their Original from Russ, fourth Son of Japhet. This is certain, that they have been always known to their Neighbours by the Name of Russians, and that they did not begin to call them Muscovites, but since the Tsars of Russia establish'd their Residence in the City of Mos-

Name of We are inform'd by the Author of the Life Muscoof the late Tfar, that the Russians disown the not known Name of Muscovites, which other Nations have given till of late.

rt II.

Mia.

hout

one

find

y be

icus,

lant,

rt of

n of

nany

the

and

nek)
Cas-

wa-

tory

be

raw

Jarays of

call

Sia

10/-

life

the

ave

ven

given them, not themselves, upon Daniel Alexandrowitz taking the Title of Duke of Moskwa in 1300, and removing his Residence [from Wolodimer] but the Name of Moscovy must be the oldest of the two according to Mr. le Croix the younger, in his Notes on the History of simur-bec, where p. 180 of the English Edition he affirms that Uruss Chan, Cotemporary with simur-bec, gave the Name to all Russia, of which he was Sovereign. But without doubt he sell into this great Absurdity by mistaking Uruss Chan, King of Kitsak, and Conqueror of Russia, for Russ the Son of Japhet, to whom the Orientals ascribe the Founding of the Nation of the Vrusses, or Russians.

The Nation of the Russians is so well known at present, that there is no Necessity to speak of it in this Place; and those who would fully satisfy their Curiosity upon this Head, need only read the Relation written sometime ago by the Sieur Olearius, which is as particular and saithful as can be desir'd. But if to that one adds the Account given of that Country, which Mr. Weber Minister of the Court of Hanover residing at St. Petersburg has lately publish'd, he will be thorowly inform'd of every thing relating

to it.

Nevertheless I cannot forbear observing by Peasants the way, that there are not to be found in any most ingenieus and Country of Europe Peasants so well made and well shap'd ingenious as are the Peasants of Russia. They in Europe are commonly of a middle size, but well set, with broad Shoulders, and have all Legs sinely shaped. They also run as well as Biscayers, and its a Pleasure to see with what Agility they skip over the Hedges and Ditches which lie in their way; whereas most of the other Peasants of

T 3

Europ

Ch.

diffe

alter

that

lime

fire

mal

at l

feer

rob

eat

Sun

of I

fore

ring

unh

bee

the

Du

ker

ma

COI

for

dra

tin

be

a .

hu

tha

N

H

lie

W

he

CO

fa

of

Europe are clumfy and stiff, narrow shoulder'd, and without either Buttocks or Calfs to their Legs.

Witty to Admiration.

The Peasants of Russia don't only surpass all other Peafants in the Exterior, but they exceed them yet infinitely farther in point of Wit and fprightliness of Imagination; and I have often been charm'd to fee with what Ease they imitate Instruments and Machines which they never faw In short the Difference is so great in this Respect betwixt the Peasants of Russia and those of Poland and Livonia, who are their Neighbours, that the last feem to be perfect Loggerheads compar'd with the first. They are besides very industrious and good at Invention, fo that they might foon get over that Mifery, which one fees the greatest part of them live in, if they did not know too well that all which they should do to that purpose would not bring them out of it, and would only serve to enrich the Lords, whose Slaves they are, or their Officers; and hence arises that great Sloth with which they are commonly accused: for otherwife, when they can reckon what they get by their Labour as their own, they are far from being idle.

Harden'd to Insensibility.

With these good Qualities which the Peasants of Russia posses, it must be owned they are Thieves, Robbers, Drunkards, and harden'd beyond any thing that can well be imagin'd. If a Russian Peasant has once resolved to conceal a thing, there is no getting him to speak, tho he should be cut Limb from Limb; of which I have my self seen very remarkable Instances. The greatest Criminals among them suffer the most cruel Death, with an Unconcernedness enough to shock the most insensible Spectators, and one would be apt to attribute that great Indifference

difference which they shew for Life to some ex-

alted stoical Sentiments, if it was not well known

er'd, their s all ceed

t II

and often itate

faw at in and

heir fect are

ion, ery,

e in, nich ring

rich)ffi-

vith ner-

by om

ints are

befa

la tho

ich ces.

the e-

ors, In-

nce

manner,

that they have no Notion of those forts of sublime Opinions, and that 'tis nothing but a Defire of feeing an End to their Miferies which makes them face Death, if not with Pleasure, at least with a very visible Tranquility. I have Instances feen a Peafant broken alive upon the Wheel for of it. robbing on the Highway, ask for Garlick and eat it with a good Appetite upon the Rack on Sunday at Noon, after having had all the Bones of his Arms and Legs broken on the Friday before, without shewing the least fign of Pain, during a full half Hour that I was looking at that unhappy Wretch. Another Peafant having

been hang'd by the Ribs for the fame Crime in the Town of Moscow, the Soldier who was on

Duty near the Gibbet, observing a Silk Handkerchief about his Head, which was the Remains of his Robbery, had a mind for it: and

as the Robber feem'd to be near his End, he concluded he had already loft his Senses, wherefore with a crooked Stick he endeavour'd to draw the Handkerchief off his Head; but every

time the Soldier put his Stick near it, the Robber, who very well understood his Design, gave a Twift with his Body to the Hook at which he

hung, which made him turn like a Top; fo that the Soldier could not possibly gain his End: Nevertheless as he had a great Desire for the Handkerchief, and the Hour for his being re-

liev'd drew nigh, he came to an Agreement with the Robber, which was, that the Soldier should pay him half a Pint of Brandy, and then he would let him take the Handkerchief. Ac-

cording to that Agreement, the Soldier having fasten'd the half Pint with the Brandy at the end of a Stick, and made him drink it off in that

T 4

Ch.

If

vast

rope

ther

ther

Geri

vert

and

Geri

chou

Lad

of th

vera

The

Go

Slav

Pri

pill

as (

dif

con

ord

terr

Cor

pay

tior

the

672

manner, the Robber let him take the Handker. chief, and died some Hours after. I thought fit to give the Reader these two Instances of the Infentibility of the common People of that Na. tion, to enable them to judge thereby of the reft.

Cradles not used by the Russians.

'Tis observable, that the ordinary People of Russia don't employ Cradles to rest their Children in as we do, rocking them from fide to fide, but they make use of a Board about three Foot square, hung by four Cords of equal length which are fasten'd to the four Corners of the Board, and keep it exactly level: These Cords end at a Pole which depends in balance from the Ceiling of the Room, at one end of which that Board is hung as the Scale to its Beam, and at the other end a Cord is fasten'd, by means of which they gently tofs the Infant which lies upon the Board. I know not if it be not owing to this way of fleeping their Children that the Ruffians are so little subject to Distempers in the Head; at least this gentle Motion up and down feems to me more proper to preferve and strengthen the natural Situation of the tender Parts of the Head of an Infant, than the violent Rocking of our Cradles from fide to fide.

Fair Women rare in Russia.

Russia is the Country for fine Hands and beautiful black. Eyes fair Women are very rare, and the Princess Elizabeth, Daughter of the late Emperor of Russia, is almost the only comely fair Woman that I have feen in all Russia.

Pickled Apples.

When the Ladies visit one another, they always cause a small Collation of all forts of Sweetmeats and Fruits to be served up; and on these Occasions a Plate of pickled Apples, which do not differ much from rotten Apples, is a Collation which they prefer for the most part to all other Dainties.

If

If Russia was peopled proportionable to its Not half vast Extent, it would be formidable to all Eu-so populous as Gerrope; but considering the great Forests and o-many, the ther uncultivated Parts which still are found four times there, it has not half so many Inhabitants as as big. Germany, tho it be near four times as big. Nevertheless there are Parts of it as well peopled and cultivated as the best Lands in France or Germany; such are the sides of the River Woldowa, from Novogorod as far as the Lake of Ladoga, the Banks of the River Twerza, those of the Rivers Occa and Kama; and, in short, several other Quarters of that vast Country.

SECT. III.

The Government of RUSSIA, and of the City of MOSCOW.

THAT which contributes much to the Severity of dispeopling Russia, is the Severity of the the Go-Government; for as all the Peasants there are dispeoples Slaves, the Gentleman and his Stewards, Prikashiks, who are upon the Spot, begin by pillaging them without Mercy: and inafmuch as every time one of those Gentlemen falls in difgrace at Court all his Lands are ordinarily confiscated to the Government, every one makes what haste he can to fleece the poor Tenant, in order to provide against Accidents; so that afterwards when the Crown comes to demand Contributions, the Peasant has nothing left to pay it. And as the Receivers of the Contributions are not accustom'd to give much Credit, they are not contented with completing the Plunder

the Nathe

11.

cer-

ght

ple neir fide out ual

of rds om ich

and s of son

to uf-

nd nd der io-

nd ery of

ily ia.

of on es,

is

If

R

fy

as

Ch

Re

in

all

Ca

Ru

ne

wh

for

Sw

Co

Re of

fo

Ru

So

tin

bu

me

WO

Sca

ber

bli

cef

mu

pla

200000 Peasants abandon'd Russia within thefe 12

Plunder of the Peafant, but they also abuse him fo into the Bargain, that reduced to Despair he abandons his Family, and goes either to rob up. on the Highway, or feek Shelter in the Neighbouring Countries; which is fo notoriously true, that within these ten or twelve Years, above 200000 Subjects of Russia have fled, some into Poland and Turkey, others into the Mountains of Caucasus and Georgia, and even among the Tatars and Callmaks, being persuaded they cannot fare worse than they did at home; which would not happen in case the Landlord was obliged to pay the Contribution for the Tenant. as is practis'd in all the Provinces of Germany where the Subjects are Slaves, for then he would do his best to preserve his Peasants, because A Remedy their Indigence would bring a Charge upon him, whereas at present he does all he can to

proposed.

Years.

Contributions moderate in Ruffia.

And when the Gentleman would have the Preservation of his Tenants at heart they would not be fo fond of becoming Refugees, where they know they will not be better treated; for in reality the Contributions are very moderate in Russia, and 'tis only the Manner of exacting them, and the extraordinary Avarages with which the Subjects are loaded, which ruin them. So that would the Government abate but a little of its despotick Maxims, and restrain the Superiors from sleecing the Inferiors fo inhumanly as they do, there is no doubt but in twenty Years time Russia would have double the Number of Inhabitants; whereas within these twenty Years they are diminish'd one third.

The Title of Czaar Whence derived.

'Tis commonly thought that the Title of Czaar [or rather Tsar, as Mr. Concet affures us it should be written] which belongs to the Monarchs of Russia, fignifies the same as Casar,

rt II

him

he a-

o up-

eigh-

true,

dove

into

tains

the !

can-

hich

Was

ant,

nanv

ould

ause

pon

n to

bluc

eart

Re-

bet-

are

Ian-

ary

led,

ent

and

nfe-

ubt

ave

reas h'd

of s us

lolar, or Emperor; but 'tis a Mistake, seeing the Russian Language has no other Word to signify a Prince or Sovereign but that of Czaar, just as the Tatar Language has no other but that of Chan: and this is so notorious, that before the Reign of the Czaar Ivan Wasilowitz, they gave in the Russian Language the Name of Czaar to all the neighbouring Princes; for the Term Caroll which is made use of at present in the Caroll Russian Tongue to signify a King is persectly modern new, and owes its Original to the Differences for a King which the Russians have had from time to time, for these two Ages past, with the Crown of Sweden.

There is very little Silver Money in this vast Revenue Country, and 'tis most certain that the whole small. Revenue of Russia does not amount to 8 Millions of Rubels per Ann. fo that it is aftonishing with fo small a Revenue how the late Emperor of Russia was able for so many Years to maintain lo expensive a War abroad, and at the same time execute fo many grand Defigns at home. but it must be confess'd a despotick Government has great Helps, and can compass what would not be possible for another. This great Scarcity of Money is the Cause that the Number of Russian Troops, fince their being establish'd on a regular Footing, is not proportioned as yet to the vast Extent of its Frontiers, and they have not been able hitherto to find the neceffary Funds to maintain more; so that Russia to bring at present 60000 Men into the Field must quite drain its Frontiers, as appear'd very plain in the last War with the Turks.

CI

juft To

> thi M

> wh

bot

cot

the

nea

mo

the

Tu

thr

all

wh

the

acc

wh

car

15 (

rife fro

tor

La

thr

of Ne

MOSKWA, or MOSCOW.

Moskwa described.

ill-built Town.

As we have several Descriptions of this City, I refer the Reader to them, and shall content my felf with faying in a few words, that Molcow Scambling is at present a great scambling Town, which has many Parts of it lying waste, several little darksome ill-built Churches, and Streets impassable in any other Season but Winter. Three fourths of the Houses of the Town are of Wood, and those that are of Brick are more like Prisons than Palaces, as they call them in the Russian Language, for all the Rooms of them are vaulted, with Windows extremely small, and guarded with great Iron Bars to keep out the Thieves, which darken these Houses very much. They have besides this Iron Shutters and Doors, to prevent the Flames in case of Fires, (which are very frequent in this Town on account of the wooden Houses,) from catching hold of them: Nevertheless there are three or four which might pass for Palaces in case of Necessity.

Castle ruinous but Splendid.

The Castle which is called Cremelin is indeed of great Extent, but there is nothing to be feen all thro' it but Rubbish, and Buildings threatning Ruin. The finest thing to be seen in it are some Towers, whose Tops are gilded over with great Magnificence, and a vast Silver Branch hung in the great Church which stands in the Court of the Castle; and I really believe it is the greatest Piece of that kind now in Europe: It was a Prefent of the Dutch to the Court of Russia. Because of the bad Condition of this Castle, the late Emperor of Russia always when he came to Moscow went to lodge in the Suburb called Preobraftinskoy, where he had a little wooden House just

t II.

ity,

tent

Cow

nich

ittle imiree od,

fons Tian

ultirdves,

hey

to

the

m: ght

eed

een

ng

me

eat

in

of

re-

ule

m-

ow

B-

ufe

ust

just like one of the other private Houses of the Town.

There was formerly a very pretty Church in Church this Town, with a very fine Steeple, which Prince confumed Mentzikoff built after the Italian Manner, and by Lightwhich was a great Ornament to Moscow; but hoth Church and Steeple were in the Year 1723 confumed by Lightning which fell upon it. For the Melons and transparent Apples produced near this City, see Sett. I.

SECT. IV.

The Rivers of RUSSIA.

A Slarge as Russia is, it is wash'd on all sides Full of by many great Rivers extraordinary sishy, great Rimott of which are navigable; for the Wolga, vers. the Occa, the Don, the Kama, the Dwina, the swerza and the Wolchowa, are Rivers running thro' the Heart of the Country, and yet they all carry Boats, and even great loaded ones, which is something very extraordinary, and at the same time very advantageous to Russia, on account of the Trade and Communication which the different Provinces may by their means carry on with each other.

The River Wolga, which the Tatars call Atell, River is one of the greatest Rivers in the World; it Wolga, or rises in the Lake Wronow, at a small distance from the Town of Rzeva Ulodimerski in Russia, towards the Frontiers of Lithuania, in 56° 15' of Latit. After a Course of two Leagues it passes thro' the Lake of Wolgo, and at its going out of it, it begins to take the Name of Wolga. Near the Town of Twer, which is about twenty

Leagues

Ch

Wo

run

Tw

try

thai

an I

as] Kul

but of (

is t

of

Lal

Lo

Eaf

app

this

me

ma

Lea

To

nue

Cou

felf

tis,

Th

of

but

kin

ver

the

Ru

whi

to

fixt

abl

Leagues from its Source, it is capable of bearing large loaded Boats. This River runs thro' almost all Russia. From Twer to the Town of Niesna, where the River Occa, which is another very considerable River, throws it self into it from the South West, its Course is pretty near. ly from West to East: From Niensa to fixty Wersts beyond the City of Casan, where the River Kama falls into it from the North, its Course is South East; and from thence it turns fuddenly to the South, and rushes into the Calpian Sea, after a Course of more than four hundred German Leagues, twelve Leagues on the other side the City of Astrachan, in 45° 40' of Latit.

Full of geon, Salmon, Pike.

This River abounds with all forts of Fish. Fish, Stur- and especially Salmons, Sturgeons, and Pike of an extraordinary bigness and exquisite Taste: Its Banks are equally fertil from beginning to end, which is the more furprizing, confidering the length of its Course, and the Rigour of the Climate in those Provinces which it runs thro' on this fide the City of Casan. And tho to the South of this Town its Borders are but little cultivated, on account of the frequent Inroads of the Kuban Tatars, yet they fail not to be of fuch an extraordinary Fertility, that the Asparagus grow there of themselves in abundance, and that of a very particular Largeness and Quality; not to mention Swine-bread, and variety of other Potherbs which Nature alone produces there in great plenty without the Help of Man; infomuch that one may fay the finest Country of Russia is in a manner quite defart, while the Provinces, in other Respects unprofitable, are well cultivated. To remedy as much as possible this Inconvenience, the late Emperor has caused an Intrenchment to be made which begins at the Wolga

Asparagus.

rt IL

bear-

hro'

n of

ther

to it

lear-

ixty

the

, its

urns

Caf-

nun-

the

of of

ifh,

e of

te:

g to

ing

the

iro'

to

ttle

s of

e of

ara-

and

ty;

her

in

10-

of

the

vell

this

an

the

lga

Wolga on this side the Town of Zaritza, and runs to meet the River Don near the Town of Twia: and by this means that part of the Country within the Intrenchment is cover'd; but all that lies without it, and which can't be less than an Extent of eighty Leagues, as well in Length as Breadth, is quite abandon'd a Prey to the Kuban Tatars. Russia affords almost no Oaks Oaks. but what grow about this River in the Kingdom

of Calan.

The River of Tin which the Rushans call Don, Tin or is the Tanais of the Antients. This River is one Don or of the largest in Russia, and has its Sourse in the Tanais. Lake Ivan, in 52 Deg. 40' Latit. and 62° of Longit. its Course at first is from the West to East, then it winds to the S. S. E. and by degrees approaches the River Wolga; infomuch that on this fide the Town of Twia, where the Intrench-Intrenchment ends which the late Emperor caused to be ment. made against the Kuban Tatars, it is but eight Leagues distant. On the other side of this Town it comes about to the S. W. and continues its Course in that manner, until, after a Course of above 250 Leagues, it discharges it self near the City of Affoff into the Palus Mæotis, in 47° 50' Min. of Latit. and 65° of Longit. The Banks of this River are every where nearly of the same Fertility with those of the Wolga; but it must be confess'd it is not so fruitful in all kinds of Fish as the last, tho it has also what are very good.

This River is every where so deep, that after Very deep. the last Peace of Prutt, by virtue of which the Russians were obliged to demolish Taganrok, which was a Port the late Emperor had caused to be built on the Shore of the Palus Mæotis, lixteen Leagues from Affoff, they have been able to fail all the Ships of War which were

then

C

T

not Ca

to

La

full

2

falls

and

Lak

Thi

Wol

fent

Sea.

difta

and

which

betw

and

falls

luga, it fel

Don

muni

Sea;

of A

they

falls i

ends

the W

This

betwee

the Ti

it has

VC

then in that Port, and whereof there were some of fifty and fixty Guns, up the River Don as far as the Town of Woronitz, which is but a little way from the Lake Ivan, where that River ri-These Ships are there still in a very fair Bason, which the late Emperor caused to be made for that purpose, and where they were carefully preserv'd while he lived, to be always in a Condition to be employ'd again in cafe of a Rupture with the Turks.

The greatest Difficuly the Mouth. to be furmounted on fuch an Occasion, lies at the Mouth of the River, where there is but ten Foot of Water; but by help of certain flat Vessels, whereof the late Monarch had learned the Use in Holland, they have overcome it at

last, after a great deal of Trouble.

In short, as the Palus Mæotis has every where Palus Maotis but throughout very little Water, infomuch that in the deepest Parts it has not above 18 Foot; 18 Foot deep at 'tis very easy to apprehend that that Prince did moft. not cause such great War Ships to be built, which drew at least 18 Foot Water, to serve upon the Palus Mæotis, and that his Defigns went much farther: 'Tis believ'd that it was the Town of Kirk, fituate in the Crimea, upon the Strait which

> would have render'd him in some measure Master of all the Black Sea.

Canals.

The late Tfar, that his Subjects might yet farther reap the Advantage of fo extraordinary a Conveniency as the Rivers afford, caused five Canals to be made to join all those Rivers together. Of these Canals the

joins the Palus Mæctis to the Euxine, upon

which he had fixt his Views, the Port whereof

(which is faid to be one of the best in Turkey)

1. Which is the greatest, begins at Neva, o-I. Canal. ver against the Fortress of Sleutelburg, and ends at the Wolchowa, near the Town of Novaya Ladoga, to the South of the Lake of Ladoga. This Canal

tll.

ome

s far

little

r ri-

fair

be

care-

ys in

of a

culy

es at

ten

flat

rned

it at

here

it in

oot;

did

hich

the

uch

n of

hich

pon

reof

key)

Taf-

far-

ry a

five

oge-

, 0-

ends

La-Chis

mal

This Canal is 16 German Leagues long, but is not quite finish'd. The Design of cutting this Canal was, that the Boats going from Russia to St. Petersburg might avoid passing thro' the Lake of Ladoga, which is very tempestuous and full of Rocks.

2. Canal begins at the River Twerza, which falls into the Wolga near the Town of Tweer, and ends at the River Msta, which falls into the Lake of Ilmen near the Town of Novogorod: This Canal is quite finish'd, and opens the River Wolga to St. Petersburg; so that one may at present go by Boat from that Town to the Caspian Sea.

3. Canal begins at the River Wolga at some distance from its Springs and the Town of Rzeva, and ends at the River Moscwa. This Canal, which is also finish'd, opens a Communication between the Baltick Sea, the City of Moscow, and the River Occa.

4. Canal begins at the River Tula, which falls into the Occa over against the Town of Cologa, and ends at another River which empties itself into the Lake of Jwan, out of which the Don rises: This Canal was design'd for a Communication between the Baltick and the Black was, but since by the Peace of Prutt, the Town of Association into the Hands of the Turks, they have given over that Undertaking.

5. Canal begins at the River Ilawla, which falls into the Don near the Town of Ilawa, and ends at the River Kamishinka, which falls into the Wolga opposite to the Town of Kamishin. This Canal was to serve for a Communication between the Caspian and the Black Sea; but since the Turks have repossessed themselves of Association it has also been neglected.

VOL. II.

Co

A

Tr

of

A the the

fuc wh

wh Ro

Au Ri Da

law the

acc

the

the Tu

Ott

teig

the

of

Rac

ver

put

tar

the

and

Dig

Seli

151

Cai

Ma

All these great Works are doubtless of val Advantage to Russia, and would not fail to make Trade flourish there, if the Liberty which Commerce requires could agree with the Yoke of an arbitrary Government.

CHAP. II. OBSERVATIONS upon TURKY.

SECT. I.

Why Turky is called Rûm by the Orientals, and the Othman Sultan, Chalifah. An Error to call bis Subjects Turks.

Rûm.

The Country of Rûm, mention'd p. 188 and elsewhere, must be understood the Provinces of Afia which lie beyond the En phrates, with respect to Persia, because that River has always ferv'd for a Bound to the Do minion of the Romans in Afia.

[The Name of Rum is a general Name give by the Orientals to the Subjects of the Roma Empire, and to the Countries possessed by them whether in Europe or in Asia: Thus the Empe Emperor of ror of the Turks is called the Soltan of Run

Turks called solor of the Romans, because he succeeded to great Part at least of the Dominions of the Re tan of man Emperors in both those Continents. Ruhm. and why.

After the Arabians had taken all they coul from the Grecian Emperors in Asia, the Nam of Rûm seems to have been confined to th Coun

ut II

f val

make Com-

of an

, and

ror ti

d th

e Eu

tha

e Do

give

Coma

them

mpe

Rûn

d to

e Ro

coul

o th

Coun

Countries left to these last, which were most of Romania, Asia Minor, and some Parts of Armenia towards when and Trapezond, to which the Greeks gave the Name called. of Romania, probably to distinguish that Part of Asia Minor, Sc. which belong'd to them, from the Part possessed by the Arabians, who from thence call'd it Balad al Rum: and the Turks who succeeded them, and afterwards conquer'd the whole, Rumily, or the Country of the Romans, which in our Historians is corruptly written Romelia.

'Tis the great Sultan of the Turks whom our solean, Author means, p. 291. by the Sultan Chalif of Chalif of Rûm; for fince the several Chalifs of Bagdat, Rûm: Damascus and Cairo, who pretended to be the lawful Successors of Mohammed, subsist no longer, the greater Part of the rigid Mohammedans are accustom'd to regard the Turkish Emperors as their Successors in the right of commanding all the Musulmanns; and 'tis for that reason the Turks have so blind a Love for the Posterity of Ottoman, the first Founder of the House which feigns at present in Turky, that they would rather fuffer the worst of Treatment from a Prince of that House, than obey a Prince of another Race, how mild and equitable foever his Government might be.

[It is to be observ'd, that after an end had been put to the Chalifate of Bagdad by Hulaku the Tatar in 1257. one of the Family of Al Mostassem, the last Chalifa, who escaped the Slaughter, sted to Egypt where he was acknowledg'd Chalifa, and his Posterity continued in possession of that Dignity, till the Conquest of Egypt by Soltan Selim Emperor of the Turks, who in the Year 1516 having taken Cahera, corruptly called Cairo, hang'd Tuman Bay, last Soltan of the Mamluks, carry'd away the Chalifa Al Motawakkel.

Ch.

The.

are

Tigr

jopo!

fitua

Sou

defa

two

the

the

who

Em

про

Lat

thic

Pre

ate

Tign

may

Seat

the the

the

are

Ari

wakkel, whom he found in that City, to Constantinople, where he allow'd him a Pension, and treated him with the Respect due to a Person of his Dignity while he lived. Now it may be in some measure on this Account that the Turks, the Tatars, and in short all the Mobammedans that are not of the Persian Sect qualify the Turkish Soltan with the Title once so glorious as that of Chalifah.

Rûm or Turky.

Error to call the Othmans Turks.

The Tatars as well as the most Part of the other Nations of the East, do not know the Emperor of the Turks by any other Name but that of Sultan [or Chalifa] of Rum, because the Romans possessed heretofore precisely the same Dominions in Asia which the Turks possess there at present; and that after the Division of the Roman Empire the City of Constantinople always retain'd in the Provinces the Name of New Rome which it had at first; so that it is an Error in us to call the Subjects of the Ottoman Port by the Name of Turks, which is the true Original Name of those Nations which we comprehend at present under the Name of Tatars, and which have no Affinity with those whom now-a-days we call Turks, which are only a Medley of Sarrazens, Arabs, Greeks, Sclavonians, and other Nations of doubtful Origin blended together. For as to the first Turks who overrun Asia in the 9th Age, from whom 'tis commonly pretended they are sprung, all Footsteps of them had been loft long before the Invafion of Zingis Chan into the Southern Asia, and confequently more than two Ages before the Establishment of the Monarchy of the Ottomans.

[* In my Opinion, it is not a greater Fault to make the Saracens, or rather Sarakins, that is Easterlings, and the Arabs two different Nations, than to call the Arabs Saracens; as some Authors even in their Oriental Translations have done.]

SECT.

t II

and

e in

rks, dans

Tur-

the

but

the

ıme

nere

the

al-

Vew

ror

ort

Dri-

m-

ars,

om

ly a

ans,

ded

ver-

om-

eps

ion

on-

sta-

Sarabs

ne.]

T.

SECT. II.

The Provinces of Dyarbekr, Curdistan, and Erak; with an Account of Mount Ararat.

PROVINCE of DY ARBEKR.

THE Provinces of [Baker or] Diarbekir and Curdistan which are mention'd in p. 149. are situate in the Neighbourhood of the River Tigris, and comprehend one Part of the Me-

Sopotamia and Assyria of the Antients.

The Province of Diarbekr in particular is Dyarbekr. fituate between the River Euphrates and the Source of the River Tigris, to the North of the defart Country which is inclosed between those two Rivers, and to the South of the Country of the Turcomanns. It is at present in the Hands of Subject to the Ottoman Port, which governs it by a Basha the Turks. who is one of the prime Visiers of the Turkish Empire.

Diarbekr, where the Basha resides, is situate Dyarbekr upon the eastern side of the Tigris in 38 Deg. of City Residatit. 'Tis very well fortify'd, having a very dence of thick double Wall towards the Land-side, and a Precipice towards the River, because it is situate upon a pretty high Eminence. The River Tigris is so low hereabouts in Summer, that it may be forded over against the Town all that Season. This City is very populous, and all Populous. the Necessaries of Life are there very cheap; the Wine, the Bread, and especially Meat is there very excellent. 'Tis reported that there are dwelling in this City 20000 Christians, both Armenians and Roman Catholicks; and 'tis the

CI

of

pro

cor

ke

ma

abl Ob

the

affo

are

bea

the

Tol

Cou

to

dane

they

but

fron

muc

exce

in th

30 N Rive

Ward

Acc

mar

Tigr

from

the !

the a

Tave

of A

great Trade carried on in this Town which Famous for draws them thither, seeing that the red Marrothe best red kins which are made there are the best throughout Turky. One sees a magnificent Mosk in this Town, which is supposed to have been heretofore a Church of the Christians.

Province of CURDISTAN.

Curdistan. The Province of Curdistan is situate to the East of the River Tigris, and extends from the sides of that River to within three Days Journey of the City of Tauris; having the Province of Aran, which belongs to Persia, to the North, and the Government of Bagdad, which

is part of Turky, to the South.

This Province is exceeding mountainous, and inhabited by a Nation call'd Curds, who are indeed brutal, but as brave as possible, and very good Horsemen. They obey divers petty Sovereigns who take the Title of Bey, of whom he of Betlis is the most powerful, being able to bring into the Field 25000 Horse.

Under Pro- These petty Sovereigns have been accustom'd rection, but hitherto to put themselves sometimes under the still inde- Protection of the Port, and sometimes under pendent.

that of *Persia*, according as the Situation of their petty Dominions and their Interests required, without submitting at the same time to either of those Powers. For besides that it was not very easy to constrain them by force, because of the advantageous Situation of their Country, thro'out which there are found Passers for paragraphs that form Man might easily

Country, thro'out which there are found Pasfages so narrow that fifty Men might easily stop an Army how numerous soever it be; it was still dangerous to push them too far, because that might lay them under the Necessity

Country inaccessible. of going over to the opposite side, which might prove very prejudicial, on occasion, to the Power concern'd: but 'tis probable if the Turks can keep all the great Conquests which they have made at present in Persia, they will soon be able to reduce these petty Lords under their Obedience.

The Country of the Curds, notwithstanding products, the high Mountains which cross it every way, affords great Plenty of all the Necessaries for the support of Life. The Mountains themselves are cover'd with Wallnut and Oak Trees, which bear the best Gallnuts that are brought from the Levant; and the Plains are all planted with Tobacco, which thrives exceeding well in that Country, and brings a great Trade and Wealth to it. Vines also are found there in abundance; but as the Inhabitants drink no Wine they make Raisins of the Grapes.

The Curds profess the Mobammedan Worship; The Curds but except in Circumcision and Abstinence Mohamfrom Wine, they don't observe the Alcoran medans. much; neither have they Mullas or Mosks, except in three or sour of their principal Towns in the Country. See the Voyages of Tavernier.

The Town of Musal is situate in 36 Deg. Musal. 30 Min. of Latitude, on the right side of the River Tigris, in the Province of Curdistan towards the Frontiers of Persia. It is of no great Account at present. That which is most remarkable in it is a very fair Bridge over the Tigris. There are to be seen at some distance from the Town, on the other side of the River, the Ruins of a City, which they pretend was the antient City of Ninive. See the Voyages of Ninevel. Tavernier.

[You will find a more particular Description of Musal in Thevenot, who travelling purely for U 4

the the

H.

hich

rro-

igh-

in

cen

rothe ich

and are ery So-

om

the der

of reto

ce,

afily

ne-

of

Ch

of t

'Ti

buil

of

in F to 1

the

bita

cou wh

the

of

wit

Sto

wit

ve

ge

the

M

bo

M

pu

ha

th all

of

W

T

T

Ve

IS

at

n

tl

11

Information should be suppos'd more exact in his Accounts than Tavernier, who had other Business to mind.

Province of ERAK.

Erakain.

The Country of Irak, or rather Erak, call'd also Erak Arabi, or Babeli, to diftinguish i from Erak Agemi in Persia, is another Province of Turky, and feems to comprehend the antient Chaldea, with part of Mesotetamia and

Allyria.

In the early Times of the Arabs it was divided into two Provinces, viz. of Bafrah and Cufab, each of which had a Governor; and these are they which are meant in the Arab Authors by Erakain, or the two Eraks; and not Erak Arabi in general, and Erak Agemi, as the excellent Golius, in his Notes on Alfargani, happens inadvertently to fuggest, for which he is too severely blamed by Dr. Hyde, in his Notes on Peritsol's Itinera Mundi, p. 65.

Inhabi-

This Province was one of the most considersants noted able and populous of all those which fell under for Turbu- and the Power of the Arabs, and was divided into two Perfidious. Governments, rarely united, the better to keep in awe the Inhabitants, who thro'out the Arabian Histories are remarkable for their Turbulency and Perfidiousness: of which there needs no better Proof than their base Usage to Aly and his Family, after inviting him among them, whose Misfortunes were truly deplorable. But they were feverely chastised some time after by Hegag and his Deputy, who in the Province Basrah only, I think, put to death 60000 of

Severely punish'd.

them in the half Year of his Government.] Bagdad. Bagdad, at present the Capital of Erak, is a modern City, situate on the left [or East] side art [kact i other

call'd iish i Pro id the

a and as di b and and

b Au-Erak e expens

oo fes on ider-

nder two keep

Ararbueeds

Aly ong ble.

fter ince of

is a fide

of

of the River Tigris, in 33 Deg. 10 Min. * Latit. Tis large, and has been very populous and well built in Times past, when it was in the Hands of the Persians: but fince the Turks have been in possession of that Place, it hath gone intirely to ruin, occasion'd by the extreme Insolence of the Turkish Garison, who have abused the Inhabitants of the Town to that degree, that fuch as could get away, have gone and fettled elfewhere; fo that at present nothing is to be seen there but Ruins and great void Places.

It has a Castle upon the River to the North of the Town, which makes a good Appearance without, because 'tis built of very curious white Stone; but within there are nothing but Ruins, with some Cabins to lodge the Soldiers. Ne-One of the vertheless, as Bagdad is one of the great Passa-great Pasges for entering Persia on the side of Turky, Turkey there are always found there many foreign side. Merchants, and all forts of Commodities, tho both are very subject to the Impositions of the The Bazars are very fair as well as the publick Baths; one also sees several pretty handsom Mosks, and among the Carawan-Sarays there are also some commodious enough; but all these Buildings are the Remains of the Works of the Persians.

There is a great Suburbs on the other for West] side of the River, where most of the Tradesimen live; to which they pass from the Town by a Bridge of Boats, tho the River be Bridge of very broad there; and every Night this Bridge Boats.

is taken away to prevent Surprize.

Bagdad is built along the River, and its Walls Circuit. are two good Hours Journey about, but it is not very strong on the Land side. The Heats there are so great in the Summer that every

* [Rather 33 Deg. 20 or 25 Min. Latitude, according to the actual Observations of the Arabs.]

Body

Best Breed

Ch.

thor

tend

the

0xu

ing

cien

ther

Arn

C

06

of

M

to

C

ex

25

IS

C

Se

b

P

Body lies upon the Terraffes, which ferve for

Tops to the Houses.

The Capucines have a House in this Town, Capucins.

and are very welcome to the Turkish Government, because they practise Physick in Bagdat Tis commonly with a great deal of Charity. reported that the Carrier Pidgeons of the best

of Carrier Pidgeons Breed are found in this Town. See the Voyages bere.

of Thevenot.

Mount Ararat.

Mount Ararat, which is referr'd to p. 5. is situate between Armenia, Media, and Assyria, and is properly a Branch of Caucasus, which joins Mount Taurus: the Turks and Persians call'd that Mountain Alwend. The particular Mountain on which 'tis suppos'd Noah's Ark

Remains of rested after the Deluge, is an inaccessable Rock the Ark. of prodigious height, of a blackish Colour,

without any Verdure, and always cover'd with Snow both in Summer and Winter. The Armenians and Persians pretend, that the Remains of the Ark are still found on the Top of that Rock, but that Time has fo harden'd the Wood that it is not to be diffinguish'd from the Rock

it felf. See the Voyages of Olearius.

But if you will believe Struys, a Monk went up in his Time and brought away a Piece of the Wood, of which he produces a Certificate. What Olearius delivers concerning this famous Mountain is only upon Hear-fay, not having been near it himself, and therefore I should rather refer the Reader to Tavernier or Tournefort, who were there, especially to the latter, who had the Curiofity to afcend it as far as possibly ever any one did, and gives a very particular Ararat no Description of it. Mount Ararat, or the Mountain which passes for it, cannot be a Part of Caucasus, for it is a Mountain by it self.

part of Caucasus.

> There are feveral whimfical Conjectures of Authors

Ch. III. Arabia and the Mohammedans.

thors about the Situation of Ararat, some pretending to shew Reasons why it should be on the other side of the Caspian Sea beyond the Oxus; but without taking the Trouble of giving such Dotages a serious Answer, it is sufficient to observe, that the Mount cannot be there, because it is expressly said to be in Armenia.]

AN CONTROL OF THE PROPERTY OF

CHAP. III.

Observations on ARABIA and the MOHAMMEDANS.

SECT. I.

Of ARABISTAN. The Inundations of the Persian Gulf. Of MEKKA and MEDINAH.

The state of the Tatar Histo-Arabia.

The state of Mekka and Medinah, Mohammed and the Mohammedans, I have brought the several Notes together under the Title of Arabia, as the Country to which they properly belong, the no express mention be made of it by Abulgazi Chan, as the Editor supposes: For by Arabistan, p. 32. is not to be understood Arabia, or the proper Country of the Arabs, which never was possessed, either in whole or in part, by Sultan Mo-Not possessed, either in whole or in part, by Sultan Mo-Not possessed, either in whole or in part, by Sultan Mo-Not possessed to the South of the River Gibun or Amu, com-of Chowaprehended generally under the Name of Iran razm, that

Fown, Bagdat Honly best Dyages

art II

ve for

P. 5. Syria, thich fians tular Ark

ock our, vith

meof hat

od ck

nt

of te. us

t, 0 y

r e

2

Ch.

t00

gan

the

ing '

* fix

of t

the

han

part

its

can

Mo

thi

wa

Ba

acc

tha

th

th

A

E

P

that is Persia at large, which had been conquer'd by the Arabs, and which might still, in some measure, be call'd their Country, on Account of the spiritual Jurisdiction which the Chalifa's of Bagdad retain'd over them; tho they had loft all the temporal Power there long before. Besides, the Shah of Chowarazm about that time possess'd almost all that the Chalifa's of Bagdad had possess'd on the other side the River Tigris, fince the time the Chalifa's of Egypt sprung up; who, besides Egypt and the Western Provinces of Africa, carried away from him in Afia all Syria.]

Part of Arabia overflow'd.

'Tis to be observ'd here, that Arabia, which is at present contiguous with Persia only by a small space of Land about Balsora, [Basrah] was otherwise in Times past, before the Waters of the Gulf of Rersia had cover'd a great Extent of Country, which made formerly the Frontiers between Arabia and Persia. We find this by very evident Marks in antient History; and Marco Polo, who return'd from his Voyages in 1295, fays, that even in his Time the Town of Balfora, which is at present but fifteen Leagues from the Mouth of the Euphrates, was situate between Bagdad and a Town call'd Chift, which then stood at the Mouth of that River, seighteen Days Journey distant. The Waters also of the Persian Gulf, which are every where exceeding shallow to the West of the Streights of Ormus, give us sufficiently to understand, that all this Gulf can be no other than the Effect of some great Inundation of the Indian Sea.

I'Tis very likely a great deal of Land has been fwallow'd up by the Sea about the Mouth of the Shat al Arab (as the Inhabitants call the united Stream of the Euphrates and Tygris, which passes near Basrab.) These Inundations et II.

con-

II, in

Ac-

1 the

tho

long

bout

a's of

liver

rung

Pro-

Afia

ch is

mall

her-

the

: of

be-

ve-

and

in

of

ues

ate

ich

een

he

ng

us,

115

ne

as

th

s,

0

too have perhaps happen'd fince the Arabians began their Conquests, who to keep out the Sea for the future, the Coast of Arabia thereabouts being very low, did, at a Place call'd al Chashabat *fix Miles from Abadan, a Castle at the Mouth of the Tygris, raise Bulwarks against it: and Bulwarks the more than ordinary Shallowness of the Per-at the fian Gulf at that End, observed by Voyagers, Mouth of particularly Thevenot, increases the Suspicion of Arab, to its having been once dry Land. However, I flop the Incannot think the Space between Basrab and the undations. Mouth of the River was ever fo great, or any thing like it, as for that Town to stand half way between the Sea and Bagdad, which from Bafrab is above fourteen Days Journey by Land, according to Al Edrisi +; much less can I allow that it was so in the Time of Marco Polo: for the aforesaid Castle of Abadan, which is but thirty fix Miles at most distant from Basrab, was standing on the Sea at the Mouth of the Shat al Inunda-Arab on the Arabian fide, in the Time of Alzions nos fo Edrisi || (commonly call'd the Nubian Geogra-great as pher) who wrote about 1150, which was above suppos'd. a hundred Years before Marco Polo. So that Marco Polo must either have been mistaken in the Situation of Chisi, or in the Distance between Basrah and Bagdad; which some later Authors, thro' Missinformation, have affirm'd to be but two Days Journey; in which Case Marco Polo's Observation wou'd be right, without the Sea gaining any Ground fince his Time. But upon the whole, perhaps it is the Fault of the Copy; for according to that given us by Grynæus, which is reckon'd the best by some, it is only faid, (Chap. X.) That there is a City between Baldach and Chisi, call'd Bascia. From

^{*} Geog. Nub. p. 121. † Idem, p. 203. | Idem, p. 121. whence

Ch

whi

the

vot

Zea

Pla

tim me

fick

gri

ob

Me

eig

wal

To

To

wh

cal

to

M

ab

Ci

ha

agi

th

M

TIL

by

whence it can neither be proved that the City stands half way between (as the Editor seems to fuggest) or even that Basrab is meant by it: besides if it did, that ought to be no ground for fuch an Affertion as the Editor advances; for it is to be consider'd, Marco Polo does not deliver what he fays in this Place, as an Eye-Witness, but rather as it should seem by Hear. fay; the Uncertainty of which Authority fufficiently appears, by his telling us just before, on the Report of others, that the Eughrates falls into a Lake in Zorzania, which by the Situation of it should be Georgia.]

Mekka.

The Town of Mekka is situate in the Happy Arabia, sit belongs to Hegaz or Tahama, reckon'd Part of Hegaz] at ten Leagues diftance [rather three Stages] from the Red Sea. in 22 Deg. 30 Min. of Latitude *. 'Tis very famous on account of the great Number of Pilgrims who annually refort thither from all the Countries where the Mohammedan Worship is received, there to perform their Devotions; in order to which they ought to be there by the 10th of the Month Dfilbotza, [Du'lbaggah] which is their grand Day of Devotion.

Soil barren.

This City is quite encompass'd with Rocks, and very difficult to approach; but as its Soil is very barren [till beyond the Hills] (infomuch that besides some Grass, and some few of one kind of large Water Melons, call'd in Rusha Arbus, it produces almost nothing at all) they are obliged to fetch from the City of Cair, by the Red Sea, whatever is necessary for the Subfistence of that Multitude of People

^{[*} De Lifle computes the Latitude to be 21 Deg. 40 Min. which agrees with two of Abulfeda's Authors; and in the Portuguese Alia, Gidda, which is the Port of Mecka, is put at 21 Deg. 30 Min.] which

which flock thither from all Quarters towards the Month of Dfilhotza, [Du'lba'ggab.]

After the Pilgrims have perform'd the De-Great votions which the Religion requires from their Trade. Zeal, they stay yet some time longer in this Place, to follow their Business; and as at that time People of so many different Countries are met together, there is a very considerable Traf-

fick carried on there by that Means.

art II

e City

ems to

by it:

Tound

nces :

s not

Eye-

Hear.

fuffi-

, on

falls

tuati-

Lappy

ama,

dif-

Sea,

very

of

all

(hip

; In

the

ab

ks

Soil

ich

one

Sta

of for ole

m.

be

h

At their Departure from Mekka, the Pilgrims [if they have a mind, not that they are obliged go to visit the Tomb of Mohammed at Medina tal Nabi, [Medinat'al Nabi] which is Medinat'al eight [or rather ten] Days Journey of the Cara-Nabi. The Mosk [Mesgid] where this wan distant. Tomb is feen, stands in the Middle of the Town. It is encompass'd with gilt Rails, near which they go and pay their Devotions; because none are permitted to go within side. There are five or fix black Eunuhes appointed to guard that Tomb, who never stir from the Melgid, having for that End Chambers made about the Entrance of it, to lodge them in. These Govern'd Cities are in the Hands of the Arabs, and they by Emirs. have each their particular Amir. See the Voyages of John Wild.

They give the Name of Hadsi [Hagi] to all Hadsi or those who have perform'd the Voyage to Hagi PilMekka; and they are respected afterwards during their Lives, with a particular Veneration,

by all the Mohammedans.

SECT.

Ch.

mai *an

radi

ferv fift

extr

alit

of F

the

Ma

lyte

fpre

g101

he c

it a

but tile

He

that

Qu will

and

Art

fely

Ch

Go

nei

COL

fole

An wh

fen

Ido

wh

me .

SECT. II.

Of Mohammed and bis Religion.

European Authors mistaken about the Mohammedan Affairs.

WITH regard to the Parentage of Ma-bomet, or rather Mohammed, and his bomet, or rather Mohammed, and his Affistants, in framing his very politick Religion, the Author of these Observations, following the European Historians, runs into the Errors long fince exploded by those who have given an Account of him from the Orientals; who make it evident that Mobammed was of noble Extraction, and of the most illustrious of all the Arabian Tribes; which was that of the Koraish. However we shall give you his Words with Amendments here and there, where it can be done conveniently, referving a more full and exact Account of these Matters to another Opportunity.]

Mohammed was an Arab by Nation, and born, according to some Authors, the 5th of May 570 of the Christian Æra. His Father was a Pagan, named Abdalla: His Mother was of Fewish Extraction, and called Emina *: His Family was nothing more than ordinary, as well on the Father's as the Mother's fide t. He composed his System of Religion, which is commonly call'd the Alcoran, with the Help of a Jacobite Christian call'd Batiras |, and of Sergius a Nestorian Monk ‡, affisted by some Jews, Relations of his Mother. As it was politick enough to permit his Followers to have as many Wives 11 and Concubines as they could maintain,

* Amena. † On the contrary both were descended Bohaira. ‡ Bohaira and Sergius were from Korailh. †! They are allow'd but four, and seldom take the same. above one.

H

Va-

his

igi-

ing

ong

Ac-

e it

cti-

ian

W-

A-

be

nd

p-

nd

of

ner

ras * :

y,

÷ †.

13

fa

ius

e-

e-

12-

ld

n,

led

ere

ake

maintain, a thing rigorously forbidden to Fews and Christians; and to make the Joys of Paradife, which he promis'd to the faithful Obfervers of his Law, in a great measure to confit in sensual Pleasures, which the Orientals are extremely addicted to: Mohammed in this did not alittle contribute to engage an infinite Number of People to embrace this new Doctrine t. the other fide, he practifed the detestable Maxim which permits the making of Profelytes by Fire and Sword, that did not fail to pread and firmly establish his System of Religion, in all the neighbouring Countries where he could once get Footing. [Mohammed makes ha Merit, 'tis true, to propagate his Religion; but he forbids Persecution, the Method pracis ifed by some who call themselves Christians. He even carries his Humanity fo far, as to order that all shall be spared and unmolested who ask Quarter and pay Tribute. It were only to be with'd, that Church from which the Accusation and Misrepresentation on this as well as other Articles originally comes, wou'd prove themselves as Orthodox by following as exactly the Christian Rule.

The Mohammedans profess to adore one only Moham-God, Almighty, Eternal, and Indivisible; who medans neither is begotten, nor has begotten: Who unitaricommunicates his Essence to none: Who is the fole Creator, all the rest being his Creatures. And they are fo fcrupulous about every thing which might hurt this Unity of the divine Ef-Esteem sence, that they look upon Christians as true Idolaters. Idolaters, because they adore the Trinity, which appears to them altogether incompatible

The Jews were allow'd a Plurality by their Law." He was obliged to yield in many things to the Perverse-Mis of the Arabs, as Moses did to that of the Jews.] VOL. II. with

tl

10

S

In

th

ar

ol

th

M

uf

fa

as

it.

0

ry

be

Su

be

fia

gi

ob

th:

Wi

an

with the Ideas which they have of the Unity

of the Supreme Being.

Honour great Prophet.

They honour Jesus Christ as a great Prophet, Christ as a whom they hold to have been very far from making himself a God as the Christians suppose him; and they have the Jews in great Abomination, on account of their having put to Death fo holy a Prophet. Neither do they fuffer a Few to embrace the Mohammedan Worship, except he turns Christian first, of which nevertheless an implicit Profession is deemed sufficient in certain Cases.

Mohammed took many things from Scripture.

They confess that Mohammed has taken many things out of the faced Books of the Christians; but as these last found the Doctrine of the Trinity, which the others efteem as a Blasphemy, upon the Doctrine of Jesus Christ, they prefer Mohammed to him, as fent by God to re-establish Religion in its first Purity.

Fast of

All the Mohammedans, of whatfoever Sect Ramadan they be, observe to fast during the Moon of Ramadan, in Commemoration, that during that Moon the Alcoran, as they believe, was solemnity, dictated to Mohammed from Heaven. To this Purpose they carefully observe the first Appearance of that Moon; and as foon as the Men posted on certain high Places perceive it, they give the usual Signal upon that Occasion, and immediately they cry aloud, that The Moon of Ramadan appears. They illuminate at the same time all the Minerets + with Lamps, which re present all forts of Figures; and these Illumi nations are continued every Night of this Moon.

What they abstain from.

The Mohammedans are forbidden to have to do with any Woman, or to drink or eat between

† Menaras or Steeples.

Sun

Sun-rife and Sun-fet during this whole Moon; but from Sun-set to Day-break they may drink, eat, fee Women, and divert themselves as they please: wherefore one sees in all Mohammedan Towns, during this Month, all the Streets full of People all night long, and in the Day every one goes to fleep till the Hour comes when the Muezzins call to the Night Prayer; then they begin to drink and eat again till the next Morning.

This Fast is very convenient when it falls in Easiest Winter, because the Days being then very short, falls in the Abstinence they are to undergo is not so winter. long as at other times; but when, it happens in Summer 'tis exceeding inconvenient, especially in hot Countries, on account of the great Thirst they fuffer during the extreme Heat of the Day; and yet the greatest Part of the Mohammedans observe this Fast very religiously. But when Eat and they happen to be on some Journey during this drink as Month, they are permitted to eat and drink as "fual on usual, provided they do not fail to fast in the Fourneys. fame manner for another Month of thirty days, as foon as they have an Opportunity of doing

The Turks especially are so scrupulous in the Turks Observation of this Fast, that they won't mar-very exact ryduring this Month; and if any of them should in this be taken drinking Wine between Sun-rise and Fast. Sun-fet in the Month of Ramedan, he would be infallibly put to death. But among the Per-Persians fians they are not rigorous in this Point; and by less rigogiving some Money to the Mullas, one may rous. obtain a Dispensation for eating and drinking that whole Month as usual. This Fast ends with the Month of Ramadan, and the Appearance of the next Moon begins the Bayram of the

X 2

Sun

II.

ity

net,

om

ofe mi-

to hey

dan

of

is

any

isti-

the

phe-

they

l to

Sect

n of

ring was

this

pear-Men

they

and

on o fame

n re

umi

this

ve to

ween

Cl

fit

Ca

del

cut

for

oug

is t

Ex

are

'tis

WIL

ligi

ally

Cor

like

vine

Lav

with

Wi

or I

che

tho

crof

tals

king

who

they

fide

which

Arab

the Mohammedans. See the Voyages of Thevenot.

Head of the Law in each Mohammedan Government.

Among the Mohammedans each Government has a particular Head of the Law, who decides absolutely in all Matters which concern Religion and Conscience. All the People of the Religion in the Territories depending on his Orders, and the Cadies, or Judges themselves, must receive their Instructions from him for the Ad. ministration of Justice. He has besides that the intire Disposal, thro'out the whole Jurisdiction, of all the Effects bequeath'd to Moskees, Hofpitals, and all other pious Uses. And as these Effects are very confiderable among all the Mobammedans, because the Rich make it a Duty of Religion to bequeath at their Deaths a Part of their Goods to these forts of charitable Uses, infomuch that there are very few Moskees where there are not daily some Distribution made to the Poor; 'tis easy to imagine, that being so well stock'd, he does not fail to ferve himself plentifully first.

His Power to the Government.

So large a Power renders this Office of great dangerous Consequence to the Government; and it has been often observ'd, that when the Head of the Law was disposed to disturb it, all the Precautions of the Prince could not hinder the State from fall-

ing into strange Disorders.

The Name of Mufti is particularly affected by the Head of the Law of the Ottoman Empire, and the Name of Sadre by that of Persia.

Cadi.

The Cadi is the ordinary Judge in Towns inhabited by Mohammedans: he renders immediate Justice upon the Depositions of Witnesses, and all other authentick Proofs which the Parties are able to produce, and that without any Formality or Charges, but for all that they don't want Ways and Means to raise Perquifites.

Fustice without Delay or Expence.

I.

-

ıt

e-

S,

ft

I.

le

1,

1-

ſe

C- '

of

of

S,

re

to

fo

elf

at

en

W

of

11-

ed

re,

in-

dies,

ar-

ny

ey ui-

es.

fites. Nevertheless, in weighty and doubtful Cases, he takes Advice of the Mullas or Doctors of the Law; and if it be a Crime which deserves Death, he dare not proceed to execute the Criminal, without giving Notice before-hand to the Government. The Cadi Cadi. ought of Necessity to study the Alcoran, which is to be to him the Rule and Foundation in the Exercise of his Office.

The Name of Sheich is given to Men who Sheich. are reputed very knowing in Theology; and its for that reason all their Saints are honour'd with it: [it is also given to Princes, and properly signifies an Elder.]

The Mosks * of the Mohammedans are usu-Mesgids. ally built square, with small Towers at the sour Corners, from which the Muezzins, who are like our Churchwardens, call the People to Divine Service at the Hours appointed by the Law.

within, and enlighten'd by many cross-work'd Windows. Nothing is to be seen but Carpets or Mats spread on the Ground, instead of Benches which are in our Churches, upon which those who come to assist at Divine Service sit cross-leg'd, after the usual Manner of the Orientals. There is besides that a Place raised like a kind of small Pulpit, where the Imâm or Priest, who makes the Prayer, takes his Place; and Imâm. they always observe to set this Pulpit on that side of the Mosks which looks towards Mecka.

X 3

^{[*} Mosk is a Corruption of the Persian Word Mesku, which signifies a Temple or Place of Worship; but the proper habick Word is Mesgid.]

of

RI

fu

da

th

VII

pr

the

do

ter Ch

WC

me

ha

bu of

the

Di

fro

no

and

his

oft

Ex

bin

Per

for

ral.

tro

to.

Lamps.

To enlighten these Mosks in the Hours of the Night, they use a great Number of Lamps. fuspended from the Vault about the Height of a Pike. For the rest, every thing within the Mobammedan Mosks appears exceeding neat, and the Men who enter therein, observe carefully to leave their Slippers at the Door, that they might not dirty the Pavement. For want of Gold and Azure which shine throughout the chief Mosks, those which are poor have at least their Walls well whiten'd, upon which there are Passages of the Alcoran written in several Places.

Court before the Mefgids.

Before the Mosks there is commonly found a little square Court, surrounded with a Gallery well whiten'd, where also one sees the Name of God, with some of his Attributes, written in many Places; and in the midst of this Court there is always a Fountain, for those who would go into the Mosks, to perform the Ablutions commanded by the Law.

Imams and Mullas their Qualifications.

Those who would be receiv'd Imams or Mullas must of Necessity understand the Arabic, because the Alcoran is written in that Language; and they ought, besides that, to have read some of the best Commentaries which have been wrote

The Coran always read in Arabick.

upon that Book. In the Mosks they always read the Alcoran in Arabic, the Vulgar among the Turks, Persians, and Tatars, don't understand a word of that Language; and it feems the Mohammedan Doctors have taken the fame Affection for the Arabic Language, which our Roman Catholick Clergy have for the Latin Tongue. Nevertheless among the Mohammedans, there is at least that Regard had to the Ignorance of the People, that the Mulla, after he has read the Paffage of the Alcoran, fet apart for the Devotion

of the Day, usually subjoins a short Explication in the Vulgar Tongue, for the Instruction of fuch as do not understand the Arabic.

The Imam is properly among the Mohamme-Imam. dans, the same as the Curate with Roman Catholicks; and the Mulla is like a Doctor in Di-Mulla.

vinity.

11

s of

ps,

t of

10-

and

to

ght

old

nief

east

are

ces.

ind

ery

of

in

urt

uld

ons

ul-

nc,

e;

me

ote

an

ks,

of

lan

he

10-

er-

at

the

af-

on of

Whereas the Christians confirm what they Mohampromise, or affirm on important Occasions, upon medans the Gospel, the Mohammedans are accustom'd to wear on do it upon the Alcoran, which only they pretend contains the divine Truths, which the Christians on their side believe to be contain'd

in the Gospel.

The Name of God, which is fignify'd by the Guilty of word Allah, is always in the Mouth of the Moham-what we medans, of whatever Sect they be, which might call taking have been practis'd at first with a good Design, the Name but at present they have made so great an Abuse vain. of it, that they will bring that holy Name into their most trifling Chat, and even into indecent Discourse: in which the Mohammedans differ much from the Maxim of the Jews, who never pronounced the holy Name of God, but very rare, and with the most profound Respect.

The Arabs think they honour God in having Think they his Name often in their Mouths, even in Swear-honour ing and Curfing; and that is the Reason we so God by it. often find, in the best Mohammedan Writers, Execrations, fuch as, God burn bim, God curfe bim, or confound bim, tack'd to the Names of Persons who have render'd themselves odious, for some Actions, to all Mohammedans in gene-

ral, or to some Sect in particular.]

The Era of the Mohammedans commences Era of from the Flight of Mohammed, from Mekkathe Hegra. to Medinah; for seeing that from that time e-of Moham X 4 very med.

Arab

nar.

Years Lu-

very thing succeeded to his Wish, he * order'd

that they should reckon the Years to come from

ei

fo

C

of

tic

0

hi

an

to

th

ar

ha

In

CO

da

Re

the

E

the Day of his Flight, which was the 16th of July, A. D. 622. The Word Hegira, by which the Mahammedan Æra is commonly expressed, signifies in the Arabick Language a Persecution on the Score of Religion †. The Mobammedans have that in common with the greatest Part of the People of Antiquity, and with almost all the Orientals at present, that their Years are Lunar, and are reckon'd from new Moon to new Moon; fo that they have always interchangeably four Months running, each of thirty days, and then three Months succeed of twenty nine days each; whence it happens, that the Lunar Year has eleven days less than the Solar. As this Flight of Mohammed happen'd on a Friday, the Mahommedans in order to perpe-

Morery faulty in his Account of Mohammedan Matters.

Head, the Historical Distionary of Morery. [I am very forry the Annotator should pitch upon an Author for his Guide, who has altogether made use of the western Historians, in most things very faulty, as to what is found in them relating to Oriental Affairs, when he had his Choice of fo many Books, which being

tuate the Memory of it, have confecrated that

Day to publick Devotion, and they celebrate it

with no less Exactness than the Jews do Saturday, and the Christians Sunday. See on this

[* It was not Mohammed, but Omar, the second Chalifah, or Successor of him, who instituted the Æra of the Hegra.7

[Hegrah is an Arabick Word which signifies a Flight; so that the Year of the Hegrah signifies only the Year of the Flight, or from the Flight of Mohammed; the it must be owned, upon this Occasion, the Mohammedans have appropriated it to a Flight upon Account of Religion or Perfecution. 7

either

t II.

ler'd

rom

h of

hich

fed,

tion

me-

itest

al-

heir

new

ays

of

of

hat

the

on

pe-

hat

urhis

in in ad

ha-Ie-

of ust

er

either Translations, or Extracts, from eastern Historians, must be supposed more fit to inform him in Matters concerning those People and Countries. Thus, I should think, in an Enquiry of of this Nature, one would rather confult the Dictionary of Herbelot, which bears the Title of Oriental, than that of Morery, which has milled him in feveral Particulars relating to Mohammed. And as to the Nature of Mohammedan Years, and Manner of intercalating Days, the Annotator had better have confulted Thevenot, an Author he quotes elsewhere, who would have been a much furer Guide than Morery to go by, who For a just has also missed him in that Affair. Infight into these Matters, the Reader may confult Herbelot, or Prideaux's, or rather Abulfeda's Life of Mohammed, lately published by the Reverend Mr. Gagnier, whose Translations from the Arabick I hope will not want all imaginable Encouragement..]



CHAP.

Ch

or c

bee

I

all of

the wh

dor

ing

Au

tim

15 1

Da

bei

Bo

anc

Bea

led

hav

Sho

Ye

En

aga

pu

tef

wh

of

all

tha

or

CHAP. IV.

OBSERVATIONS relating to the Country of IRAN, or Persia at large.

SECT. I.

Of the Name and Extent of PERSIA.

Women Dancers.

Name.

THAT great Monarchy known to us by the Name of Persia, consists of several spacious Countries, which at different times have had their particular Kings, and to which the Persians give the Name of Iran: a Name they derive from Irige, eldest Son of Fraydûn, 7th King of the first Race of their Monarchs called Pishdad, as they deduce that of Turân from Tur another of Fraydûn's Sons, according to what we have already observ'd in the Accounts of Great Bucharia and Turkestan. As for Pars which the Arabs for want of the P write Fars, or Fares, and from whence our Name of Persia comes, it denotes no more than that particular Country whereof Shiraz is the Capital, which makes but one Province of the Dominions of the Shah, or of the Empire of Iran.

That of Agem a Nickname.

The Name of Agem is mistakenly ascribed to it by most Authors, as if it was a Name used by the Natives; whereas it is a Name of Contempt or Reproach given to it by the Arabs and Turks, out of Aversion to the Persians, both upon a religious and political Account, whom from thence they call Agem, which signifies Strangers,

to

at

by

ral

ave

the

ley

7th

ed

ur

nat

of

ch es,

It

y

ut

or

to.

d

d

n

r

or outlandish People, and is apply'd by them in the same Sense that *Barbarian* has all along been by *Europeans* to other Nations, who deserve it, at the same time, less than themselves.]

By the Country of Irân, must be understood Extensall the Countries which are situate to the South of the River Amu, between the River Indus, the Gulf of Persia, and the River Euphrates, which comprehends very nearly all the Kingdom of Persia, in the Condition it was in just before the Troubles which at present are tearing it in pieces.

[The Extent of Iran is not afcertain'd by Authors. Some would comprehend under that Name all the Provinces which ever were at any time subject to the Persian Monarchy: p. 18. it is made to include Syria and Egypt, Sham or Damascus, and Misser or Mesr, which is Cairo, being said to belong to it: But the most general Boundaries ascribed to it are the Rivers Tigris,

and Gibun or Amu.]

The Persians are accustom'd to shave the Persians Beard, and let only the Mustachios grow; al-wear only ledging that it is very ornamental in a Man to Mustachihave large Mustachios, and they never let their os. Beards grow but in some extraordinary Affliction: This is the reason why the Embassador of Shah Tamas II. who was at St. Petersburg in the Year 1723, to demand Succours from the late Emperor of Russia, in the Name of his Master, against the Rebel Miri Weis, [Mir Awis] who had put to death his Father, wore a long Beard, to teltify the Share he had in the publick Calamities which laid waste his Country, and the Royal House of the Sofis [Shabs]: But the Uzbek Tatars, as well as all the other Tatars, let all their Beard grow three or four Inches broad, and ridicule extremely that Affectation of the Persians in cherishing only the

Ch.

T

there

and t

retai

whe

Prin

eigh

Mea

and

fwer

Ther

17

n

Mo

Kin

Pol

beg

Vin

Ho

and

tle

the

dan

Pri

him

of .

T

the Mustachios. The Quality, as Tavernier acquaints us, ride on Mules [like the Governor of Meru, p. 135.]

Women Dancers in Persia.

As the Persians are great Lovers of the Sex, and that nevertheless it is very rare that one can enjoy the Conversation of any honest Woman throughout the East, it is the Custom in Persia, at all the Feasts or other Diversions which they give their Friends, to call for certain Women, who make it their Business to divert the Company on those Occasions, by dancing and playing on feveral forts of Instruments.

These Women ordinarily cut a very grand Figure, and wear Habits in Summer of a very thin Gawze, which exposes all the Parts of their Bodies to the View of the Beholders, excepting those which are cover'd with Cotton Drawers. which all the Women of *Perfia* commonly wear; but in Winter they put on Gowns of Gold Brocade, or of Silk, which discover to a Nicety the Shape, which in most of the Women of those

Provinces is very elegant.

Common

These Women are no other than common Prostitutes. Prostitutes, whom the Master of the House, to make the better Cheer for his Guests, does not fail to offer to them to choose which they like; and as the major Part of them are not ugly, it always happens that one of the Company takes a Fancy to one or other of these Creatures, and then without Ceremony, he goes with her he likes into the next Chamber, does what he has to do, and returns after that very quietly to join the Company. The Lady, on her fide, returns also to dance or play as if there had been nothing of it, and without shewing the least sign of Shame for what she had been doing in the other Room.

tII.

nier

rnor

Sex,

can

man

rfia, hey

ien,

pa-

ing.

and ery neir

ing ers,

ar;

ro-

ety

ole

on

to

ot

e;

it

es

nd

he

as

in

ns

0-

zn

0-

ne

The same thing is practis'd in the Indies; and there are also at the Court of the Great Mogul, and that of Persia, Companies of these Women, retained by the Court, who constantly follow it wherever it goes, to make Diversion for the Prince and his Lords.

The Cubit of Persia is twenty four Inches, Cubit of eight of which make six Royal Inches of French Persia. Measure; so that the Cubit is exactly a Foot and half, or eighteen Royal Inches, which answer to three quarters of a Brabant Ell. See Thevenot's Voyages.

SECT. II.

Of the Title of Chan still given to Governors in Persia. The Points in which the Persians differ in Opinion from the Turks and other Mohammedans.

THE Title of Chan, which is given in Per-Title of sia to the Governors of Provinces, is a Chan in Monument of the Dominion of the Tatars in that vernments Kingdom; for when the Power of the Princes of the of Persia. Posterity of Zingis Chan, which reign'd in Persia, began to decline, most of the Governors of Provinces, shaking off the Yoke of the Chans of that House, usurp'd themselves the Title of Chan, and made their Sons and Relations take the Title of Sultan; among whom they distributed the Governments of the Towns of their Dependance, in imitation of that Custom of the Tatar Princes. Ussum Cassan [Uzun Hassan] and after why rehim Shah Ismael, having reunited all the Empire tained. of Persia under one Scepter, found it convenient to leave this vain Shadow of Sovereignty to those

Ch

vin

bar

are

tha

fta

no

rig

me

wh

on H

w

to

gr

G

ne

te m

m

fo

de

Si

be

di

de

A

fe

to

it

n

0

those who were at that time in possession of it, and to content themselves with the Solid, that is to fay, of having reduc'd them to be no more than their Subjects for the time to come; and fince then the Title of Chan properly belongs to the Governors of Provinces, and that of Sultan to the Governors of Towns.

All the Governments

At first these pretended Chans were lest in at the Dis-possession of the Provinces they possessed, a certain annual Tribute being impos'd on them, and the Shah, the Government passed to their Children; but Shah Abas the Great thought fit to abolish this Custom, and after the Death of the Chans to dispose of their Governments according to his Pleasure: and since then all the Governments of

Except

Persia are at the Nomination of the King, excepting only the Government of Candabar, which Candahar has been always hereditary, because the Chans of that Province submitted voluntarily to the Crown of Persia. And 'tis this dangerous Prerogative which has made the Chans of Candabar fo very powerful as to attempt to dethrone their Masters, by plunging the Kingdom of Persia into that unhappy State which we fee it is in at present.

Daruga.

The Office also of Daruga sintroduced by the Tatars] subsists still in Persia; for in each Town there is a Daruga who commands in chief there, and throughout the Extent of his Jurisdiction, all the Affairs of Justice and Policy are at his Decision: He has also the receiving of the Royal Treasures, and the Administration of the Domains of the Crown throughout his District: He is obliged to render an Account of the Finances which pass thro' his Hands, to the Calenter of the Province, and one may appeal from his Sentence to the Chan, Governor of the Province. rt II.

of it,

that

more

and

gs to

ultan

ft in

cer-

and

but

this

s to

his

s of

ex-

nich

bans

the

Pre-

bar

neir

in-

at

the

wn

re,

on,

his

the

the

Fi-

en-

m

ro-

ce.

vince. There is none but the Daruga of Ispaban, who depends immediately on the Court.

The Title which the Emperors of the Turks Title of are accustom'd to give the Shahs of Persia, is Ogli given that of Sheich Ogli, of which we have an In-by the stance, p. 291. As by their Principles they can-Turk to not but look upon them as Usurpers and down. the Shah. right Arch-Hereticks, they reckon it unworthy of their Grandeur and Zeal for the true Mohammedan Worship to give them the Title of Shah.

'Tis the Custom in many Parts of the East, Manner of when one is about to salute a Monarch, to saluting on the Knees, and then the Prince puts his Right Kings in Hand upon the Lest Shoulder of the Person who salutes him, in case he be agreeable to him, to signify that he is well pleas'd to see him; a-

greeable to what is related, r. 273.

As the Memory of Sheich Sefi, Great Great Memory of Grandfather of Shah Ismael, was in great Ve-Sheich neration with the Persians, on account of his pre-to the Pertended Sanctity, Shah Ismael, when he set about sians. making himself Master of Persia, knew how to make a dextrous use of his being sprung from fogreat a Man, who was descended in a direct Line from Aly, Mohammed's Son-in-Law, to render his Person agreeable to the Persians: and as Sheich Seft had maintain'd in his time that Abubeker, Omar and Osman, who were the immediate Successors of Mohammed, were only Intruders, who had usurp'd the Dignity of Chalif over Aly, Son-in-Law to Mohammed, who ought himfelf to have fucceeded immediately, according to the Will of Mohammed, Shah Ismael saw Shah Isit for his Purpose to revive that Opinion, to a-mael innimate his Partisans against the Turks, who then troduces a posses'd a great part of Persia, because the Religion. Turks have always had those three first Successors of Mohammed in great Veneration: and he so effectually

Cha

flate

a g feeir

felf

Ara

the

bain

to h

Tor

each

Lan

of t

011,

as f

Tra

the Lan

the

WOT

flati

gua

that

the

Pre

tion

Coi

ma

the

at I

med

tim

bef

the

nat

med.

fectually infinuated to his Followers, that none but one who was of the Race of Aly had a Right to govern the true Mohammedans, that it contributed much to the fudden Revolution which drove the Turks intirely out of Persia, and placed Shah Ismsel upon the Throne.

'Tis to the time of the advancement of this Points in which the Prince to the Throne of Perfia, that the Epocha Shiais and of the Separation of the Persians from the rest of the Sunnis the Mohammedans is to be fixt. The principal differ in Points in which these latter, and the other Fol-Religion. lowers of Aly, differ from the rest of the Moham-

medans, may be reduced to these, viz.

1. The Persians pretend that Aly is the true Persians hold Ali to immediate Successor of Mohammed, and that Abe the true bubeker, Omar and Osman, who reign'd before Aly Successor of after Mohammed's Death, are but Usurpers, which should not be reckon'd in the Number of the Mohamlawful Successors of their Prophet; which is wholly contrary to the Sentiments of all the other Mohammedans, who acknowledge Abubeker, Omar and Osman, for legitimate Successors of Mohammed, and only reckon Aly for the fourth Successor of their Law-giver. [After the Formula there is no God but God, and Mohammed is the Messenger of God, which the Turks use; the Persians add, Aly is the Friend of God *.]

2. The Persians admit but one sole Commen-Admit but one Comtary of Aly upon the Alcoran as orthodox; mentary of whereas the other Mohammedans do not indeed Ali on the wholly reject Aly's Commentary, but they pre-Coran. fer those of Abubeker, Omar and Othman far before it, which are the Aversion of the Persians.

> [* Hyde in Notis Perits. p. 168. It is Prophet of God in the Place cited; but I hope I shall be excused this Alteration, since the Doctor in the same Book, de Prec. Moham. p. 2. allows the Word Resul rather signifies Messenger.]

> > 3. The

II.

one

da

t it

ion

ind

his

cha

of

pal

ol-

m-

ue

A-

Alv

ch

he

is

0-

er,

of

th

r-

ed

;

n-

K;

ed

6-

e-

.

od

tem.

ne

3. The Persians make use of the Alcoran tran-Use a nated into the Persian Language, which is deem'd Translaa great Impiety by the other Mohammedans, Coran. feeing they are perfuaded that it was God himfelf who caused the Alcoran to be written in the Arabic by the Angel Gabriel. Notwithstanding the Persians agree in the main with the other Mohammedans upon this Article, fince they don't care to have a true Translation of the Alcoran in their Tongue; instead of which they only put under each Arabic Word the Signification in the Persian Language between the Lines, for the Instruction of the Ignorant, without adding any Connexion, or reducing those words to a conerent Sense, as should be done to give it the Name of a Translation: for they are fully perfuaded, like the other Mohammedans, that there is no other Language worthy to explain the Mysteries of the Alcoran. [They reckon it indeed the most worthy, but they both admit of and have Tranlations of the Coran in feveral other Languages.

4. The Persians adhere to the Observation of Confine that which the Law expressy ordains; whereas their Bethe other Mehammedans add thereto many other practice Precepts which they call the Councils of Devo-wholly to ton, much like as the Roman Catholicks add the the Caran. Commandments of the Church to the Com-

mandments of God.

5. The Persians pretend it is enough to make Pray but the Prayer three times a day, viz. at Sun-rise, three times at Noon, and at Sun-set; but the other Mohammedans maintain that 'tis obligatory to pray five times a day.

6. The Persians admit of a Free-will, and Admit a bestow a figurative Sense on several Passages of Free-will. the Alcoran, which renders their Doctrine reasonable enough; whereas the other Mohammedans VOL. II.

are

Ch

the

con

twe

fine

De

Na

lia :

but

of

rer

Pro

pro

Chi

try,

the

Tur

of t

east

Ara Thi be Cha

ther fenc 2R ther

Differ in several o-Opinions.

714

These are the principal Points which divide the Sectaries of Aly from the other Mohammedans; monies and but they differ besides in abundance of Ceremonies and particular Opinions, which are of very little Moment to us. Nevertheless it is fit to know that the Month of Ramadan, and all the other Months of the Year, begin always a Day fooner with the Persians than the other Mobammedans; because being more learned in Astronomy than the latter, they don't reckon the new Moon from the Day it becomes visible, but from the Day before.

The Persians assume the Name of Shiais, in Hate each other more opposition to the Turks, their greatest Adverthan the faries, who take the Name of Sunnis: and the Christians. Hatred betwixt those two Nations on account

of their different Opinions about Religion, is not less than that which reigns between the Roman Catholicks and Protestants, be it ever so vio-

lent.

Turbans differ.

The Turks commonly wrap their Bonnets only with a Tulban of some Ells of Muslin, or some other fine white Cloth; but the Persians first wind some white Cloths about them to fwell them, and afterwards cover them with feveral Ells of colour'd Silk, ftrip'd with Gold or Silver, if for Persons of Distinction, which makes their Turbans very deform'd and clumfy. Thevenot and Olearius.

SECT.

t II.

fol-

vide

ans; ere-

e of s fit

dall ys a Mo-

Af-

the

ble,

, in

ver-

the

unt

, 15

Ro-

vio-

on-

10

ans

to

fe-

lor

kes

See

T.

SECT. III.

Of the Provinces and Cities of PERSIA.

& 1. The Province of ARAN.

HE Country which at present goes by the Extent. Name of the Province of Arân, makes the greatest Part of the antient Armenia, and comprehends almost all that which is situate between the Rivers Kur and Aras. 'Tis one of the finest, largest, and richest Provinces of Persia. De Fer and some other Authors confound the Name of this Province with that of Iran or Perfa at large.] 'Tis true 'tis very mountainous, but for all that 'tis very productive of all forts of Pulse and Fruits; they also make there very good Wine, and a great deal of it. Province is one of those of Persia which produces most Silk, with which the Armenian silk Trade. Christians who are very numerous in this Country, carry on a great Trade: It has been these two Years past in the Hands of the Turks.

The Town of Erivan is at present the Capital Erivan, or of the Province of Arân; 'tis situate upon the Rivân. eaftern fide of a small River which falls into the Aras four Leagues to the South of the Town. This Town is not confiderable in it felf, tho it be pretty well fortify'd, and there is only the Chan, the Governor of the Province, who lives there with the Soldiers appointed for the Deence of the Place, which is built intirely upon Rock: All the Merchants, Artisans, and other Inhabitants dwell on the West side of the Y 2

Trade in Slaves.

716

Bridge.

Passages

into Per-

rivan, with Slaves of all Ages and Sexes, which they fell or truck at the best Rate they

can.

The Town of Nacsivan is situate in this Nacsiyan. Province, and reckon'd one of the most antient in all Persia: but as it has been a vast Demolifi'd Sufferer in the late Wars between the Turks and Persians, 'tis now in a very forry Condition in by Shah Abbas. comparison of what it was formerly, before Shah Abas the Great caused it to be demolish'd, to hinder the Turks from making use of

it against himself.

Carabach is a Place in the Province of Arân, Carabach. towards the River Aras, which is not very confiderable at prefent.

§ 2. The

Ch

9:

the

Gel

the

Ag

pre

wh

one

ma

Na

Ea

fup

It

has

tha

rie

enc

M

are

Ho

Sur

ulu are are the ray

fur ver

dân

t II.

larfelf.

nwc

ade

reat

ky;

n is

ants

nian

the

nts.

E-

res,

hey

this

an-

vast

and

in

ore

no-

e of

ân,

on-

The

§ 2. The Province of Adherbigan, including that of Shirwan.

THE Province which the Orientals call Extent.

Adirbeitzan*, is properly the Media of the Antients. 'Tis bounded on the North by Georgia; on the East by the Caspian Sea; on the South by the Province of Gilân and Erâk A'gemi, and to the West by Armenia. 'Tis at present intirely in the Hands of the Persians, who have made two Provinces of it, whereof one is call'd Shîrwân, and has the City of Shamachi for the Capital; and the other retains the Name of Adherbîşân, whose Capital is Ardebil.

The City of Tebriz or Tauris is situate to the Tebriz or East † of the Town of Ardebil; and 'tis Tauris. suppos'd to be the Echatana of the Antients ‡. It is still one of the best in Persia, because it has always been a great Thorough-fair, and that a great Trade has been at all times carried on there: 'Tis large, populous, and well enough built; but there are none but the Mosks, and fuch like publick Buildings, which are built with Brick or Stone, all the private Houses being built with Bricks baked in the Sun, and that is the Reason why they are not usually above one or two Stories high: They are all flat at Top, and the Chambers within are vaulted, and well white wash'd. One finds there several Bazars well built, and Carawanserays very commodious.

The little River which passes thro' the Town River. furnishes it with very good Water; but 'tis very subject to overslow about Spring and Au-

[* Adherbîgân. † West. ‡ Others reckon Hamadân, perhaps with as much Probability.]

Y

tumn,

ti

th

D

ar

n

pi

m A

P

50

M

ca

T

W

T

W

T

20 H

Ea

G

fal

ing

gr

are M

Pa

tumn, and then it usually lays a great part of the City under Water. There are three Stone Bridges over it, each of a fingle Arch, which ferve for Communication between as many great Streets which cross the Town from one End to the other.

Shagrine made bere.

The fairest Shagrine Skins in all Persia are made in this Town, for which they have yearly a great Vent, because all the Persians who pretend to be ever fo little above the common Rank, don't think themselves well shod if they have

not Boots of Shagrine.

Silks.

The filk Stuffs manufactured in this Town are likewife much esteem'd; and they also make there all forts of small Ware in Iron, which are in great Request in Persia, where there are very few Locksmiths and such like Artisans. is also a great Trade for Horses in this Place, in regard the Horses of those Parts are reckon'd the best in Persia.

Horfes the best in Persia.

Money sions plenty.

All these things make Money more plenty in and Provi-Tauris than in any other Place in Persia; and as the Country round the City is moreover very fruitful in all the Necessaries of Life, they are in great Plenty too and very cheap. One generally finds there foreign Merchants of most Nations of Europe and Asia, which Commerce and the great Thorough-fair bring thither. The Capucines have there also a House, where they exercise the Roman Catholick Religion in full liberty.

Subject to Earthquakes.

.

The City of Tauris has from time to time fuffer'd much by Earthquakes, and the Wars between the Turks and Persians, nevertheless it has always recovered its Losses with Advantage: but I know not whether it will be able to make as much of the Misfortune which lately happen'd to it: For the Turks having carried the Town

Town by Assault last Year [viz. 1725.] after a Taken by bloody Siege, put to the Sword all the Inhabi-the Turks, and sold afterwards intirely plunder'd the Town. 'Tis stain, said that no less than 100000 Souls perish'd on that Occasion.

§ 3. The Province of Shîrwan.

This is the most mountainous Province of Extent. Persia: It extends along the Caspian Sea, from the Town of Derbend and the Frontiers of Dagbestan, to the Mouth of the River Kur; and 'tis suppos'd to have been properly the northern Part of the antient Media, [and at present, according to what is observed before, makes the eastern Part of the Province of

Adraba gan.

t II.

rt of

tone

hich. great

d to

are

pre-

ank,

have

are

nake

very

here

ace.

on'd

y in

and

over

hey

One

nost

erce

her.

nere

in in

ime

ars

s it

ge:

ake ap-

the

nwo

The City of Shamachy is the Capital of the Shamachy. Province of Shirwan, and is situate in 40 Deg. 50 Min. Latitude, in a Valley between two Mountains, which hide it in fuchwise that one can scarce see it till he is at the Gates of the Town. 'Tis divided into two Parts by a Valley, which ferves as a common Bound to both, The northern Part is inclosed with a good Wall, but the fouthern Part is quite open. This Town has five Gates, and may have in all 2000 Houses; its Streets are narrow, the Houses low and for the most part built of The Inhabitants are Armenians and Georgians, and speak the Turkish Language for ake of conversing together, that Language being very much used thro'out Persia. It has a Trade. great Trade for Silk and Cotton Stuffs, which are made there in great abundance. Merchants dwell mostly in the fouthern Part, where there are several cover'd Streets Y 4

th

A

th

wl

pi

vi

tal

W

ta

G

T

an

or

te

H

R

C

W

T

in

th

pr

ca

Ve

th

at

fu

th

W

יזי

for the Convenience of Shops. The Circaffians and Dagbestans resort there also in great Numbers with Horses, Women, young Boys, and pretty Girls, which they steal from their Neighbours to fell in this Town. See the Voy.

ages of Olearius.

The Author of these Remarks supposes it to be the City of Sham, mention'd p. 5. on account, as I judge, of the Situation affign'd to Mount gudi or Ararat; which feems to agree better with one than the other, and is somewhat favour'd by the affinity of Names. But as Abulgazi Chan uses that Name elsewhere to denote Damaseus, to which it unquestionably belongs, and there are no Instances, that I know of, in Authors, of its being ever applied to Shamaky; I have therefore thought fit to differ from that Gentleman.]

Balu

The City of Baku is situate in 40 Deg. 30 Min. Latitude, and is the only Port to be found on the western Coast of the Castian Sea: 'Tis none of the greatest, but to make amends 'tis well built and populous: 'Tis feated on the Descent of a Hill, which advancing with a Point into the Sea forms a pretty fafe and large Port, provided it was deep enough: It has a Castle which commands the whole Town, but 'tis commanded in its Turn by the neighbour-Baku has been in the Hands of ing Rocks. the Russians ever since the Year 1723. 'Tis in the neighbourhood of this Town that those fa-Naphtha. mous Springs of Naphtha are to be seen; which is a liquid Bitumen of a dark Colour, used by the Persians instead of Lamp Oil, and in their Fireworks. These Springs are so numerous that they supply the Occasions of the greatest part of Persia, which brings a pretty good Trade to the

t II.

Tians

um-

and

heir Voy-

t to

ac-

to

ree

hat

as

to

bly

wor

to

ffer

30

be

ea:

nds

the

1 a

rge

s a.

out

ur-

of

in fa-

ich

by

eir

nat

art

to hę

the Town of Baku. See Olearius, [and Kemt fer's

Amanitates exotica.

The Town of Derbend is situate upon the Derbend West side of the Caspian Sea, and is at present the Key of the Key of Persia on the Side of Georgia and Dagbestan. The high Mountains of Caucasus, which run between the Black Sea and the Cafpian, in this Place border upon the latter, leaving only between the Sea and the Mountains an Opening of the Space of a small League, in which Derbend is built. divided into three Parts, the highest of which, built on the Top of the Mountain, is like a kind of Citadel, where the Governor and the Garison are usually lodg'd. The middle Part is built at the Foot of the Hill, and is properly the Town; for in the last Part or lower Town, which is the greatest and extends to the Sea-shore, there are very few Houses. Derbend has no Port, but only a fort of Road which is very dangerous, because all this Road Coast for two Leagues into the Sea is Rock, dangerous where there is no possibility of anchoring. for ships. There is very little Trade in this Town, except in Slaves, which the Dagbestan Tatars bring Trade in thither in great Numbers. The Inhabitants of slaves. Derbend are Mohammedans or Jews. pretend to be of the Tribe of Benjamin, and carry on but a poor Trade in Rags. See the Voyages of Olearius. Since the Russians posses'd themselves of this Town in 1722. they have augmented its Fortifications confiderably, in such wise that it will be very difficult to dislodge them.

'Tis suppos'd, that 'tis the Town of Derbend The Portz which the Antients call'd Portæ Caspiæ, and that Caspiæ 'twas Alexander the Great who built it: At least built by Alexander. tis

th

W

H

ta

W

th

n

N

m

th

0

ri

al

te

B

tl

15

1

t

t

d

t

ſ

that

'tis true that the lower part of the Town is still call'd by the Persians Shaher Yunan, or the Greeks Derbend may be about a League long from West to East, and 450 Paces broad from North to South. 'Tis fortify'd with good Walls, which descending from both sides of the Citadel extend to the Sea; and these Walls are built of the same Composition of which that call'd by the Persians Naw-shirwan's Wall is built, which is that without doubt whereof Abulgazi Chan speaks, p. 43.

Wall be-Caspian and Euxine Sea.

The Remains of this Wall which the Pertwist the fians pretend their King Naw-shirwan caused to be drawn from the Caspian to the Black Sea, are at this Day to be feen upon the Confines of the Province of Shirwan and Georgia: It begins at the higher Town of Derbend, and extends thence West-North-Westward a-cross the Mountains of Georgia towards the Black These Remains are every where three Foot thick, but its height is very unequal; for in some Parts it is still six and seven Foot high, in others only one or two, and in some Places it is quite beaten down. It Consists of appears at first fight to be built of Stone, but when one comes to examine it near, it proves to be only a kind of petrify'd Earth, Sand and Shells, which has form'd fo folid a Body that there is no Freestone better than it; and it is on this Account that our Author thinks it might be call'd a Wall of Earth. The late Emperor of Russia, in his Persian Expedition,

> had the Curiofity to go see the Remains of this Wall fo far as the Situation of the Country and

> his Affairs would permit him; and he could not but admire the Solidity of that Composition, which he found every where fo exceeding hard,

petrify'd Earth.

II.

Rill

reeks

ong

boo

the

hat

IS

eof

er-

to

ea, nes

It

nd ofs

ick

ree 1;

en

nd

It

le,

it h,

a t;

S

te

n,

d

ot

1,

E

that there was no breaking off any Pieces of it without employing a good deal of Strength. He found also some Leagues within the Mountains a Skirt of it which seem'd to be intire, and was about sifteen Foot high. In all Probability this Wall had stood intire to this Day, if it had nothing to fear but Time, but the Hands of Men which built it have also destroy'd it, and most of the Towns, Burroughs and Villages of the Country thereabouts are built with the Ruins of this Wall.

§ 4. The Province of Erâk Agemy, Gebal or Kuhestan.

There are two Provinces to the East of the Erak Age-River Euphrates which the Oriental Histomians, chiefly the Arabs, call by the Name of Erak; one whereof, call'd Erak Arabi, is fituate [partly] between the River Tygris and Euphrates, and comprehends precisely the Province of Babylon of the Antients [for ought we know;] the second which they call Erak Azemi [Agemi] is bounded on the North by the Provinces of Adherbigan and Gilan; to the East by the Country of Chorasan; to the South by the Provinces of Fars, and Laahr; and to the West by the Country of the Curds. 'Tis the true Country of the Parthians [as some conjecture.]

[Erâk Agemi signisies Erâk of Persia, or of the Persians; the Word Agemi is join'd to it to distinguish it from Erâk in Arabia. I have already observed in a Remark upon the latter, that this Province is not a Part of Irâkaîn; and from what has been said with regard to the Name of Agem being given to Persia, it may be reasonably concluded that Erâk Agemy is a Name for that Province not used by the Persians, but

by

Ch

bre

Pla

ple

ag

the

Pro

dit

the

Cit

ver

by

but

ne

pre all

an

WI

ret

ma w

da

an tu

pe lik

ef M

T

W

M

10

al

by Arabs and Turks. In short, the Persians call this Province Kubestan, or the mountainous Country; and we find it as often for that Reafon in the Arab Authors by the Name of Gebal. which fignifies also a Mountain, as by that of Erâk Agomy.

Ispahân.

Maidan

in the

East.

the faireft

The City of Israban is the Capital not only of Erâk but of all Persia: 'Tis a very large fpreading Town furrounded with Walls of Bricks baked in the Sun, and water'd by the little River Zenderud. The great Maidan is the finest thing to be seen there, and they even pretend that it is the most beautiful Place in all the East; it is about 700 Paces long and 300 broad, difpos'd regularly enough according to the Oriental Taste in Architecture.

As there are many Accounts of this City, I refer the Reader to them, and particularly to those of the Sieurs Olearius and Tavernier, which are the most particular. Ispaban has suffer'd within these late Years, on Occasion of the present Troubles which distract Persia, and is at prefent in the Hands of the Rebels, without feeing

as yet any End of its Troubles.

Hamadan.

Hamadan is situate in the Province of Erak towards the Frontiers of Curdiftan: 'Tis one of the principal Cities of Persia, because 'tis the Door by which every thing that goes from Bagdad to Ispahan must necessarily enter into that Kingdom. Most of the Buildings of this Town are of Stone or Brick, and the adjacent Country is extremely fertile in all forts of Pulse and delicious Fruits; there grows especially plenty of Rice in the neighbourhood of Hamadan.

Well waser'd.

The Mountains which stand to the West of the Town furnish it with the finest Water imaginable by a great number of Springs, which break

1.

ll

us

a-

ıl,

of

ly

ge

of

he

ne

e-

he

00

to

I

fe

re

in

nt

e-

g

âk

of

10

m

to

115

nt

fe

ly

a-

of

ach

k

break out on all fides of them, and renders the Places about the Town extremely agreeable and pleafant. In time of Peace there is carried on a great Trade at Hamadan among the Persians, the Curds, and the Turks of the neighbouring Taken by Provinces, but at present 'tis in very fad Con-the Turks, dition, the Turks having taken it by Affault in 1723. the Year 1723, and exercised there all the Cruelties imaginable: it is still in their Hands.

The City of Soltania was built by Soltan Mo-Soltania bammed Chodabenda, the same whom Abulgazi, yah. p. 187. calls Ulseitu Chan, to the East of the City of Caswin. This Town must have been very great and beautiful heretofore, as appears by the Ruins which are still to be seen about it; but since Tamerlain caused it to be destroy'd, it Destroy'd never was able to recover it felf. So that at by Amir present it is only the Appearance of a Town, all within being nothing but Ruins and great defart Places; the Number of Inhabitants may

amount to about 6000 at most.

The Castle is much in the same Condition with the Town, tho one may eafily fee by what remains of it, that it must have been a very magnificent Building. Nevertheless the Mosk, a where is the Tomb of Sultan Mohammed Cho-fine Piece of dabenda, is still pretty entire, and might pass in Architecany Country for a very fine Piece of Architec-ture. ture: It has three magnificent Gates of Steel perfectly well polish'd, and wrought damask like, which are of an extraordinary Largeness, especially that of the Front, which faces the Maidan: The Grate thro' which one fees that Tomb is made of the same Metal, and so well wrought that tho its Branches are as thick as a Man's Arm, 'tis impossible to discover any joining in them. The Persians affirm that it is all of one Piece, and that it was feven Years in hand

CI

up wi

thi

otl

of

fin

Pla

the

in :

ha

Gr

the

Da

T

pa

A

hand before it was brought to Perfection; and that it was brought from the *Indies* just as it appears at present. See the Voyages of Oleanius.

Cafwin.

The Town of Caswin is situate towards the Frontiers of the Province of Gilân, and is supposed to be the Arsacia of the Antients. This is still one of the finest Towns in all Persia, notwithstanding its disadvantageous Situation in a vast sandy Plain, without having any other fresh Water than what is brought thither by Aquaducts from a Branch of Mount Alwend, which is six Leagues distant. As the Town of Caswin lies a good way within Persia, it has no Fortifications, being intirely open on all sides:

Capital be-'Tis a good German League in Compass, and fore Shah still reckons about 100000 Inhabitants, tho it is Abbas the no longer the Residence of the Shahs of Persia,

as it was before Shah Abas the Great.

The Houses of the Town make no great Appearance on the outside, because they are only built of Brick baked in the Sun, as are most of the Houses in Persia; but within they are all persectly well order'd, and very light-some, and all the Rooms are vaulted. The common People are contented with having their Rooms well white-wash'd, but at the Houses of People of Distinction the Appartments are very neatly furnish'd and hung, and the Ceilings of them are painted with Gold and Azure, after the Persian Fancy.

Water fcarce.

As Water is very scarce in this Town, each House has its Ice House for cooling the Drink in Summer, and they take great care to keep these Ice Houses very clean, that in case of need they may make use of the Snow and Ice which is kept there for want of Water.

There

n;

uft

of

the

1p-

his

ia,

in

er

by

id,

of

on

S:

nd

15

a,

at

re

re

y t-

le

ir

of

y

of

T

h

p

h

C

There are two magnificent Squares in Caswin, Noble upon the greatest of which is seen the Palace Squares, with a fine Garden adjoining, which the Shahs of Persia lodged in heretosore, when they made this Town their Residence: There is also another Garden close by it, which is reckon'd one of the most magnificent in Persia; and one sinds, besides, divers other Palaces about that Place, which the principal Lords of the Shah's Court built there formerly.

The publick Buildings, as the Metshids, [Mefgid, or rather Mesku, which is the Persian Word] the Carawan Sarays, the Bazars, and publick Baths, are also as well built and maintain'd as

in any other City in Persia.

Divers kinds of Silk Merchandize are to be Gold and had there; and the Velvet with Gold and Silver vel Grounds, which are made at Caswin, are much here. efteem'd in the East.

§ 5. The Cities of Sûs, Shîrâz, and Karmân; Capitals of the Provinces of Chuzestân, Pârs or Proper Persia, and Karmân.

'Tis thought the Town of Sûs [or Suster,] is Sûs, the the antient Susa, the Capital of Persia at the Capital of Time of Alexander the Great's Invasion in Asia. Mân. 'Tis situate in the Province of Susistan [rather Chuzestân, of which it is the Capital] about five Days Journey from the Euphrates, towards the Frontiers of Erâk-Araby or Chaldea. This Town is at present in a Condition very different from what it has been heretosore.

Shîrâz is situate in Persia [Proper, or Pârs, Shîrãz call'd by the Arabs Fâres] to the South of Is-Capital of pabân. 'Tis suppos'd to be the Persepolis of the Antients. This City is at present one of the sairest, most agreeable, and populous, in Persia,

Ch.

Tre

the

the

Gul

of o

Riv

it IT

and

fide

ofte

by !

Eas

gro

wh

wai

Vir

of

go

tur

Th

if i

ear

it n

mu

fen

pic

wh

the

duc

fuc

boi

the

for Per

Persia [at large,] it being of a great Compass, Unwall'd. and very well built. It has no Walls, but only a forry Ditch for its Fortifications; its Suburbs are very spacious and full of Gardens, where the Inhabitants of the Town resort to take the fresh Air in Summer. The principal Streets of the Town are very fair and lightfome, and the Bazars Bazars or Markets magnificent, and generally full, very cover'd above, for the Preservation of the wealthy. Merchandize, of which one at all times finds an exceeding Plenty, and of all forts; each Merchandize having its particular Bazar to it

College for studying a the Scinences.

felf.

There are many Mosks tolerably handsome at Shiraz, and, besides that, a great College for studying Theology, Philosophy, and Physick: This College is one of the most famous and most frequented in Persia; and the Professors, who teach there the aforesaid Sciences, are maintain'd by the Income of certain very valuable Foundations appropriated to that Use.

Finest Glasses in the East.

The Inhabitants of this Town are said to have much Wit. The most beautiful Glasses in the East are made there. The Matter they are made of is a hard white Stone, not unlike Marble, which is brought from certain Mountains sour Days Journey from the City. These Glasses yield in nothing to the fairest made in Europe, and especially the great Bottles, which those of Sbirāz have the Art of blowing, are so clear and curious that our Glassmakers have much ado to come up to them, seeing there are of this sort of Bottles which hold thirty Pints and more.

Shîrâz is situate in a Plain very sertile, and abounding in all sorts of Fruits and Pulse. To the East of it stands a Mountain cover'd all over with Orange, Citron, and such like Fruit

Trees.

11.

ass.

nly rbs

ere the

of

the

illy

the nds

ich

it

ne for

k:

nd

rs,

re

u-

to

in

re

r-

ns

se!

in

ch

(o

re re

ty

id

0

II

it

S.

Trees. The River Bendamir, which passes thro' River the Town, has its Spring in the Mountains to Bendamir. the North of this Province, and falls into the Gulf of Persia to the South-West of the Town of Shiraz, [Siraf, or rather Bender Rik.] This River is very small in Summer, insomuch that it may be forded in that Season; but in Spring and Autumn, the Water which falls from all sides of the neighbouring Mountains, swell it Inundates often to that Degree that it does much Damage in Winter.

by its Inundations.

The Wine of Shiraz is known all over the Wine of East, and in Reality 'tis by much the best which Shiraz the grows in Asia. 'Tis made about Martlemass, best in when the Grapes are yet half dry, and they wait purposely after that before they begin the Vintages. There is both red and white Corn of Shiraz, but the red is the best: 'Tis very Bears great good for the Stomach, and bears a great Mix-Mixture of ture of Water, [Thevenot fays, I think, two Water. Thirds, nevertheless it influences exceedingly if it be drank to excess. They keep it in great earthen Pots, and when one of them is tap'd it must be emptied immediately, or the Wine must be drawn off in Bottles, otherwise it prelently spoils. The Inhabitants have the Art of pickled pickling the half ripe Grapes in Vinegar, Grapes. which is an excellent Refreshment in the great Heats of the Summer, and for that Reason they transport great Quantities of them into the Indies. The Parts about this Town produce also much Capers, Opium, and Roses, in such abundance that they furnish several neighbouring Provinces with the Water distill'd from them.

The Government of the City of Shiraz was formerly one of the largest Governments of Persia; but the last Kings of the House of the VOL. II.

Sofis * have thought fit to divide it into several particular Governments, that they might have nothing to fear from the too great Power of the Chans, who are Governors of that Province. See the Voyages of Mandelslo and Thevenot.

Kerman Province.

Extent.

The Province of Kerman is one of the greatest of the Kingdom of Persia: it is situate between those of Pars and Segistan, and extends from the Frontiers of Erak Agemy to the Streight of Ormus.

Fruitful.

Rofe Wa-

Other Commodities.

The northern Part of this Province is very mountainous; but the Vallies, which are found there in several Parts, are extremely fruitful, and quite cover'd with all forts of Fruits, Pulfe, and Flowers. It produces Roses in great abundance, and the Inhabitants of the Country have the Industry to make excellent Waters of them, which are esteemed thro'out the East. You meet with, besides, in this Province, very good Arms, Steel; beautiful Carpets; Turquoifes; Tuthy; and the finest Wool of Persia, which they take off the Sheep after a very particular manner: for as foon as they begin to eat the new Grass in the beginning of Spring, one may, some time after, take off the Fleece with the Hand, without the least Difficulty and with much more Husbandry than could be done by Sheering it; infomuch that they remain quite naked till the new Fleece comes on again. The Inhabitants of the Country never dye this Wool, but manufacture it in its natural Colour, which is either of a clear Brown, an ash Colour Grey, or beautiful White; but one

[* It would be better to say the House of Sheich Seli, or of the Shahs, for Soli or Suli is no Title; nor does it belong to any of the Successors of Shah Ismael I. so whom it was peculiar.]

feldom

¥

V

t

b

17

n

fr

fa

tl

E

O

b:

V

al

II.

ral

ve

he

ce.

est

en

m

of

ry

md

ul,

fe,

in-

ve

m,

ou

od

01-

ia, ar-

to

ıg,

ece

nd

one

am

2-

ver

ral

an

one

sefi.

s it

m it

om

seldom sees any Stuffs of this last Colour, because all the white Wool which the Country produces is employ'd in certain Parts of the Garments of the Mullas, who must be clothed Mullas in in white Wool; the other Wool they make in-white to thin Stuffs of a Beauty and Lustre which yield Wool. in nothing to those of Silk.

There are many Gaurs in this Province, Gaurs, who are sprung from the antient Inhabitants of Persia, and still preserve the Worship of Fire. 'Tis they which make the woollen Stuss of

which we have spoken.

The City of Kerman, Capital of the Pro-Kerman vince, is a great scambling Town which has nothing handsom in it except the Palace, where the Chan or Governor of the Province resides; however, very good Wine is to be found there, and Victuals are very cheap. The Vessels of Vessels like baked Earth, which are made in this Town, Porcellain. come very near Porcellain.

The Town of Gomron, and the Isle of Or-Gomron mus, [Hormuz] are Dependences of the Govern-mus,

ment of Kerman.

§ 6. The Province of Gilan.

The Province of Gilân, or Kilân, lies to the Extent. South-West of the Caspian Sea, and extends from the Mouth of the River Isperus to the sandy Grounds of Mokan. The Caspian Sea and the Province of Masanderân bound it on the East, the Province of Erâk on the South, that of Adherbigân on the West, and the Desarts of Mokan on the North. 'Tis precisely the Hyrcania of the Antients, as 'tis easy to perceive by the Description which Quintus Curtius has given us of it.

Nothing is so beautiful as the Situation of this suspines. Province, for it has on one side the Sea Coast, beautiful. along which it extends in form of a half Circle:

Z .2

and

and on the other fide 'tis encompass'd with high Mountains, which separate it so effectually from the rest of Persia, that there is no entring it on the Land-side but by certain Passages very narrow and eafily defended, and these Passages are to this Day call'd Pyla, or Gates, by the Perfians.

Moun-

The Mountains we have been speaking of tains, one have this remarkable, that on the fide towards fide fright- Persia they are the most frightful Precipices and Rocks that can be imagin'd; and on the fide charming. towards Gilan, they appear the most charming in the World, cover'd over with Citron, Orange, Olive, Cypress, Fig, and a thousand other

Fruit Trees. forts of Fruit Trees; infornuch that instead of high Mountains, with which this Country is in

reality furrounded, it feems to be border'd on all fides with great Forests perpetually green.

Beafts.

These Mountains abound with all forts neither do they want Wolves, Leopards, and Tigers: these last especially, are so numerous that they bring them by Dozens to the Town, to fell them, the Persians having the Secret of taming them in such a manner, that they make use of them in Hunting, as we do of Dogs; and when they are once train'd, they fit very quietly behind some Horsemen till 'tis time to send them after the Game.

Country level and well watered.

The Country of Gilân is in it felf very beautiful and level: 'tis cut by several fine Rivers, which falling from the Mountains on all fides, discharge themselves into the Caspian Sea. This Sea is so fishy along the Coast [of Gilan,] and all the Rivers which fall into it on this fide, are likewise so full of all forts of excellent Fish,

Fish of all that the Crown gets a considerable Revenue every Year by farming the Fishery of this Province.

As

d

V

fi

is

V

F

C

th th

m

 \mathcal{I}

ri

ly

II

gh

m

on

Ir-

re

he

of

ds

br

le

ıg

e,

er

of

in

n

n.

ts

S,

st

m

rh

in

d

75

11

a. ,]

2,

1,

As the Country is very marshy near the Sea-Marshy Coast, they make Canals every where to drain towards the Lands, whence it is that it is not very unlike Flanders in those Places; and for the Conveniency of Passage, which was formerly very troublesome, by reason of the fat Lands and Marshes of a Country where it rains much, Shah Abas the Great caused a Causeway to be made, Great raised eight Foot above the common Level of Cansey the Country, which crosses the whole Province thro' the from the western Bank of the River Isperuth, on the fide coming from Ferabad, as far as the

Town of Astara.

The Country of Gilan is at present the most Products. fine and fruitful Province of all Persia; it produces fuch abundance of Silk, Oil, Wine, Rice, Tobacco, and all forts of the best Fruit in the World, that it furnishes a great Part of Persia with them, and feveral foreign Countries. One finds there in many Places intire Forests of Mulbery Trees, Box and Walnut Trees; and this is the reason one finds most of the wooden Movables in this Country made of Walnut or Box. Every Peafant, let him live in ever so poor a Cabin, fails not to have a Garden near his House, where one sees Orange, Citron, and Vines as Fig-Trees on all sides; and 'tis common in thick as a this Country to fee Vines as thick as a Man of Body. the ordinary fize about the Middle.

The Inhabitants of the Country are Son-Inhabims, that is, of the same Sentiments with the tants They are brave, haughty and indufrious: As they are acquainted with all the Passages of their Country, they are not so easily kept under as the rest of the Persians, and they still actually enjoy several Exemptions and Enjoy Privileges, which they are very careful to pre-great Priserve, notwithstanding they have taken the Pre-vileges.

caution

H

1

I

I

caution to disarm them in some measure, to hinder them from rising: They are of Stature tall and robust, and fairer than the other Perfians: Their Habits are nearly the same with those of the rest of the Persians, excepting that they are shorter and plainer, and that their Bonnets are peaked.

The Kilck and Talish.

women most bean-

tiful in

Persia.

Those who dwell to the South of the Town of Kesker, towards the Frontiers of the Province of Masanderan, are called Kilek; and the rest who inhabit to the North of that Town go by the Name of Talish. The Women of these latter are without dispute the most beautiful and well-shaped throughout Persia. They are not indeed so neat as the other Persian Women, but to make amends, they are of great Assistance to their Husbands in the Family, in regard they are seldom idle, which is a Rarity in all other Parts of Persia.

A Rarity.

Yielded to the Ruffians in 1723. The Province of Gilan was yielded to the Russians with all its Dependencies, by the Treaty concluded at St. Petersburg in the Year 1723, between the late Emperor of Russia and the Shab now living; but it does not appear that the Russians have ever taken Possession of it since. There is to be found a very full and exact Relation of this Country in the Voyages of Olearius.

Resht Capital of Gilan.

The City of Resht is at present the Capital of Gilân: it stands at the Distance of 2 Leagues from the Sea, and wants nothing which might render a Town agreeable, rich and sair. Tho it be very large and well peopled, yet the Houses are so cover'd with all sorts of Fruit-Trees, that at one's Arrival he thinks he is entring into a Forest, and 'tis impossible for one to be sensible that he is in the Town, before he finds himself in the very middle of it. The Houses are

41

in-

ire

er-

ith

at

m-

Wn

ce

oy it-

nd

ót

ut

ce

ey

er

ie

1-

Ċ

It

e,

-

d

0

are cover'd with Tiles and Laths like ours, because it rains much in those Parts.

The other principal Towns in this Country Kesker.

are Kesker and Astara.

We know no Town at present in the Coun-Istidura. try of Gilan called Istidura, mention'd p. 130. but it must have been somewhere towards the North of that Country, near the Coast of the Caspian Sea.

§ 7. The Province of Afterabad.

The Province of Istarabat, or Astrabath, situation. [rather Asterabad, or Esterabad] as our Geographers commonly call it, is a Province of Persia, situate towards the Coast of the Caspian Sea, to the South of the Mouth of the River Amu, having the Province of Charasan to the East and South; that of Masanderan to the West, and the Caspian Sea with the Country of Chowaram to the North.

This Country is indeed of no great Extent, Not large. feeing there are about 35 Leagues from the but fruit-Banks of the River Amu to the Frontiers of the ful and Province of Masanderan, and about 15 from populous. the Caspian Shore to the Mountains which separate it from the Province of Chorajan; but in return it is extremely agreeable and fertil, well peopled and cultivated, being water'd by feveral fmall Rivers which have their Springs in the aforesaid Mountains, and fall into the Caspian Sea after croffing this Province; so that the Province of Astrabad passes at present for one of the fairest Flowers in the Crown of Persia, notwithstanding it has suffer'd much from the suffer neighbourhood of the Uzbek Tatars of the Pro-much by vince of Chowarazm, who make continual In-the Inroads upon the Lands of this Province, and roads of Z 4 plunderbeks.

fr

V F

Se

to

th

Se

M

rit

tic

fro

tic

wa

an

of

Al

ty

an

vic

Ġo

Ġo

of

are

cia

im

mu

wh

of

to

we Pe

plunder all the Habitations, Towns and Villages wherever they come. 'Tis for this reason that most of what lies to the North of the River Kurgan, which comes from the S. E. and falls into the Caspian near the Town of Astrabad, is almost entirely defart at present.

Who have feized the Lands near the the Amu.

The Uzbeks of Chowarazm have by degrees possessed themselves of all the Lands of the Province of Astrabad, which are situate towards Mouth of the Mouth of the River Amu, where they have fettled divers Tribes of the Turkmanns, who pay them Tribute.

Asterabad.

The City of Astrabad, Capital of the Province, and Residence of the Chan, situate upon a Gulf of the Caspian Sea, is reckon'd one of the finest of Persia, being large, well built, rich and very populous: As it is a Frontier Town towards the Country of Chowarazm, the Persians take care to keep it always in a good Posture of Defence, having for that End inclofed it with good Brick Walls, and Ditches filled with Water. There are feveral fine Manufactures of Silk and Wool in this City, and they make here a fort of Camlets much esteemid in

Camlets.

Soil fertil.

Perfia.

The Country about Asterabad is as agreeable as fertil in all the Necessaries of Life, and the neighbouring Mountains are cover'd with Forests of all forts of Fruit-Trees: Nevertheless because of the frequent Inroads of the Uzbek Tatars of the Country of Chowarazm, all that lies to the North and East of that Town is very little inhabited; but to make amends, that which lies to the West of the Town is very populous and well cultivated, infomuch that the Country on that fide looks like one continued Ortyard.

The

II.

la-

on

rer

ills

IS

ees

o-ds

ve

ay

0-

n

of

t,

er

d

)-

d

n

e

The Gulf of Asterabad is about 15 Leagues Gulf of long from East to West, and about four or five Asterabad. from North to South. It is fit only for small Vessels, because there is but ten or twelve Foot Water at the Entrance into the Caspian Sea; yet for all that 'tis of great Conveniency to the City, as making a Communication with the other Towns of Persia situate on the Caspian Sea.

By the way, I cannot but take notice of a Mistake of Dr. Hyde, who in his Notes on Peritsol's Itinera Mundi, p. 67. occasionally mentioning Asterabad to be three Parasangs distant from the Mand of Abolgbun, does it with a Caution that it is to be understood of Asterabad towards Persia; for elsewhere, says he, there is another City of that Name, which is the Port of Gorgan. Now it happens that Asterabad near Abosgbun is the Port of Gorgan or Jorjan, a City now in Ruins, a days Journey from Afterabad, and on the same River called Kurgan, which divides the Province of Asterabad from that of Gorgan: But it feems as if the Doctor had taken Gorgan for the Country of Georgia, or the City of Gorganiab, or Urgens in Chowarazm; fo liable are the greatest Men to commit Mistakes, especially when they have to do with fo confused, imperfect, and uncertain a Science as Geography.]

The Island of Aboskun.

By the Country of Abascum Casira, I believe Mistake of must be understood the Country of the Abasses, the Au-who are certain People inhabiting the Mountains thor. of Caucasus, towards the Black Sea--- [and it is to this Mistake of the Author of the Notes that we owe the Account which he has given of those People.

We

CI

sip

A

tw

T

for

Cl

Ki

Pi

gui

me

11

vir

an

tai

an

for

itle

the

vir

to

Co

ter

tha

vin

tha

its

tili

We have observ'd a Mistake like this of Dr. Hyde's, about Asterabad. Teineira*, led also by the Similitude of Names, falls into just such an Error concerning Cerkas, or rather Serkas, which he supposes to be Circassia, near the Abasses, tho it be a City of Chorasan, as Abascum Casira belongs to the Province of Asterabad.

This appears not only by comparing this Place with other Authors who speak of the Death of Sultan Mohammed Chowarazm Shah, and particularly with de la Croix †, who tells us, that Monarch slying from the Moguls by the Caspian Sea, stop'd at the Isle of Abiscon and died there; but also in a good measure from the Passage it felf, for Abascum Casira is plainly no other than a Corruption of Aboscun Gezira. D'Herbelot, from Ebn Kassem, informs us, at the Word Abaskun, that it is an Isle in the Caspian Sea three Parasangs from Asterabad, in which there is a Town and a River which bear the same Name.

He also observes that some say the Isle is situate

at the Mouth of the River, which is called Abes

and Abeskun, but he does not mention where

that River is to be found; however Dr. Hydet

Supplies that Defect, observing that the River

Abgbûn flowing out of Chorazmia, [that is Chowarazm] falls not far from the Island of Abisgbûn or Abosgbûn into the Caspian, and even gives Name to that Sea: He also places this Island at the Distance of three Parasangs from Asterabad. 'Tis true the Map of the Caspian Sea, published by the late Tsar, places no Island within a great many Leagues of that Coast:

and in all Probability it was the Observation of

^{*} Hift. Perfia, p. 267.

⁺ Hift. Genghiz. p. 237.

In Notis Peritfol, p. 67.

t 11.

Dr.

o by

n an nich

tho

be-

this

the

pab,

us,

Caf-

ied Paf-

0ler-

ord

ree

is a

ne.

ate

bes

ere

le‡

rer

is

of

e-

la-

ngs

af-

no

ft:

of

115,

this, joined to the Ambiguity of the word Gezira, fignifying both an Island and a Peninsula, the Arabs having but one Word to express those two things, which led de Lifle to place it as a Town at the end of that Tongue of Land which forms the Gulf of Afterabad; and which, I think, Chardin in his Coronation of Soliman calls Mione Kielle, or the Middle fized Horn: But in all Probability, if that had been the Case, the Moguls would have foon found out Soltan Mohammed, and not given over the Pursuit; however I shall not venture to be positive.]

River Kurgan.

The River Kurgan has its Spring in the Province of Chorasan, towards the 35 Deg. of Lat. and 85 of Longit. to the North of the Mountains which possess the southern Part of that Province. The Course of this River is N. W. and after it has run turning and winding for fome time in the Province of Chorasan, it throws itself into the Province of Asterabad, athwart the Mountains which separate those two Provinces, and at length falls into the Caspian Sea, to the West of the Town of Asterabad, after a Course of about to German Leagues.

This River abounds with Fish, and its Wa-waters ters are the best to be found in those Parts; so best in that the Quarters which it washes in the Pro-those vince of Chorasan, are as it were the Paradife of Parts. that Province; but in the Province of Afterabad its Banks are too high to enjoy the same Fer-

tility.

Cl

not

and the

the

is i

the

ral

as

the

fai

Cb

the

ate

Ri

Uz

the

we

be

be

few

go

the

tha Usi

am

bee

La

and tho

mo

date

§ 8. The Province of Chorafan.

Situation.

Chorasan is without dispute the most beautiful, rich, and fertil Province of all Persia. Tis situate between the 32 and 38 Deg. of Latit. and between the 83 and 91 Deg. of Longit. being bounded by the Mountains of Balk, which separate it from Great Bucharia, and by the Province of Candabar on the East, by the Province of Segestan on the South, by the Provinces of Erâk and Masanderan to the West, and by the Province of Astrabad and the River Amu, which separate it from the Country of Chowarazm to the North; fo that it stretches no less than 100 German Leagues in Length, as well as in Breadth.

Extent.

Gold and Silver Mines.

As the Climate of this Country is excellent, and the most temperate of Persia, nothing can equal the Fruitfulness of its Soil: All forts of exquisite Fruit, Cattle, Corn, Wine and Silk thrive there to a Miracle: Neither are there wanting Mines of Gold and Silver, and even of precious Stones. In short, one may fay, that the Province of Chorasan abounds with every thing that can make a Country rich and agreeable.

Very populous and full of Cities.

This Province has also been always very por pulous, and cover'd with great and fine Cities; but fince the great Invasion of the Tatars into the fouthern Provinces of Asia, under the Conduct of Zingis Chan, it has lost much of its former Lustre; for besides a great Number of the richest Towns of this Province which were destroy'd on that Occasion, it has ferv'd ever since as the Theatre of War between the Persians and the Uzbek Tatars, who have fixt themselves in the Great Bucharia, and the Country of Chowarazm fince that Revolution. As neither Peace

nor

t H.

Tis

itit.

git.

alk,

by

the ro-

and

ver

of

hes

as

nt,

an

of lk

re

of

at

ry

e.

04

3;

to

nr-

e

e

d

n

nor Treaty can put an entire Stop to the Rapines Continualand Invalions of those terrible Neighbours, all by ravaged the northern Part of this fine Country towards by the Uzthe River Amu, and the Mountains of Balk, is in a manner quite desart at present. Nevertheless the greatest Part of the Province of Chorasan is still very populous, and well cultivated, as the sine Manusactures which are settled there, the great Trade which is driven there, and the sair Towns which are sound there demonstrate.

Tho the River Amu separates the Province of The Parts Chorasan from that of Chowarazm, the Uzbeks of next the the latter and of Great Bucharia have appropriated to themselves all the southern Bank of that jest to the River, with the Lands adjoining; whereof the Uzbeks. Uzbeks of Great Bucharia possess at the present the eastern Part, and those of Chowarazm the western Part.

As no Rivers are to be found in the Heart of sandy Dethe Kingdom of Persia, 'tis no wonder it should sarts.
be full of vast sandy Plains, which can neither
be cultivated nor inhabited, excepting in a very
sew Places. The Province of Chorasan has a
good Share of them; but the best on't is, that
the greatest part of the sandy Desarts sound in
that Province lie towards the Frontiers of the
Usbek Tatars, and the River Amu, whereof Cara
Kum (which is the general Name for a Desart
among the Tatars) mention'd p. 354. is one.

At present we know no Town of the Name Carender. of Carender in Persia; nevertheless it must have been situate some where about the 36th Deg. of Lat. upon the Consines of the Provinces of Gilan and Masanderan in the Mountains which separate those two Provinces. [This Situation seems more just than that which de Lisse gives it in his late Map of Persia, where it is placed between Mashbad and Nesa.]

Bastam

Ch

gre

tha

M

tho

are

all

Ci

za

pa

thi

[N

tal

T

O

a 1

ple

CI

nit

th

T

on

W

wi

ha

eig

in

 T_k

an

by

th

an

fo

Bu

lea U_2

Bastam, or Bastan, is a Town of the Country of Chorasan towards the Borders of the Province of Asterabad and Masanderan sto which indeed it rather belongs] in 36 Deg. of Latit. and 82° 30' Longit. This Town is very strong by its Situation in the Mountains, being one of the principal Passages to enter from the Province of Erak into that of Asterabad, and the western Part of the Country of Chorasan.

The adjacent Parts of this Town, the mountainous, are nevertheless very fertil, and cover'd in many Places with Citron, Orange, Fig. Walnut and fuch like Fruit-Trees: They make

also pretty good Wine at Bastam.

Nelbabur. Nelbabur is a Town of the Province of Chorasan, to the West of the City of Meshed; 'tis pretty large and well peopled, and drives a great Trade in all forts of Silk Stuffs and Carpets.

Turkoiles.

'Tis in the Mountains which are near this Town that the fairest Turquoises in all Persia are found: but the Inhabitants of the Town are allowed to trade only in the smaller fort; all the finest being reserved for the Treasure of the Crown. It is also called Iran Shaher, Aber Shaher, and Palava.

Mashhad

The City of Meshed, [rather Mashbad, is Capital of the Capital of the Province of Chorasan, since the Princes of the House of the Sofis possessed the Throne of Persia. It is situate on a little River which falls into the Kurgan, towards the Mountains which separate the Province of After rabad from that of Chorasan. This Town was formerly in a flourishing Condition on account of the several considerable Manufactures of Gold and Silver Brocades and other Silks made there. The Earthen-Ware of Melbed was also much efteemed, and they had besides a great Trade in those beautiful Lamb-skins of a fine Silver grey,

Manufactures.

11

itry

Hee

eed

82°

its

the

nce

ern

un-

r'd

ig,

ke

bo-

'tis

eat

his

are

are all

the her,

IS

nce

led

tle

the

Re-

Was

unt

old

re.

ich

ade

ver

ey,

grey, the Wool of which is all curl'd and finer than Silk, inafmuch as those furnish'd by the Mountains to the South of that Town, and those which come from the Province of Kirman are the fairest of all Persia: In short it was on all Accounts a rich, beautiful, and populous City; the Mosks, Baths, Carawan Sarays, Bazars, and fuch like publick Buildings there, furpas'd in magnificence all that was seen of that kind throughout the rest of Persia: The great Metshed Stately [Mesgid] especially, from whence that Town Mesgid takes its Name, where is to be feen the famous of Imam Tomb of Imam Riza, was a Masterpiece of Riza. Oriental Architecture, and drew from all fides a Croud of Devotees, who enrich'd the Temple with their Presents, and the City by their Charities.

The Author of these Remarks, by the Affinity between the corrupt Name of Metsbed and that of Melbed, has been led into the Mistake to believe the Town takes its Name from the Temple; but to shew the contrary, one need only reduce Metsbed to its true Orthography, which is Meseed. Now Meshed, or rather Mashbad, which signifies in Arabic a Place where a Martyr is interr'd, has been apply'd to the Sepulchres of the Imams, most of whom have been flain or poison'd: and Imam Riza, the eighth of the twelve Imams, having been bury'd in a Burrow called Pazuperhin, not far from Thus, that City in time lost its former Name, and took that of Mafbbad, growing very famous by the great Encouragement which Shab Ismael the first, by the Change he made in Religion, and other Means, gave to the Pilgrimage perform'd thither all along by the Followers of Ali.] But there is nothing of all this at present, at least it must be in a very bad Condition; the Uzbek Tatars of Great Bucharia having some Years

CI

be

are

raz

Ba

Lo

pre

bee

102

of]

was To

fion

fuffe

terr

the vert

its a

Yea

terri

COVE

agai

Uzbe

muc

mof

Plac

the f

Seat

mily

Rûd.

vince

This

H

Years ago taken the Town and totally plunder'd it.

Fine Coun-

The Country about Meshed is the most charming in the World, and produces abundance of all sorts of Pulse and excellent Fruit. There are also Mountains in the Neighbourhood of this Town, where they find Turquoise Stones, and even Rubies.

Nafai.

bies.

The Town of Nasai is situate to the South of the River Amu, towards the Confines of the Provinces of Asterabad and Chorasan, in 38° 20' of Latit. 'Tis at present in the Hands of the Uzbek Tatars of Chowarazm, and has suffer'd much on several Occasions since the Tatars have come to settle about the Banks of the River Amu.

YaurSurdi.

River Amu, about the 87th Deg. of Longit. Tis at present in the Hand of the Uzbeks of Chowarazm, and is to be reckon'd among the Towns of the smaller fort.

Duruhn.

Durubn is a small Town half a days Journey from the River Amu, about the 88 Deg. of Longit. As it has been often taken and retaken within these two Centuries by the Persians and Uzbeks, it is at present in a very poor Condition; the Uzbek Tatars of Chowarazm are in possession of it at present.

Chogan.

Chodsan is situate towards the Frontiers of the Country of Chowarazm in 37 Deg. 50 Min. Latit. This Town is not indeed very big, being but half a League in Compass; but it is very well built and peopled, by reason its Territory is exceeding fertil, and that good Water, so very scarce in other Parts, is sound there in abundance, by means of a fine River which passes by the Town.

The

The Chamlets of the Town of Chodsan are the Best Cambest in Persia, and certain fine half Silk Stuffs lets in are also made there, which are much esteemed. Persia.

Bagabat is fituate on the Confines of Chowa-Bagabad. razm and Great Bucharia, towards the fouthern Bank of the River Amu, and the 89th Deg. of Longit. This Town is very inconfiderable at present, having been several times taken, retaken, and plunder'd since the Uzbek Tatars have been in possession of the Country of Chowa-

razm, in whose Hands it is at present.

Meru stands in a very fandy Plain, in 37 Deg. Meru. of Latit. and 88 Degrees of Longitude. This was formerly one of the fairest and richest Towns of all Persia; but since the grand Invasion of the Tatars into the Southern Asia, it has fuffer'd so much on several Occasions from those terrible Neighbours, that it is at present only the Shadow of what it was in times past; nevertheless there are still to be found Remains of its antient Magnificence. And during those fifty Years that it remain'd the last time, without Interruption, in the Hands of the Persians, it recover'd much of its former Losses: But as it fell again some Years since into the Hands of the Uzbek Tatars of Great Bucharia, the City is much the worse for it.

[There are two Marûs in this Province: the most northern, which is, doubtless, meant in this Place, is called Marû Shahgan, and is one of the four Capitals of Chorasan, having been the Seat of several Monarchs, especially of the Family of Selgûk; the other is named Marû al

Rúd.

f

d

1

e

3'

e

d

e

r

e

is

2-

15

of

1-

ns

1-

in'

10

n.

eis

er.

in

ch

he

Herat is situate in the southern Part of the Pro-Herat Cavince of Chorasan about the 34th Deg. of Latit. pital of This City is at present the fairest and greatest Chorasan. VOL. II. A a in

lately ruined the Town of Meshed, which had before been the Capital. 'Tis very populous and rich. Besides all sorts of Stuffs, the finest Carpets and Brocades that are made in Persia best in Per-come from thence: and as at the same time Herat has the Advantage of being the Staple of almost all the Commerce which is carry'd on

C

th

th

ar

T

al

ex

fu

bu

M

T

an

N

for bo

an

thi

Ga

it f

the

ren

orc

it is

wh

of

hel

of

Hya

Great Trade with the Indies.

Carpets and Bro-

fia.

'tis easy to conceive it must be one of the richest Towns in Persia.

between Persia and the Indies, on account of

its lying in the Road from Ispahan to Candabar,

§ 9. Of the Cities of Bost, Candahar, and Gazna.

Boft.

Bost, or Bast, as our Author calls it, is situate in 32 Deg. of Latit. towards the Frontiers of the Indies, at present the Capital of Sablestan, pretty large and well-built; and the adjacent Country very agreeable and fertil, in proportion to the Barrenness which reigns in the rest of the Provinces. As this Town is one of the greatest Thoro'fares by Land betwixt Persia and the Indies, there is a pretty good Trade carry'd on there in all forts of Merchandizes, and the Banyan Inhabitants, who are very numerous there, make the best of several considerable Manufactures of Silk and Cotton.

Sagil or

Sagil, mention'd p. 123. is the Town at Candahar. present call'd Candahar: it is the Capital of the Province of that Name, and is situate at 33 Deg. 10 Min. of Lat. upon the Confines of Persia, and the Dominions of the Great Mogul.

only Paf-As Candabar is almost the only Passage to Sage from go from Persia to the Indies by Land, it Perfia to is the eternal Subject of Difference between India. the H.

ive iad

ous eft

fia

me of

on of

ar. est

tu-

ers

ble-

ad-

ro-

the

of

rixt

boo

an-

ery

nsi-

at of 33 er-

gul.

to it

een

the

the Great Mogul and the Crown of Persia; nevertheless this last has possessed it for near an Age; and if the Great Mogul lets flip the present ccasion of retaking it, by favour of the Troubles which rend Persia in Pieces, in all likelihood he will never recover it. It is extremely strong by its Situation, being strength. furrounded on all sides by Fens and Rocks; but it is not very large tho it's well peopled. Merchandizes pay there five per Cent: for the Tax of Passage.

The Town of Gazna, call'd Gasmien, p. 123. Gazna. and elsewhere, is not known at present by that Name. Nevertheless it must have been situate fomewhere upon the Frontiers of the Indies, about the 33 Deg. of Latit. between Candahar

and Cabull.

Gazna or Gaznin, is the proper Name of this Town, which in Texeira is often written Mahmud, Son of Sabektekin, made Gazneben. it famous by taking the Name of Gazni from thence, which continued to his Family, removing the royal Seat thither from Herat, in order to be nearer his Indian Conquests; so that it is reckon'd among the four Capital Cities, which at different times had been the Residence of the Kings of Chorasan, who for a long time held the Empire of Iran or Persia, with part of Tatary, and India.

SECT. II.

A Description of the Caspian Sea.

THIS Sea, which the Latins call'd Caspi- Names. um; from the Neighbourhood, as Dr. Hyde thinks, of the City Cashin; and Hyrca-A a 2 num,

num, from the Province of Erak; has various Names given to it by the Oriental Geographers, according to the different Countries which border upon it. The most remarkable are those of Chowarazm, Gorgan, Deilan, Ghilan, Tabreftân, and Mazanderan; nay, it is even call'd the Sea of Baku (from a Town in Shirwan of that Name) and of Abosgiin, as we have observed before in our Account of that Isle. Before the Time of Zingis Chan it was call'd the Sea of Khozar, the Country of the Chazari: the Russians call it Gwalinskoi More; the Persians, Diaro Ghilan; the Turks, Kolzum Denghiz; and the Tatars, Zingis; which, as is observed elsewhere, is a general Name with them for a Sea.

'Tis not long fince we have had a true Knowledge of this Sea, the Sieur Olearius being the first who hath given us an exact Account of it; and the Diligence of the late Emperor of Russia having completed our Instructions thereupon. Nevertheless we cannot fay, that we have got a perfect Information of the eastern Coast of this Sea, tho we are pretty well acquainted with all the Windings of it: This is what the late Emperor of Russia himself confess'd at his Return from Persia, and that he had not found the Chart of this Sea; which he had caus'd to be communicated to the learned Men of Europe, so exact, with regard to the eastern Coast, as he had at first believed it was.

[Ant. Jenkinson had a very good Opportunity, in his Voyage from Astrachan to Mankishlak, to have observ'd the eastern Coast, and has given us fome Account of the Bearings and Distances; but 'tis either falfely related, or corrupted by others, as I have been credibly inform'd it was.] The

Eastern Coast not yet well discover'd. Ch fen

W litu La Lo Le

the the Ger of

> Shi the Co Le

ly alo of

this zan falt

1

ters

cell tin of in f Riv

ble ın Bre

Sea pian are

the Th

Sea

The Caspian Sea, as it appears to us at pre-Extent. sent, is without dispute the greatest Lake in the World, that we have any Knowledge of: 'Tis situate between the 37th and 47th Degrees of Latitude, and the 77th and 83d Degrees of Longitude; so that it may contain about 150 Leagues in its greatest Length, reckoning from the Mouth of the River Taik to the Coast of the Province of Mazanderan; and about 70 German Leagues in Breadth, from the Mouth of the River Kur, South of the Province of Shirwan, to the Mouth of the River Kbesell on the Coast of the Country of Chowarazm: The Compass of this Sea may be about 450 German Leagues.

The Waters of the Caspian Sea are extreme-Waters ly salt towards the Middle, but not so much salt along the Coasts, because of the great Number of Rivers which on all sides empty their Waters into it; insomuch that there are Parts of this Sea towards the Coasts of Gilan and Mazanderan, where the Waters are rather fresh than

falt.

II.

ous ers,

or-

of

ref-

the

hat

red

the

of

the

ins.

ind

fe-

· a

ue be-

act

he

ted

we

In-

ea,

all

mirn

he

be

fo

he

ty,

to

es;

by

s.]

It abounds exceedingly with all forts of ex-Abounds cellent Fish, and the Sturgeons, Salmons, Whi-with all tings, Salmon Trouts, and several other forts forts of of Fish which this Sea breeds, crowd in Spring in fuch Shoals, to get into the Mouths of the Rivers, and the fresh Water, that 'tis incredible what Quantities are taken of them yearly in that Season. They catch also Carps and Bream, which is somewhat extraordinary for a Sea whose Waters are falt, as those of the Ca/pian really are. All these different forts of Fish are larger and fatter than elsewhere, especially the Whitings, which the Russians call Bielluga: The Biellu-This Fish is peculiar to the Caspian and Blacksa. Sea, for which Reason some pretend these two Aa3

OI

ho

Se

W

fe

be

w

tw

on

ki/

N

is (

in

of

of

fre

bed

ous

acc

to I

pia

ver

Sea

diti

Wit

Rea

fee

go

mai

lo n

Lal

us 1

fect

eve

Seas have a subterraneous Communication. Some of these Fishes are 20 Foot long; they are in some measure shaped like Pike, and eat like Sturgeon, but their Flesh is perfectly white, from which they take their Name. 'Tis the fame fort of Fish which is taken in the Danube, and which is call'd Hausen in Austria. The Carps caught there are also of an extraordinary Size, and very often those are taken about the Mouth of the Wolga, which are five Foot long. This Sea also breeds Sea-Dogs, and a very monstrous Fish, which are all Head and Tail, and not good to eat, They fay these last are so strong that they eafily overturn small Fishing-Boats with their Tail.

Neither ebbs nor flows.

Depth.

The Caspian Sea neither ebbs nor flows, it being nothing but the Winds which make it swell or beat upon one Coast or the other, according to the different Motions which they give its Waters, just as 'tis observed upon the Coasts of the Baltick Sea. The Waters of the Caspian Sea have the greenish Colour common to all Sea-Water, except towards the Coast of Gilan, where they appear white, occasion'd by the Clay-Bottom which runs all along that Coast, and in the Gulf of Yemba, where they appear black, because the Bottom is all over very marshy on that side.

This Sea is 60 or 70 Fathom deep every where thro' the Middle of it, but towards the Coasts there is very little Water, and especially on the western Side, where, for a good League into the Sea, one feldom finds above 18 Foot Water; particularly on the Coast of Gilan, one finds but from fix to nine Foot within that Distance, which renders that Province altogether unaccessible from the Sea: and as towards

the Province of Shirwan, all the Coast is but

one

1.

n.

ey

cat

te,

he

be,

ps

e,

th

115

us

ot

ng:

its

1t

it

C-

ey

ne

he

on

of

Dy

at

e-

ry

16

ly

ue

ot

ne

at

e-

ds

ut

one Rock, as far as the River Agragan, in the Country of Dagbestan, where no Anchor will hold, it is almost inaccessible also, the there be Water enough.

There is no Port on all the West side of this Destitute Sea, except that of Baku in the Province of Shir of Ports. wan, neither is that fit but for small Vessels, feeing it has but ten Foot of Water: the best Road along this Coast is that of Terki, where there is secure Anchorage enough between the Isle of Zezen and the Continent. But on the eastern Coast there is the Port of Man-Mankishkishlak, in the Country of Chowarazm, to the lak Port, North of the Mouth of the River Amu, which is excellent, and the only good Port to be found in that Sea: nevertheless, as it is in the Hands of the Tatars, as well as all the Orienal Shores of this Sea, 'tis of very little use to those who frequent it, tho they have great need of Ports; because that Sea is very outrageous and dangerous when the East and West Winds blow, on

account of its Narrowness. The Philosophers and Physicians have hither-what beto rack'd their Wits, to conceive how the Caf-comes of pian Sea receiving the Waters of so many Ri-the Waters vers, and having no Communication with other running Seas, should always continue in the same Con-into it. dition, without any visible Augmentation; but without having Recourse to so many forced Reasons as have been given on this Subject, I fee nothing to hinder why these Waters may not go off thro' the Bottom of the Sea, in the same manner that they enter by the Sides; for fince 10 many Mines which have overflow'd, so many Lakes and Pools form'd by Earthquakes, leave us no room to doubt but the Earth is interfected by Veins of Water, which communicate every where with the Surface; those Veins can-

Aa 4

no

of Cara

Buga.

not all meet at the Bottom of the Sea but to receive the Water of it, which they fend out again upon the Land, by innumerable Springs. Without that continual Circulation of Waters, and if so many Rivers, which on all Sides empty themselves into the Seas, should draw their Sources elsewhere than from those same Seas, it would be impossible but the Earth would be Whirlpool overflow'd in less than a Year. In the mean while, they pretend there is a fort of Whirlpool in the great Gulf of Carabuga, upon the Coast of Chowarazm, about the 42 Degree of Latitude, by which the Waters of this Sea must partly discharge themselves. And even an Officer, who was for some time Prisoner among the Uzbek Tatars of the Country of Chowarazm, upon an Occasion of what I shall mention elsewhere, affured some of my Friends, that he had been upon that Gulf with a small Boat, and that his Rowers were obliged to use all their Strength to keep by the Coast; inasmuch as he affirm'd, that from the Entrance of that Gulf into the Caspian Sea, the attractive Force of the Stream of that Whirlpool, which is in the Middle of that Gulf, is so great, that putting off ever so little from the Coast, one is infallibly swallow'd up by the Rapidity of the Current. The Name of that Gulf, which fignifies in the Tatar Language, the Black Mouth, feems to give some Authority to that Relation; but I dare not, for all that, warrant the Truth of it, which Time alone must dis-And supposing also that there was such an Abyss in the Gulf of Carabuga, 'tis impossible a Quantity of Waters should be discharg'd by it proportionable to that which enters by fo many Rivers into this Sea: confequently one must

II.

to

out

gs.

rs,

oty

eir

as,

be

an

rl-

he

of

uft

)f-

ng

m,

le-

he

it,

all

ch

at

ce

It-

n-.

ch ck at nt if-ih i-id fo

ne st must always have recourse to subteraneous Filtrations for the Remainder of those Waters.

I know not if the Troops of Zingis Chan, be Never ennot the only ones which have encompass'd the compass'd Caspian Sea since the World began; at least we by any find no Traces in History, that any other zingis. Prince has ever attempted this Enterprize, nei-Chan's, ther before nor after that Conqueror; and, to fay the Truth, I don't believe, as Affairs stand at present, any other Nation besides that of the Tatars, is capable of bringing such an Expedition to bear, feeing that above one half of the Shores of that Sea from the River Bustro, taking a Compass by the North as far as the Mouth of the River Kefell, is intirely uncultivated. Nevertheless, there is no doubt but the late Emperor of Russia would have undertaken, and probably executed fo glorious a Defign, if he had lived a while longer. And without some Military fuch military Expedition, we shall be a long Expedititime yet coming at any tolerable Knowledge of ons fervices the eastern Coasts of that Sea; because private able in Discove-Persons, qualify'd with what Character they ries. will, can never find means to visit the divers Tatar Ords which inhabit those Coasts, without greatly exposing themselves to all forts of Evils.





CHAP.

(

0

tl

th

ti

ti

L

tl

d

th

SI

tá

th

D

P

W

bo

fii

ha

th

fo

I

fo

Ti

13

CHAP. V.

OBSERVATIONS relating to INDIA.

SECT. I.

Of the Mohammedan Kingdoms founded in India before the Conquest of the Moguls.

History of India confused.

Othing is more confuss'd and imperfect if our Authors can run up the History of them as high as Soltan Babor, the first Great Mogul, who retired there about the Year of the Hegra 904, A. D. 1498. they are content to let all the former Ages lie bury'd in Oblivion; looking upon all which pass'd in India before that Period as infignificant, and not worth recording; but if they will confult that little which has been already given us by feveral Authors relating to the Oriental History, they will find that India was conquer'd by the Arabs at the Beginning of the eighth Century, and that Babor only succeeded to Part of a great Monarchy, which had been founded there 500 Years before by Mahmud Gazni, the first who assum'd the Title of Soltan.

India conquer'd by Mahmûd Gazni.

This great Prince first entred India in the Year of the Hegra 392, and of Christ 1001, where his Father Sabestebin had done mighty Exploits before him. India was then divided among several Kings; of which one, who had the Title of Balbara, (which signifies King of Kings) and reign'd at Kanue, a City on the Ganges, was the Chief. The Oriental Authors, who

who mightily celebrate the Actions of this Monarch, account the Conquest of the Kingdom of Balbara, which at length he achieved, the greatest of all his Exploits. In short, they pretend that he conquer'd all the Country on this fide the Ganges, from North to South; and to judge by the Descriptions they give of it, India must then, both for Riches and Magnificence, have

far exceeded what it is at present.

The Successors of Soltan Mahmud Gazni con-Kingdom tinued to enlarge their Conquests for some time, of Lawhur till their Power declining, as well thro' domestick war found-Feuds as the prevailing Fortune of the Family of ed 1155. Gaury; Khofru Shab the 14th, and last Monarch of the House of Gazny, retired from Gazna to Lawbûr in India, where he fix'd his Seat about the 550 He gira, A. D. 1155. and foon after was despoil'd of all by Hussain Gaury, Founder of the Family of Gaur, to which the Empire of Persia and the Indies pass'd from that of Gazny. Shabeb Al din FV. of that Race, conquer'd Multân and Delly (which had probably revolted on the Declension of the Family of Gazny) in the Kingdom Year of the Hegra 571, 1135. And after his of Delly Death, which happen'd in 602, A. D. 1205, founded his Governors divided his Dominions into three Parts, of which Gazna, Multan, and Delly, were the Capitals. The two last Kingdoms became in a few Years united by Iletmish, firnam'd Shams al din, a Turk; who, after he had usurp'd the Crown of Delly, conquer'd that of Multan *. As we can trace his Succesfors as low as Ala l'din, who died in 717. A.D. 1317, in all Probability Soltan Mahmud, Grandfon of Firuz Shah, who reign'd at Delly when Timûr bek conquer'd that Kingdom in 801. A.D. 1398, was of his Posterity.

* Herb. p. 288. + Ibid. 28 1.

What

n

1

tl

m

0

W

In

in

th

Ki

Co

wh

Pe

bet

me

of

the

of

from

from

Scra

if t

Searc

What belong'd of the Indies to the Dominion of Gazna, pass'd from the Family of Gaur to that of the Chowarazm Shabs, in 611. A. D. 1214; when it was fubdu'd by Sultan Mohammed; and from them to the Moguls, by the Death of Sultan Gelâl aldin, in 628. A. D. 1230. After the Death of Zingis Chan, the Kingdom of Gazna, which reach'd as far as the Indus, fell to Zagatai in his Share of the Empire; but it was soon taken from his Successors by the Family of Kurt, (which sprung up in Chorasan after that of the Gaurs) to one of whom, viz. Gayath aldin IV. Soltan of that Dynasty, it was confirm'd by Algayetu*, while Governor of Chorasan under his Brother Kazan Chan, about the Year 698. A.D. 1298, and continued in his Posterity till Timur bek united the Indies to the rest of his Conquests in the Year aforesaid.

On the Death of Abusaid Mirza, the 5th Succeffor of Timûr bek, his Dominions, which extended from Cashgar to Tauris, became divided among his Sons. Olug bek, his fifth Son, posses'd the Government of Cabul and Gazna, to which that of the Indies, at least so far as the Indus, as it had been all along, was join'd. Omar Sheich, his fixth Son, had only the Government of the Town of Andekan to his Share; which on his Death in 899. A. D. 1492, fell to his Son Soltan Babor; who being driven out of his Territories, with the rest of the Posterity of Timur, by Shai bek the Uzbek in 904. A. D. 1498. fled first to Gazna, and thence to India; where the Moguls having already fome Footing, he the more easily extended his Conquest over the Kingdom of Delly, which, after the Death of Timur bek, seems to have return'd to the Obedience of its natural Lords.

^{*} Herb. 775.

We see here a continued Succession of Mo-Moguls hammedan Princes reigning over the Indies, in not the first those very Countries where the Moguls are now medans fettled, for near 500 Years before Soltan Babor in India. fet Footing there. This shews the Error of a late History * of the Mogul Empire in India, which, accounting for the Original of the Potans or Patans, who conquer'd Delly and Gezirat, makes them a Colony of ordinary Merchants of Arabia, who first settling at Masulipatan, a Town on the Coast of Coromandel, (or rather Cori bandel) which they built, penetrated thro' the Country as far up as Delly, of which they made a Conquest about 400 Years before that of Timûr bek. So confounding the Original of those Kings whom the Indians or Moguls, by way, I suppose, of Nickname, call Potans or Patans, with that of the other Mohammedan Kings (found in the Peninfula's or Isles of the Indies, at the Time of the Portuguese first coming thither by Sea) who probably enough pass'd thither immediately from Arabia: whereas the Kings of Delly, Gezirat, and other Parts of the Continent of India, were of Persian Extraction, which might have been a Mixture of Turks, Persians, and Arabians. And the Difference between the two forts of Kings may, in a great measure, be distinguish'd by their Titles; those of Arab Descent being stiled Malek; whereas the Patans are always qualify'd with the Title of Shah, which is peculiar to the Persian Kings.

[* This History, publish'd first in French by Father Catrou, from the Memoirs of M. Manouchi, pretended to be extracted from the Mogul Chronicle, is an injudicious Collection of Scraps from sundry Authors, mixt with Fables to fill up the History; which might have been tolerably well supply'd, if the Author, whoever he be, had taken more care to search proper Books for Materials.]

Hence also may plainly be discover'd, both how the Mohammedan Religion and the Persian Language came to prevail in the Heart of Hendoston; the one as well as the other, having, in all Probability, been introduced by the Patans, and not by the Moguls, as the Authors who have hitherto treated of India have imagin'd; for want of knowing so much of the History as I have briefly given of that Country, and which I hope to be able one Day to put in a better light.]

Moguls of By the Zagatais, mention'd p. 352. must be India cal- understood the Troops of the Great Mogul; for led Zaga- as the Tatars of Great Bucharia retain'd the tais by the Name of Zagatais when they conquer'd Indostan, under the Conduct of Tamerlin, and that their

under the Conduct of Tamerlin, and that their Descendents are still in Possession of that Empire under the Domination of the Great Moguls, whose Family is the only remaining Branch of the Posterity of Tamerlin, the Tatars as well as the other Orientals constantly confer on them the Name of Zagatais, to distinguish them on one side from the Uzbek Tatars, who at present possess Great Bucharia; and on the other side, from the antient Inhabitants of the Empire of

Call them- Indostan, who are at present subject to the Zaselves Mo-gatais; but among themselves they take the

guls. Name of Moguls.

Ten Idola. 'Tis fince the Princes of the House of Timurters to one bek have posses'd the Indies, that the MobamMohammedan Worship [introduced many Ages before]
India. has been [firmly] establish'd there; so that this
Religion is at present the prevailing Religion in
the Dominions of the Great Mogul, tho there
are above ten Idolaters to one Mobammedan.

are above ten Idolaters to one Mohammedan. And as these Princes hold their Empire purely by right of Conquest, they are always obliged to maintain powerful Armies on soot, to keep their Subjects in awe, because divers Rayas or petty

ido-

34 G

In

be

an

Wa

T

ze

Gi

Ck

SI

H

at

60

n

è

C

e

Idolatrous Princes who possess the mountainous Provinces of that Country, and who all pretend to be descended from the antient Kings of the Indies, desire no better than to find some savourable Opportunity to recover their Rights.

The present Great Mogul is the 12th Descen-Present dant of Tamerlan in a right Line. See for the Great Mopul, gul.

the Voyages of Bernier and Thevenot.

SECT. II.

Of the Town, of Cabul, and Kingdom of Cashmir.

THE Town of Cabul is the Capital of a situation. Province, which is at prefent under the Dominion of the Great Mogul. It is fituate in 34 Deg. of Latit. towards the Frontiers of Great Bucharia, at the fouthern Foot of the Mountains which separate the Dominions of the Trade in Great Mogul from that part of Grand Tatary: it slaves and is one of the finest Towns of the North of the Horses. Indies; 'tis great, rich, and well peopled, and because it is consider'd as the Key of the Dominions of the Great Mogul, on the fide of Persia and Great Bucharia, Care is had to keep it always in a good Posture of Defence. Town is the Depository of all the Merchandizes which pass from the Indies into Persia and Great Bucharia; the Uzbeks Subject to the Chan of Balk come thither in Troops, with Slaves of both Sexes, and efpecially with Tatar Horses, in which a considerable Trade is driven at this Town; for it is reported that above 60000 are brought there every Year.

The

Ch

as]

of

tua

of

Cit

bei

ly i

tha

hig

mag

on

the

tre

Ho

the

tual

Clo

mîr

have

geth

noth

or t

inch

are 1

the .

mor

to e

is ce

dusti

varn

whic

the !

with faid,

T

1

The Country about the Town of Cabul is very fertil, and all the Necessaries of Life are found there in great Plenty, and at a moderate Price; there is also Wine made there, which is pretty good, but it does not keep. The Inhabitants of the Town are mostly Pagans, tho the Mohammedan Religion is the establish dWorship there.

Kingdom of Cashmir.

Cashmir.

The Kingdom of Cashemir is situate at the extreme Parts of the Dominions of the Great Mogul: 'Tis bounded on the East with Tibet, on the South with the Provinces of Labor and Cabul, to the West with Grand Bucharia, and on the North by Little Bucharia, or the Kingdom of Cashgar. It may be about thirty German Leagues long, and twenty broad, and is intirely inclosed with high Mountains which separate the Indies from Great Tatary, insomuch that there is no entring on any side but by passing Rocks of a prodigious Height.

Once very powerful.

This little Kingdom heretofore had the Dominion over the rest of the Indies, but at this present time, it is in a manner reduced to one single Valley, whose Fertility and Beauty make amends for what it wants in extent. One breathes there a temperate and charming Air, which partakes nothing of that burning Heat with which one is almost stifled all over the rest of the Indies; and all the Fruits and Pulse which we have in Europe grow there in abundance, without requiring looking after.

River.

A thousand little Springs which issue on all sides from the Mountains, form there a fine River, which after watering the Plains of this little Kingdom falls down the Rocks of an associations Height, to go meet the River Indus at the Town of Atek. This River carries Boats

as

as large as the Sein, and passes thro' the middle

of the Town of Cashmir.

S

e

C

1-

re

It

11

1-

is a-

us

as

Cashmir is the Capital of the Kingdom, si- City Cashmate in 37° 30' of Latit. on the fide of a Lake mir. of fresh Water about six Leagues round. City has no Walls, but is very fair and populous, being about three Quarters of a League long, and half a League broad: The Houses are mostly of Wood, but are never the worst built for that, and are commonly two or three Stories high. The Situation of this Town is perfectly magnificent; the Mountains which begin to rife on the other fide of the Lake, two Leagues from the City, form the Prospect of an Amphitheatre the finest in the World, all over be-set with Houses of Pleasure; beyond which one sees the most distant Rocks, whose Tops are perpetually cover'd with Snow, touching the very Clouds.

The Inhabitants of the Kingdom of Cash-Inhabitants are for the most part Mobammedans. They tants very have exceeding fair Complexions, and are altogether as well made as Europeans, partaking nothing either of the Tatars their Neighbours, or the other Indians; the Women especially are inchantingly beautiful, for which reason they are mightily sought after at Agra, and all over the Indies. The Cashmireans are reputed to be more ingenious than the rest of the Indians, and to excel in Poetry and all other Sciences: This is certain, that they are very laborious and industrious. They possess the Secret of making varnish'd Wainscot, and imbroider'd Stuffs, which are mightily esteem'd in the Indies.

There are many other little Vallies amidst the Mountains which belong to this Kingdom, with regard to which nothing particular can be faid, because they are as so many Parts separa-

VOL, II. Bb to

K

E

W

ha

in

th

th

en

M

tri

wl

of

wh

nif

on Ye tha fen fam

Ruand

tho pre

ted from the rest of the World, who have no more Commerce with their Neighbours than they think fit themselves, because it is impossible to enter amongst them against their Wills. All that we know for a certainty is, that the Inha. bitants are very like the Cashmireans, and enjoy much the fame natural Advantages with them.

Government.

The Kingdom of Cashmir has always had its own Kings, until the beginning of the last Age that it fell into the Hands of the Great Moguls, by means of a Civil War which then rag'd there; and ever fince that time those Princes looking upon it as one of the fairest Jewels in their Crown, have done every thing which might contribute to the Embellishment of it. They also make small Progresses there from time to time, to enjoy the Delights which the happy Situation of the Country affords. See the Voyage of Bernier.

Sirr Indi. or Behat.

The Sirr Indi or Bebat, is a confiderable River which has its Source towards the 34th Deg. of Latit. in the Mountains which separate the Country of Balk from the Dominions of the Great Mogul; its Course is nearly from N.N.W. and S. S. E. and after it has washed 100 Leagues of Land falls into the River Indus in 49 Deg. 50 Min. of Latit. to the North of the City of Multan. It is the fame River to which our Geographers have given the Name of Behat.

CHAP

10

in le

a-

Dy

ad

aft

10-

in ich

it.

the

the

ble

4th

the

W.

ues

50

tan.

ners

P.

CHAP. VI.

OBSERVATIONS relating to CHINA, subject to the Tatars, or rather to the Mungals.

SECT. I.

Kitay, or Cathay and China the same. Also Chanbalik and Pekin the same. Of Nanking, the Chinese Wall, and River Hoanghso.

THE Empire of Kitay or Cathay has been Kitay, or a long time the Object of the fruitless Cathay. Enquiries of our Geographers, who right or wrong would place it in Grand Tatary [as they have done that of Prester John, as they call it in Africa] and God knows how many Whimfies they have publish'd on those Subjects within these three last Ages. Tho we have been plainly enough inform'd ever fince the Year 1295, by Marco Polo in his Relations of the Eastern Countries, that Cathay is no other than the Empire which is known to us at prefent by the Name of China: nevertheless the grand Imaginations which this pretended Tatarian Empire had furnish'd them with, had made such an Impression on their Minds, that it is but within these few Years they could be thorowly undeceived upon that Article; and all agree unanimously at prefent that Cathay and China are one and the same Empire, tho the Tatars, Turks, Persians, Russians, and other eastern People always did and still do call China the Empire of Kitay.

By the Country of Almak, p. 96. our Au-Almak or thor understands Southern China, which com-South prehends all the Provinces of that vast Empire others

B b 2 which Mangi.

(

ti

h

in

W

fei

ne

Co

fer

Or

in Con

the

to

por Otl

till

had

Zing

and

124

pret

fuch

to k

cam

last 1

from

by 1

cult there

T

which lie to the South of the River Kiang, and which fell not into the Hands of the Moguls till after the Death of Zingis Chan. Other Authors call this Part of China Mangi.

The Empire of Kitay or China is too well known at present to need a Description in this Place; I shall content my felf then with faying by the way, that the Chinese have for the most part the Complexion and Shape of the Face pretty like the Europeans, but the Eyes slit like the Callmaks, and the Nose a little flat: Nevertheless there are found many among them in whom these Deformities appear very little; and one of my Friends affured me he knew there a Man of the Posterity of Confucius, whose Eyes were as large, and Nose as proportionable as any Man's in Europe.

Peking, or Chan ba-

The City of Peking is fituate in 40 Deg. of Latit. I'tis now no longer a Dispute that it is the fame City mention'd in Marco Polo by the Name of Chan-balik, which signifies the Town of the Lord. As this City is at present the Residence of the Emperors of China, one may well conclude that it is one of the greatest Cities and best peopled of that Empire. the Fineries of Europe and the whole East are carry'd there in Quantities from all fides; and 'tis commonly believ'd that that City surpasses Great Or- at present all the other Cities of the Universe in der in the Riches and Number of Inhabitants; which did not hinder fo good Order from reigning there in the Time of the deceased Emperor of China, that

one of the Father Jesuits, a Favourite of that

Monarch, affur'd a Friend of mine who was at

Peking in 1720, that for the space of three Years

City.

Sieur none had been put to death for any Crime by the Hand of Justice: which may be look'd upon fix'd in some measure as an Effect of that great Se-

verity

verity which that Prince had employ'd in the

first Years of his Reign.

f

S

1

e

e

1-

11

e

d

es

in

ot

he

at

at

at

ILL

by

on Se-

ty

Since the late Emperor had finish'd the Reduction of the Chinese Nation under the Tatar Yoke, he obliged all the Chinese who dwelt before in the None but inner Part of Peking, to quit it and go live in Tatars the outward Circumference of the City, in such dwell wise that the inside of Peking is inhabited at pre-within it. sent only by Tatars, and those among the Chinese who are actually in the Service of the Court. The Roman Catholicks have at pre-Romans sent three publick Churches in that City, and have three the Russians have one of the Greek Worship. Churches the Russians have one of the Greek Worship. There, in the Voyages to China of Nieubosf, and P. du Comte.

Authors differ much among themselves about Taking of the Manner in which the Town of Peking fell in-Peking by to the Hands of Zingis Chan. Our Author re-Zingis ports that it was done without striking a Stroke. Other Oriental Authors affirm that it was not till after a very hard Siege, and that the Befieged had fuffer'd a cruel Famine, that the Troops of Zingis Chan made themselves Masters of it: and the Monk Carpin, who was fent in the Year 1246 by Pope Innocent IV. into Grand Tatary, pretends they were the Besiegers who suffer'd such a horrible Famine that they were constrain'd to kill every tenth Man to subsist till Provisions came to them; and that they took the City at last by a subterranean Passage which they carry'd from their Camp to the very middle of the City, by which entring by Night it was not difficult to make themselves Masters of it. See thereupon the History of Zingis Chan by the Sieur Petis de la Croix.

The Taking of the City of Peking may be fix'd at the Year of the Hegra 607, which answers

Moreri mistaken.

fwers to the Year of the Christian Æra 1210: and thereby one may fee that Moreri and the Authors whom he hath follow'd are much deceiv'd, when they affirm that the pretended Tatars of Niucheu, or of the North, made in the Year 1206 the first Invasion into China, and that they were chased thence by the Tatars of Samarkant, or of the West, in the Year 1278. who made themselves afterwards Masters of all the Country: for it was precifely about the Year 1206 that Zingis Chan made the first Irruption into China; in the Year 1210 he took the City of Pekin, and afterwards subdued all the Northern China; and about the Year 1268 his Grandson Coplai Chan completed the Conquest of all China, where his Descendants reigned after him during almost an Age. been more than once observ'd already.

(

f

is

h

W 1

n

a

P

21

it

C

b

th

fr

ti

di

fa

th

M

H M:

fu

the

to Sil

14

fir

Ha the

the

the

ng

Nanking formerly the Emperors.

The City of Nanking was heretofore the Residence of the Emperors of China; 'tis situate in the Seat of 32 Deg. of Latit. and fix Leagues from the fouthern Bank of the great River of Kiang. That Town has been formerly of a prodigious Extent, but at present that the Imperial Residence is remov'd to Pekin, the City of Nankin has loft much of its former Luftre: Nevertheless'tis given out to be still above twelve German Leagues in Compass, and to have some Millions of Inhabitants.

Magnificent Streets.

Arches.

Nothing is to be feen more magnificent than the great Streets of that City; forasmuch as they are all as strait as a Line, and paved with great square blue Stones: They are all of a great breadth, and adorn'd in feveral Places Triumphal with stately triumphal Arches of white Marble. At the end of every hundred Toises they have Gates, which are shut at Night to keep out Thieves; and the Houses which are on both fides these Streets appear with a charming Uniformity, d

1-

e-

2-

le

d

of

3,

11

e

k

11

S

S

1

formity, tho they are no more than one Story high. Nanking is built square, as are almost all the Towns of China; and tho it is at some distance from the River of Kiang, they have made Canals in divers Places, by means of which Ships may come up even into the City. The Viceroy of the southern Provinces of China residence makes his Residence at present in this City, of the and a good Body of Tatars are always kept Viceroy here to be at hand in case of any Revolt in Southern those Parts. 'Tis in this City that that samous provinces. Porcelain Tower is to be seen, whereof one finds ample Descriptions in the Voyages to China.

Chinese Wall.

Every body has heard of the great Wall of Chinese China; wherefore I shall only observe here that it was rais'd * heretofore by the Emperors of China against the Incursions of the Tatars, and begins at the River Hoangso on the Frontiers of the Callmaks about the 35th Deg. of Latitude, from whence it draws nearly to the N. N. E. until having come to the 42d Deg. of Latit. it turns directly East, and runs continually in near the same Line, till it arrives at the Gulf of Corea near the Fortress of Shangh Hay †, about the 40th

* [This Wall, according to Couplet in his Tab. Chron. Monarchiæ Sinicæ, p. 16. was built in the 24th Year of Xi Hoam ti, or rather Shi Hoangh ti, (for Couplet as well as Martini follows the Portugal Pronunciation) which answers to the Year before Christ 222. Kæmpser refers it to the Year 246, by mistake placing the Building of the Wall in the sirst Year of that Monarch's Reign, as appears by adding 24 to 222. He also following the Japan Chronicle, calls him Sikwo or Sino Siko, giving him the Epithet of Cruel, which justly belong'd to him. Hist. Japan, p. 161.]

[† The Portugals, from whom our Accounts of China first came, write this Place Xam Hay, the French Cham Hay; from whence others have made Kam Hay, as it is the Original, p. 118. and thus Names are corrupted: for the Orthography according to our Language is Shangh Hay, the Portugal X being equivalent to Sh, and m Final to

ng, or rather ngh.]

B b 4

Deg.

Deg. of Latit, and because the Coasts of China are very low on that fide, infomuch that the Tide of the Eastern Ocean coming in covers a great Space of the Country, which remains dry at Ebb; they have been obliged to continue this Wall for fifty Leagues (each of which is exactly 360 geometrical Paces) into the Sea, in order to prevent being furpriz'd that way. 'Tis reported that this Wall from beginning to end is above 350 German Leagues in length; and 'tis aftonishing, that after sublisting so many Ages, it is still in as good a Condition as if it had not been built above thirty Years. The Foundation every where is of Free-stone, fix Foot high, and the rest to the Height of five Fathom, is built of Brick, fo that it is full fix Fathom high, and about four Fathom broad. It is all cover'd on the out-fide with Free-stone, at least in that Part thro' which one goes to Selinginskoy; and at the Distance of every 500 Fathom there are built great square Towers about 12 Fathom in height, which forbid the Approach. That which is most admirable in this Wall is, that it is continued over the highest Mountains equally the same as thro' the Plains and Valleys; infomuch that one of the Jesuits who was in great Esteem with the late Emperor of China affirms, that having had the Curiofity to measure the Height in a certain Place, he found it to be raised 1036 Foot above the Horizon. See the Voyages of Nieuhoff, le Compte, and Ysbrandt Ides.

River Hoanghso.

River Hoangh-Muran.

The River Hoanglo, called by the Tatars Cara fo, or Cara Muran, is one of the greatest Rivers in the World; it rifes in 23 Deg. of Latit. upon the Confines of Tangut and China, out of a great Lake which is incompass'd with high Mountains

which

C

W

C

th

th

th

R

pi

m

an

tit

tis

ter

tha

eit

which separate those two Dominions, and running from thence Northward it passes hard by the Frontiers of the Province of Shensi and Tangut as far as the 37th Deg. of Latit. where it throws it self without the great Wall to water Tibet; afterwards it continues running North as far as the 39°30′ of Latit. when returning to the S. E. it again passes the great Wall about the 38th Deg. of Latit. and re-enters China; then it always pursues the same S. E. Course to the 34°20′ Latit. when it turns to the East: which Course it keeps till it falls into the Chinese Ocean in the 34° of Latit. after a Course of above 500 German Leagues.

The Water of this River is not good to drink, Its Water for it is very muddy, inclining to a dark yel-yellow Colow; which bad Quality it takes from the Salt-lour. peter, wherewith the Mountains, which this River washes without the great Wall, are exceedingly stored; for from its Rise till it passes without the Wall, its Waters are good and clear. 'Tis on account of its Waters being of this brown Colour that the Chinese have given it the Name of Hoangso, or the Brown River, and the Tatars that of Cara Muran, or the Black River: However the Chinese have the Art of Way of

Making it drinkable, by means of Alom.

As this River runs no less than 200 Leagues among Mountains and Rocks of a prodigious Overflows. Height, there falls from all sides so great a Quan-in spring tity of Water in the Spring and Autumn, that and Autis very subject to overflow and make frightful tumn. Havock in the neighbouring Provinces, of which the Chinese have had sad Experience but too often: For the same Reason also it is so rapid that 'tis impossible to mount against the Stream not to be

precipitating the saline Parts of this Water, and fining the

be hauled up the River either by Horses or Men: and yet tho this River be every where of a great Breadth, it is navigable but in sew Places, on account of the great Inequality of its Bottom; neither does it over-abound with Fish, which probably is the Effect of the bad Quality of its Waters. See the Relations of China by Nieuhoff and P. le Comte.

SECT. II.

Of the Expulsion of the Tatars by the Bonzas, and their second Conquest of China under Zungh te.

f

a

h

fi

V

fo

at

h

ar

Pe

th

ec

pi

W

th

du

Tatars
driven out
of China
by the
Bonzas.

HE Tatars after they had been settled in China above an Age and a half from the time they first got Footing there under Zingis Chan, had been driven out again a little before the Expedition of Amir Timur thither by the Intrigues of the Chinese Bonzas, whom they had brought upon their Backs by endeavouring to introduce the Worship of the Lamas into the Empire to their Prejudice; and as one Part of those fugitive Tatars pass'd out of the western Parts of China, 'tis likely that some of them went for Refuge to Tamerlan, and persuaded that Conqueror to turn his Arms on that fide, in order to add one more fine Conquest to so many other Exploits, which had already spread the Terror of his Name thro' the whole Earth.

[Possibly the Person who set Timur-bek upon this Expedition was Elchy Timur, the same probably with Taizy Aglen, p. 531. who le Croix * tells us went to the Court of that Prince, and

^{[*} Abridgment of the History of the Successors of Genghiz Chan, at the end of his Life.] lived

lived with him till his Death, when returning to Ulugbiurt [or Ula in the Eastern Tatary] he ascended the Throne in 1405. At this time the Empire of the Moguls seems to have been dwindled to nothing. All the Country of Mogulistan was in the Hands of the Princes of Calbgar or their Confederates when Timur-bek over-ran it; and by le Croix's Account, the two Chans of Ulugbiurt, who were all that fucceeded Elcby Timur, lived fo obscurely that they are scarce reckon'd among the Chans. Be that as it will, 'twas doubtless this low Condition of the Chans of Ula, which gave the Chinese Bonzas an Opportunity of driving the Tatars out of China, who afterwards recover'd their Possession there when the Power of the Chans of Ula began to enlarge it felf.]

I believe it will not be unacceptable to make fome Observations upon the House which reigns at present in China, and on the Means which it has made use of to ascend the Throne of that vast Empire, and to secure it self therein, in such a manner that hereafter the Chinese will never be able to throw off the Yoke, except by some extraordinary Turn of Providence.

I am not aftonish'd that Zingis Chan should Last conattempt the Conquest of China, at a time when quest of the
he had numerous Armies, considerable Riches, Tatars
and powerful Allies at his Disposal: but that a
petty Chan of Ula, who was scarce able to take
the Field with 15000 Men, durst form and execute the Design of seizing so powerful an Empire, is what surpasses all Imagination, and
which ought necessarily to make us look upon
the Prince, who undertook with so much Conduct and so sew Forces, so vast a Design, as
infinitely superior to our Alexanders and Caesars.

Observations on China, The Empire of China enjoy'd a profound

Zungh te Chan of Ula conquers China:

772

Peace, and had also constrain'd the Mungals of the East to pay it a yearly Tribute, when Zungtby [Zungh te] Grandfather of the deceased Emperor of China, having succeeded his Father Mansueu Chan, in the Dignity of Chan of Ula, conceiv'd the Defign of freeing his Nation from the Chinese Yoke, and to carry the Theatre of War into the Provinces subject to that Empire, to try how far Fortune and his own Skill would carry him: But forasmuch as his Forces were in no manner answerable to a Project of that fize, he held fecret Intelligence with some Takes seve- great Mandarins who were banish'd into the ral Towns Province of Leastun, by whose Assistance he made an Irruption into that Province with 1 5000 Horse, took several considerable Towns, and began to make his Name formidable to the

Chinese.

The Court of China fent indeed a powerful Army against him; but Zungt-by having by a very particular Conduct found the Secret to captivate by his Affability and grand Air of Benevolence the Hearts of those whom he ruined, always gained his Point; and having at length carry'd the Capital of the Province, all that the Chinese Army which took the Field against him could do, feeing him supported by all the Inhabitants of the Province, was to hinder him from

passing the great Wall, and penetrating into the Heart of the Empire.

Whilst this was doing on the side of the East, very thick Clouds arose in the Provinces of the Lycungz West: several Bands of Robbers which before takes Peking, and infested those Provinces, having joined together about the Year 1630, under the Command the Throne. of one Lycungz, took feveral Towns and Provinces, and went at length with innumerable Forces

Takes the Capital City.

mounts

in Leao-

tung.

ca te th

ſ

W

W

5

W

ai

ec

of

fe

of

it

U-

be to th

VIC

Forces to beliege the Person of the Emperor in the City of Pekin: The Conclusion of that Siege was fuch, that the City having been taken, and the House of Tai minga suppress'd, Lycungz usurrped the Throne; and feeing that U-sanguei, who commanded the Chinese Army which made head against the Tatars, was the only Person who might be afterwards in a Condition to dispute the Empire with him, he omitted nothing that might gain him: but U-sanguei, who aspir'd to the Throne U-sanguei himself, having refus'd all the Offers of Ly-calls in cungz, that Usurper saw himself obliged to take Zung te the Field against him. U-sanguei finding him-against the self too weak to resist two such powerful Fine felf too weak to relift two fuch powerful Enemies at a time, clap'd up a Peace immediately with Zungt-by, and propos'd to him also to come to his Affistance against the Usurper.

Zungt-by looking upon this Invitation as an Leaotun Opportunity which might carry him a great subdued by way, accepted the Proposal; and having left Zung te. 5000 Tatars in the Province of Leaotun, which was all in his Possession, he went to join the Chinese General at the Head of 10000 Tatars and 20000 Leaotunians; after which they marched against Lycungz. In approaching the Army of the Rebels, Zungt-by propos'd to U-sanguei, that feeing the Chinese of the Southern and Western Provinces which compos'd almost all the Forces of the Enemies, dreaded extremely the Tatars, it would embarass them terribly if he should cause the Hair of all his Soldiers to be cut after the Tatar Fashion, because at that Sight they would take them all infallibly for Tatars. U-sanguei having follow'd that Counsel, the Rebels were entirely defeated, and constrained to fly towards Pekin. The victorious Army follow'd Rebels dethem close, and the Chinese General by the Ad-feated. vice of Zungt-by, made Proclamation that all those

those who did not take part with the Rebels should cut their Hair after the Tatar Manner, in order to diftinguish them upon the Occasion.

Lycungz having abandon'd the Town of Peking upon the Approach of the Vanquishers, it was agreed that Zungt-by with his Troops should remain near the City, while U-sanguei with his Army continued in pursuit of the Rebels till he had entirely dispersed them: But in the Absence of U-sanguei, Zungt-by having set to work the fame Talents which had been of fo great use to him in the Conquest of the Province of Leavtun, knew fo well how to gain the Friendship of all the chief Mandarins of the Empire, and proclaimed the Inhabitants of the Capital, that he found no

Emperor of China.

Brings the

China.

Difficulty in getting himself proclaim'd Emperor of China, and to maintain himself in possesfion of the Throne with the Approbation of the greatest part of the Nation. After which he made no Delay to impart this great Event to other Princes of his Nation, and to invite them to come and take share of so fair a Conquest, in Tatars into hopes to fish on their side also in troubled Waters; but when they were once enter'd into China with their Troops, Zungt-by contrived to separate them so dextrously, that they were intirely at his Discretion, and faw themselves infenfibly constrained to submit to his Orders.

U-sanguei Zungh te.

U-sanguei, who was carry'd away with the Submits to Zeal of pursuing the Rebels as far as the end of the Province of Yunan, having understood at length what pass'd at Pekin, return'd immediately with a firm Resolution not to suffer a foreign Prince to come to his Prejudice, and place himself upon a Throne, which he imagined he had so well merited himself; but being advanced near Pekin, he found the new Emperor in so good a Posture, and his new Subjects

jects so little inclin'd to change their Master, that he was obliged to rest contented with the Share which Zungt-by was willing to allow him of their common Conquest. But after the Death of Zungt-by and of his Son Chuncht-by, U-fan-Revoles. guei seeing the fair Opportunity of revenging himself of the Trick the first had play'd him, erected his Standard against the Tatars; and he wanted but little of being in possession of all the fouthern China, when Death feiz'd him in a very advanced Age. His Death changed the Face of Affairs with his Party; and the deceas'd Emperor Cang Hy, having by little and little found means to reduce the revolted Provinces to their Duty, did not forget to facrifice the two Sons, All his Fuand in general all the Family of U-sanguei, tomily cut the Security of his Government, under the spe-offcious Pretence of the great Rigour of the Chinese Laws in Cases of Rebellion.

SECT. III.

Of the Reign of Cangh Hy, the Laws he introduced, and the Methods he made use of to establish the Dominion of the Tatars in China.

THIS great Founder of the Tatar House of Tai cing, which reigns now in China, did not long enjoy the Fruit of his Labours; for Zunghte died in the Year 1644, and left his Son and Successfor Chuncht-hy, [Shun Chi] an Infant of 6 Years old, who died also in the flower of his Age in the Year 1662, at the time when his Son Cang Hy, Cangh Hy. who succeeded him, was no more than eight Years old. These two long Minorities ought naturally, it should seem, to have overturn'd a foreign

to

he fo

th

of

th

tic

his O

ou Re

Ri

fan

pai

the

Co

had

the

con

Tat

futu

Pre

tura

veri

of t

into

durf

gain

fudd and

nion

Mile

Emp

foreign Dominion which scarce had time to establish it self in China; but the Measures which Zungt Hy had taken during his Life, for the fecuring the Throne of China in his Family, were fo well executed after his Death, that nothing as ye thas been able to diffurb so successful an Usurpation.

Nevertheless it must also be own'd, that he had the good Fortune to leave his Son Chuncht Amavang Hy, in the Person of his Brother Amavang, a Brother to Tutor of a very extraordinary Capacity and Fidelity, and to find in his faid Son and in his Grandson, two Genius's of the first Order, who worthily maintain'd what he had begun with fo much fuccess: especially his Grandson Cang Hy, who died within these three Years, knew so well how to take his Measures, as soon as he came of Age, for reducing feveral Provinces which had declared themselves against the Tatar Government during his Minority, and to root out entirely for the Time to come all Occasions of fuch Practices, that the Empire has enjoy'd for these 50 Years so profound a Tranquillity as if it had been for ever subject to the Power of its new Mafters.

Peace fettled by much Blood shed.

'Tis true, it had never been able to have arrived to so durable a Repose, but by the Torrents of Blood which were made to run in feveral Provinces, and by an extraordinary Rigour which it was necessary to exercise against the Persons who might have been any way allied to the House of Taiminga, or to any other Pretenders to the Empire of China. But that Prince, tho very young then, acted his Part fo well on that Occasion, that seeming to leave all those Persons to the ordinary Course of Law in the Country, they could not accuse him of any manifest Injustice or Violence with regard

to

to them, at the time that he spared none of those

whom he might be jealous of.

At the same time, to take away all outward orders the Difference between the Tatars and the Chinese, Tatars and he order'd that the former should go cloth'd, Chinese to for the future, after the Chinese Fashion; and Fashions. that all the Chinese in general, after the Example of those of the northern Provinces, should cut their Hair the Tatar way, to signify the Affection they bore to his Government. And it was his Will, that all those who refus'd to obey that Ordinance, should be punish'd with Death without Remission, as Disturbers of the publick Repose. That Law was executed with so much Rigour, that it cost the Lives of several Thousands of southern Chinese, who chose rather to part with their Lives than their Hair.

He chang'd, moreover, all the Tribunals of courts of the Empire which Zungt Hy had left in the Justice Condition he found them, excepting that he alter'd. had join'd to them some Tatars; ordaining, that they should continue in Reality as before to be

they should continue in Reality as before, to be composed of an equal Number of Chinese and Tatars, but that none should arrive for the future to the Dignity of President, or Vice-President, of any Tribunal, without being na-

turaliz'd a Tatar.

After he had by these Acts of a necessary Severity, establish'd Repose in all the Provinces of the Empire, and thrown so great Terror into the Hearts of all the Chinese, that none durst only form the thought of caballing against his Government ever since, he caus'd of a sudden all further shedding of Blood to cease, and applied himself intirely to make his Dominions slourish; and to govern them with a Mildness and Equity little known in the other Empires of the East. To effect this, he en-

VOL. II. Cc join'd

C

til

fic

an

a3

fh

m

of

as Ni

tho

as

bit

Mi

for

fet

OVE

hac

the

out

fo

goo

gui

We

eng

Cha

of t

on c

Mui

of I

ly a

of t

the]

and

were

be a

time

T

All Sentences in risdiction; but that in Crimes which merited criminal Death, they should fend the Acts to Court, and Cafes refer'd to the not proceed to the Execution of the Criminal, upon any Pretence whatever, before they had Emperor.

received an Order under his own Hand; which

he observed to the Day of his Death. After which he permitted Entrance into his Free entrance into Empire to all the World, without Exception; China, and and granted an entire Liberty of Conscience, as Conscience well to his Subjects as to all the Foreigners who should be settled in his Dominions. He caus'd allow'd. feveral Cities of China to be rebuilt which had been destroy'd by the last Wars, and others to

be founded upon the Frontiers, where he established his Mungal Subjects. He enriched the Neighbourhood of Pekin with feveral fair Caftles, with magnificent Gardens and Parks, where he usually went to pass the pleasant Season of the

Year. He forgot nothing which he judg'd Learned Men enmight ferve to make the Sciences flourish in his courag'd. Dominions, and granted his Protection to

Those born learned Men on all Occasions. To augment of a Tatar the Number of Tatars in China, he order'd, Father or that the Children born of a Tatar Father and Mother Chinese Mother, or of a Chinese Father and Tadeem'd Tatars.

tar Mother, should be educated after the Tatar manner, and instructed by their Parents in the Tatar Language; and that those Children should be deem'd natural Tatars like the others, and as fuch should arrive at all the great Posts of the

Kingdom.

Policy to After he had happily appeared all the Troubles within his Empire, he applied himself with all the Zeal imaginable to fecure the Dominion of the Princes of his House upon so solid a Foundation, that nothing might shake it for the

secure his Posterity in the

778

Throne.

time to come. To that effect having confider'd, that he had nothing to fear from the Chinese, so long as he should preserve a good Understanding with those of his own Nation; and that none but the Tatars themselves could again drive the Tatars out of China, if ever they should come to unite themselves against his Family; he began to make fure of the Fidelity Secures the of the Mungals of the East, whom he deemed Mungals as his natural Subjects; and to increase their of the East. Number, he drew into their Country as many of those Tunguses who dwell along the River Amur as he could prevail on to quit their antient Habitations; and he mixt them fo well with the Mungals, his Subjects, that at present they pass for one and the same People. After which he fet about, by means of the Lamas, to bring Draws oover the Mungals of the West, who till then ver the had had but very little Amity with those of Mungals the East; and by Force of Presents, and some of the outward Marks of a particular Distinction, he West. fo effectually gain'd the Friendship of those good Religious, that they never left off Intriguing till they had united all the Murgals of the West in favour of the Emperor of China, and engaged their Chan, the Father of Tushidtu Chan, who at prefent reigns over the Mungals of the West, to put himself under the Protection of that Empire.

0

-

e

e

d

0

nt

d,

nd

a-

ar

he

ld

nd he

u-

ith

on

2

the

me

This great Point gain'd, he stir'd up the Excites the Mungals to war upon the Callmaks, by all forts war with of Infinuations and Suspicions spread dexterouf-the Callly among them: and under Pretence that those maks. of the Mungals of the West who dwelt towards the Frontiers of China, between the great Wall and the northern Part of the Desart of Goby, were at too great a Distance from their Chan to be able to serve him against the Callmaks; he

Cc 2

engaged

in the thirteenth and fourteenth Ages; which

780 Mungals

Build

Villages a-

long the

Supports

Lamas in brought upon their Backs the Bonzes, and all their Lives the other Ministers of the different Pagan Wormore regu- ship, which at that time subsisted in China, who the Bonzes. observing with all the Envy imaginable that the

Lamas, by their more regular Lives, and supported as they were by the Authority of the Court, made a great Progress in China, and went about to supplant them, never ceased caballing against the Government of the Tatars till they had driven them again out of China,

and

2

d

W

h

tl

fi

m

R

Λ

CE

W

B

E

"th

ne

hi

of

ou

tic

tin

fuc

his

to

Fo

the

fen

on

laft

whi

the

ness

Pov

Chi

pref

n

e

ls

le

1e

er

ın

els

e-

nd

ne

al

rts

a;

od

ler

en

ou

vas

of

ere

ich

all

or-

rho

the

up-

the

and

ca-

tars ina,

and

and all their Lamas with them, which happen'd about the Year 1368.

But fince the Mungals of the East, who are Emperor descended from a Part of those same Tatars afraid to who were in that manner driven out of China, encourage have re-enter'd into Possession of that Empire, the Worthe Dalai Lama has not fail'd on many Occa-Lamas, fions to infift strenuously on the re-establishment of his Worship thro'out China, as the Reader may perceive, tho imperfectly, by what Nieuboff in his Relation of China reports concerning the Embassadors of the Lamas, who were in his time at Pekin: But the deceased Bogdoi Chan, who had Occasion to learn, at the Expense of his Ancestors, what the Rage of *the Ministers of Religion is capable of, would never come into his Measures, and contented himself with permitting every one the Liberty of embracing the Worship of the Lamas, without obliging any one to do it, and without particularly favouring that Worship.

Nevertheless he did not fail from time to Keeps up a time to give the Dalai Lama fome Hopes of Corresponsucceeding at last in his Wishes with regard to dence his own Worship, and that only for a Handle with the to keep up a Correspondence always with him. ma. For the fame reason he very favourably received the Embassadors which the Dalai Lama often fent him about that Affair, and fent him also on his fide Embaffadors on the Occasion: the last which he dispatch'd to him was in 1721, which was the Year before his Death. these Measures taken with the greatest Exactness, have not a little contributed to carry the Power of the Tatar House which reigns in China, to the Pitch we see it arrived to at

present.

Having

k

a

E

a

W

th

to

L

fti

ch

pr

 \mathbf{H}

H

at

to

no

tar

fin

acc

and

fro

Pri

wh

Im

Jef

As

Keeps the Russians within bounds.

Having thus fecured all the Mungals, he took care on one fide, to hinder the too great Increase of the Power of Russia on the Frontiers of his Dominions, from turning to their Prejudice; which he happily executed by putting the Frontiers between both Empires upon a Footing firm and advantageous to his Estates, after having caus'd the Town of Albaffinskoy to be demolish'd. And on the other side, he remov'd the Callmaks from his Frontiers; and having entred in his Turn into their Country, he made himself Master of the Provinces of Chamil and Turfan, which serve at present for a Barrier to China on that side. In short, he was every way a great Prince, who feem'd to have taken the Emperor Augustus for a Pattern in all his Actions. He had also the good Fortune to exceed him in the Number of Years of his Reign, fince he did not die till 1722, after having reigned 62 lunar Years.

quer'd from the Callmaks.

The Pro-

Chamil

and Tur-

fan con-

Fefuits at Pekin greatly countenanced.

di.

We cannot dispute with the Fathers Jesuits, Missioners to China, their having a good Share in the glorious Reign of that Monarch; for they were in fo great Credit with him, that he did nothing without confulting them. 'Tis believed even that he would have embraced publickly the Roman Catholick Religion, if Reafons of State had not hinder'd him; nevertheless he favour'd that Religion so openly, that all the Children of the principal Mandarins of the Empire, who studied under the Jesuits at Pekin, were obliged by his Orders to go every Sunday and Holy-day to their Churches, and to affift therein at divine Service; and on great Holy-days, he never fail'd to fend thither the Musicians of his Court to affift during the Mass.

For the rest, That great Monarch had no-Character thing in his Exterior, nor in his Manners, which of Cangh partook of his Nation; and it was only by his Hy. Cheek-Bones, which were pretty flat and broad about the Eyes, that one could any way know he was of Tatar Extraction. He had an exact knowledge of the Powers of Europe and Asia, and their Interests. His Memory was a true Effort of Nature, and his Judgment of an admirable Clearness. As reserved as he was with his Subjects, he knew how to distinguish Strangers with the best Grace in the World.

The first time M. Ismailoss was treated at the Court of Pekin, that Monarch having learned that the late Emperor of Russia was accustomed to present sometimes in Person a Cup sull of Liquor to those whom he had a mind to distinguish, made that Minister, and three of the chief of his Retinue, approach the Throne, and presented them in like manner, with his own Hand, each a Cup of Gold, with a kind of

Hydromel.

1

t

f

t

0

t

r

He had seventeen Sons, three of which assisted Leaves feat the Audience of M. Ismailoff, who all appear'd venteen to be very handsom, fair, and well made, and had sons. none of those deform'd Features of other Tatars. Some Years before his Death, he confin'd his two eldest Sons in a close Prison, on account of some suppos'd rebellious Practices, and declar'd them at the fame time excluded from the Succession to the Empire, 'Tis the Third son Prince his third Son who has fucceeded him, and now reignwho had, while he lived, the Command of the mg. Imperial Armies. 'Tis commonly believed the Jesuits had a great Hand in that Disposition. As foon as the new Emperor, whose Name at Name not presentyet known. Cc 4

present we know not, had taken possession of the Empire, he caus'd his elder Brothers to be fet at liberty, augmented confiderably their Pensions, and shew'd several other Marks of a very good Nature. Time will inform us if that Change passes without Disturbance.

Late Em-Bogdoi Chan.

It must be observed here, that the late Emperor took peror of China, who bore the Name of Cang the Title of Hy, took the Title of Bogdoi Chan. The Mungals of the East who are establish'd in China, are commonly call'd Mansueurs by the Chinese, because they adopted that Name a little before their Invasion in China, to testify the Love they bore to Mansueu Chan, Father of Zungt Hy; and this Custom is very much practis'd among all the Tatars.



APPENDIX.



AREA TO AREA WAY

APPENDIX

SECT. III.

Of the Tatars of Nagai or Nogai who inhabit the Kingdom of ASTRACHAN.

[This Section ought to have come in p. 582. in place of that about the Cosaks, which should have been the fourth; but having been missaid, we thought fit to insert it here.]

HE Kingdom of Astrachan was formerly very powerful; it was conquer'd by the Tsar Ivan Wasilowitz soon after he had made himself Master of Casan.

The Tatars of Nogai who now inhabit the Kingdom of Astrachan, formerly extended their Dominion a great way: about the middle of the 16th Age, all the Country from the Caspian Sea as far as Siberia, and even some Parts of that Country, were under the Power of three Princes of the Nogai Tatars: The first called Shidak, reigned

reigned at Sharaitzik, doubtless the same as Sharisaraizik. The second named Cossum, possessed all the Land between the Kama, Yaik and Wolga: and the third, who ruled over part of the Province of Siberia, was called Sheich Mamai. 'Tis very probable Kutzium Chan, who Abulgazi Chan observes, p. 209. was driven out of the Country of Tura by the Russians in 1595. was the Descendant of that Prince; but I will not venture to conclude that Sheich Mamai is the same with Mamudak Chan, Grandsather of Kutzium Chan, tho both the Agreement of the Name and Time seem to savour it.]

City Aftra-

chan.

The City of Astrachan stands in 46 Deg. 20 Min. Latit. on an Island made by the River Wolga, 12 Leagues from its Mouth. The Russians call that Isle [on which Astrachan stands] Dolgoi Ostroff, i.e. the Long Isle, because 'tis in reality very long. It is one of the best Cities belonging to Russia; it every day grows more considerable by the great Trade driven there among the Persians, Mohammedan Tatars, the Callmaks, the Georgians, and the Russians.

Great Trade.

sharisarai- The Ruins of the Town of Sharifaraizik are still to be seen upon the eastern Bank of the River Wolga, a little above Zaritza; and 'tis suppos'd also that it was destroy'd by Tamerlan.

We know not exactly at present where the Coc Orda. Town of Cocorda, mention'd p. 194. stood, seeing Tamerlan in his Expedition against Toktamish Chan destroy'd most of the Towns situate on that side, as the great Ruins which are still seen on each side of the Wolga make appear. Nevertheless 'tis probable it must have stood some where to the East of that great River towards the Banks of the River Urislawa.

[The Name of this Town feems to be compounded of Coc or Cuc, and Orda, fignifying the Orda or Tribe of Coc; which possibly took its Name from that Tribe fettling thereabouts, tho it must be confess'd we find no such Tribe among those mention'd by the Author: but as there were many inferior Branches of the Moguls and Tatars which he omits, probably it might be one of them, and so in the next Page we meet with the Tribe of Ak-Orda, occasionally Ak-Orda, mention'd, which is not to be found in the Author's Catalogue of Tribes.

I will not fay Coc Orda is the same as the City Ocak, which D' Herbelot at the Word Sarai obferves depended upon that Town, and stood on

the West side of the River Wolga.]

The Tatars of Nagai possess at present the Tatars of eastern Part of the sandy Grounds belonging to Nagai.

Astracan, and inhabit towards the Coasts of the Caspian Sea, between the Yaik and the Wolga.

They have the Cosaks of Yaik for their Neighbours on the East side, the Callmaks depending on Ayuka Chan on the North side, the Circassians on the West, and the Caspian Sea bounds them towards the South.

The Tatars of Naga; are made much like Form. the Daghestan Tatars, excepting that as an additional Deformity they have the Face all wrinkled like that of an old Woman.

They wear Vests of thick grey Cloth, over Habit. which they put on a fort of wide Coat of black Sheep-skin, turning the woolly side outwards in Summer, and inwards in Winter: Their Bonnets are round, and made also of black Sheepskin, which they manage the same way they do their wide Coats. Their Boots are made of Horse Leather, and exceeding clouterly.

Appendix. Kipzak, or Kipjak Part I.

Women. Their Women are pretty handsome; they usually wear a Gown of white Linen, with a round pointed Bonnet of the same Cloth; and

in Winter they put a black Sheep-skin over

their Linen Gowns.

788

Livelihood. These Tatars live by Hunting, Fishing, and their Cattle, which consist in Camels, Horses, Oxen, Cows and Sheep. Their Horses are very small, but run and bear Fatigue very well; the rest of their Cattle are much like those of the Callmaks. Heretofore they had not the way

of cultivating their Lands; but of late they have begun by degrees to apply themselves to

Agriculture.

in Summer go and incamp in Places where they find the best Pasturage: But at the Approach of Winter they repair in great Numbers to Astracan to provide what they may have occasion

Tatars in. for in their little Families: And at such times vade one the Governor of Astrachan distributes Arms another in mong them, to enable them to defend them the Win- selves against the Kuban Tatars, those of the ter Frosts.

Casatshia Orda, and the Callmaks, who do nothing but make Inroads upon one another as soon as the Rivers are frozen; and at the beginning of Spring they are obliged to carry back those Arms to Astrachan, for otherwise they would not be trusted with them, being very turbulent.

Govern'd They have their own Mursas whom they oby Mursas bey, one or two of whom are commonly detained at Astrachan as Hostages for the Fidelity

of the rest.

Religion. They are but half-form'd Mohammedans; however they know much more of their Religion than the Baskirs and Circassians: There are alfo many of them already who have embraced the Greek Religion.

Tho they are now Subjects of Russia, yet Pay no Contribution are not charged with any Contribution; tion. but in return they are obliged to take Arms whenever Russia desires it; which they do with a great deal of Pleasure, because they are of the same Inclinations with all the rest of the Mobammedan Tatars; that is to say, very sharp after Booty.

The Tatars of Nagai may be able to arm a-Forcesi bout 20000 Men, and never go to war but on Horseback.



AND THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY O

A Note relating to Zingis Chan, at p. 73.

Our Author differs much in this Place from the Writers whom the Sieur Petisde la Croix has follow'd in his History of Zingis Chan; upon the Credit of which he will have it, that Zingis Chan had been obliged to seek Refuge at the Court of Aunak Chan, and live there a long time as a wandring Prince; that he had also at that Court an Amour with the Daughter of Aunak Chan, and powerful Rivals in Love and Glory. But as those Circumstances have a great Resemblance of the Intrigues in our Romances, and that our Author writing the History of his Ancestors, must have been better acquainted with it than foreign Historians, I make no Difficulty of believing him on this Occasion before the others.

[It does not appear that the Author was better acquainted with the History of his Ancestors than foreign Historians; on the contrary, he feems to be ignorant of feveral Matters relating thereto, and particularly of the Successors of Zingis Chan after Coplai Chan, which foreign Historians give an Account of. It is also to be consider'd, that most of his History is compiled out of foreign Historians, and chiefly from Fadl allab a Persian Author, whom M. la Croix also made use of in his History of Gengbiz Chan. It were to be wish'd, that Gentleman instead of his History had given us the Translation which he had made of part of Fadl allah, and some other Pieces relating to the Hiftory of Zingis Chan and the Moguls; for his View

View in that Work seems rather to have been to merit the Character of a modern Historian, than to write an exact History, which is deem'd incompatible with that smoothness of Style and elegance of Fancy required in a Writer, to which the two Essentials of History, Chronology and Geography, have in all Ages been made Sacrifices: However, the Publick is very much obliged to him for it as it is.]

A Note relating to Rubruquis, at p. 194.

IS to the Court of this Prince [Batu Chan] Rubruquis that the Monk Rubruquis pretends to confured. have been fent by St. Lewis King of France; and when one observes how well the Description which he gives of that Country from the River Borystbenes to the River Yaik, agrees with the certain Accounts which we have at prefent of it, one cannot doubt his having been there; but his Journey from the Yaik to the Court of Mangu Chan feems to me very fuspicious, because I have found many things in it which are directly contrary to what we now know for certain of that Country. For this reason I am inclined to believe that Part of the Relation of the Travels of William du Rubruquis which goes as far as the Yaik, came from the Pen of a Man who had been himself upon the Places, and that the rest has been added from hearfay. Nevertheless we must do him this Justice, that it is he of all the Writers of former times, who has given us the most exact Account of the Tatars and the Country they inhabit; for what he relates of their Form, Manners, Food, and even of their Clothing, agrees so well with what is still to be observed in the Callmaks, that one may easily see 'tis of their Ancestors that he

fpeaks.

Excused. [This last is a great Proof of the Sincerity of Rubruquis; and if he has committed some Mistakes, it ought to be imputed to his being obliged to take many things from hearfay, and want perhaps of keeping an exact Journal. If his Account of the Country differs from the State of it at prefent, Allowance must be made for the Alterations caused by Time. It is also to be consider'd on this Occasion, that the Editor's Suspicions may arise in a good measure from the Prejudice taken to the Description Rubruquis has given of Cara kuran, p. 514. and his Account of the Tatars flaying all they meet at the Funerals of their Chans, p. 396. The first Prejudice we have shewn is ill grounded, and the fecond will admit of some Qualification, since we find fuch Executions have been practis'd, tho they are not perhaps customary. Thus Couplet tells us *, that Shun Chi, the late Emperor of China's Father, had thirty Men put to death, to appeale the Manes of a favourite Mistress. The principal Objection that sticks with me is the great Extent he gives to the Countries of Pascatir and Changle, which I take to mean those of the Baskirs and Kanklis; But as we have only Scraps as yet of the Geography of those Countries, further Translations from the Oriental Authors may clear it up.]

* [Tab. Chron. Sinen. p. 100.]



INDEX.

INDEX

OF THE

Principal Matters added by the Translator.

ABascum Casira, a Corruption on of Abosghun Gezira, p. 130. Mistake of the French Editor about it. 738 Abu Ighāzi Chan, not thoroughly acquainted with the History of his Predecessors. 790 Agem, a Nickname given to the Persians. 706. The fame as Barbarian used by us. 707 Animal Plant, or Scythian Lamb, a Fiction. 668 Arabs, think they honour God by Cursing and Swearing. 702 Arab Calendar. 416 Arabistân, not to be understood of Arabia in our Author. 691 Ararat (Mount) No part of	Cara coram, or Cara kuran, not a fictitious Town of Tatary. 514 Cara-kitay, Authors at a Loss about its Situation. Caspian Sea, its Names. Cham-balik and Chân-balik, different Places. Chaan, a Distinction different from Chân, according to the Oriental Authors. Chân, added to the Name of Amîr Timûr by the French Editor without Authority. A Title given to Governors by the Chowârazm Shâhs, their Rise. 799 Chowârazm Shâhs, their Rise. 799 Chowârazm, Abstract of the
Caucasus, but standing by it felf. 690 Assassins in Persia, when rooted	Time. Confounded by Kemp- fer with Chorafan. 419
out. 186	Con-taisha, of the Posterity of
Asterabad, Situation of it; Mis-	Taulai Chan. 543
take of Dr. Hyde. 737	from the different Force of Let-
BAfrah, never Midway be- twist Baghdad and the	ters in different Languages. 767
twixt Baghdad and the	Credentials of the Chalifa's Am-
Persian Gulf. 693	bassador impressed upon his Head. 100
Allmaks and Mogulls the fame;	Cumani, Remains of them in
a Nickname; possess'd the Country where they are at	Chowarazm. 437
and Garage at a sime of Ti	To Allet Kingal Frent in the

mar beg. VOL. II.

INDEX.

Delly Kingdom founded, 1205.	fore Zingis Chan. 388
Pag. 755	Mohammed forbids Persecution;
Manager Manager Control of the Contr	misrepresented by the Roma-
ERAL down	nists. 697
Erak Agemy. 723 Erakayn, or the two Eraks;	200 HT - HT 200 HT 100 HT
	Moofe, a large Beaft formerly in Ireland.
Mistake of Golius. 688	
European Authors mistaken about	Mosk, a Corruption of the Per-
Mohammedan Affairs.696,704	sian Mesků. 701
CAzna, or Gaznîn, once Ca-	NEmets, Name given the Ger-
GAzna, or Gaznîn, once Capital of Chorasan, and of	mans by the Russians and
the Empire of the Gafnys.	Tatars. 206
747, 755	Nogai Tatars. 206
Gog and Magog, the Enquiry a-	
bout them idle, not unknown	OTrar, or Farab, once the Ca-
	pital of Turkestan. 464
to the Orientals; one fent by	provide the regions 404
the Chalifa to discover their	Atans or Patant original
Rampier. 519	P Atans, or Potans, original of them. 757
	Person I appropriate the formation of
IMam Rizas's Tomb at Mash-	Persian Language not introduced
L bad. 743	into India by the Moguls. 758
India, Mohammedan Kingdoms	Pyramids, 20000 near Casaria
and Religion established there	in Asia Minor. 559
before the Conquest of the	
Moguls. 754	Romania and Romelia, when
Irun lations of the Persian Gulf	Romania and Romelia, when and why so called. 683
about Basrab, not so great as	Rubruquis vindicated. 514, 792
supposed by the Editor. 693	Rûm, why Turky is so called.
Irân, or Persia, at large. 706	682
Extent of it. 707. Confound-	
	SElizure; Mistake of de Liste,
ed by Authors with Arân. 715	270
Truist on W.C.L in Form	Shah-ruchia Town. 569
K Ipjak, or Kafjak, its Extent.	Sham, not Shamachi, but Da-
575	
	mascus. 720
LAwbur, or Labor Kingdom	Shoncur, Bird.
founded, 1155. 755	Soft, or Suft, the Name or Title
special last at the fourteen.	of a Race of Chans of Cho-
Mabog. a Town in Syria,	warazm. 421. But not of
miscalled Magog by Plini-	the Kings of Persia. 730
us. 520	Soltan Chalif of Rum; Soltan
Maru, two Places of that Name.	of the Turks, why so called.
745	683. Title when first in use.
Ma wara'lnahr, what it in-	754
cludes. 452	
Meshed or Mashhad City, Mistake	Taoiks, or Taziks what. 64
of the French Editor	Tagiks, or Taziks what. 64 Tatar Chân, uncertain if
of the French Editor. 743	fuch a Person. 385
Moguls, not mentioned in the	Tatar Cycle. 408
Arab or Persian Histories be-	Tatar Tatar

I

T

Tatars and Moguls, no mention of them in the Geography of Sharif Ebn Edris. Pag. 784 Tatars, how the Name came to spread so suddenly. 387. Name known to the Persians, 564. and given to all the Inhabitants of the North by the Chinese long before Zingis Chân; extended further than that of the Turks. 565. How they came to be so poor now, who were once so rich.

558 Tatary, but a small part of the Country subject to the Tatars. Never wholly under 380. the Dominion of the Turks. 562. All the Inhabitants not sprung from the Turks. 566 Name, of a limited Signification, not mentioned by Abu'libid. ghási Chân. Turan, what it implies, not Si-A Mistake for beria. 453. 209 Tura. Turkestan Town, called also Tu-

Turkestan Country, its Name.

Original Country of

the Turks and Turkmans. 563. Name never extended fo far as that of Tatary. Turks, Name and Power never extended over all Tetary. 563. All the Inhabitants of Tatary not sprung from them. 566. No more heard of in Turkestan. Turks, Othman, came out of Perfia. Turkmans Oriental, unknown to our Geographers. 426. Poffeffed formerly all from the Archipelago to the Indies. 427 Ula, or Ulugh-yurt, Residence of the Successors of Zingis Chân.

Urgens, Capital of Chowarazm, antient and present State of it.

Uzbek, Country of, Name more properly to be given to part of Kipjak than to Great Bucharia.

razm, as well as Great Bucharia. 423. Only four Tribes out of Kipjak retain that Name.

420

FINIS



noise on the the backets

of their in the Geography of shoot the Elen ray, 73 &

Chinese long before Linein

Casis a extended framer than that of the Just 255. How topy of seven same value now, who werelonge to other

adi la risa, latal a land great Concur fabled to the Ta

ter how the Name 564, and given and alithe la-habitants of the North by the not forung from them! ess

the Tuels and Turkmans.

as that of Talary.

Marie never extended to far

No more heard of in Par-

well, Othman, came com of

the decret the planned belief Es Limit off the series we

The Reader is defired, before he begins, to correct the following ERRATA.

PAG. 384. 1. 27. for Al Idris, r. Ebn Edris. P. 425. for Tigre, r. Tigris. P. 426. 1. 24. for Oriental, r. Occidental. P. 431. 1. 7. for 457. 1. 357. P. 453. 1. 3. for 171. r. 141. P. 454. 1. 1. for 131. r. 151. P. 473. 1. 27. for Chambalik, r. Chan-balik. P. 482. last Line but one, for Mulha, r. Mulla. P. 503. 1. 21. for Nieuchien, r. Nieuchieu. P. 506. 1. 36. for they, r. the Mungals of the East. P. 512. 8cc. for Ulughiurt, r. Ulugh-yurt. P. 514, 574, and 581. for Moskee, r. Mosk. P. 515. l. 5. for Abulfara, r. Abu'lfarag. P. 517. l. 9. for Dsan, r. Dsam. P. 533. l. 21. for Zudadatzsez, r. Zudadatses. P. 565. l. 30. after as, insert while. P. 576. thro' that Chapter and elsewhere, for Kapshak, r. Kasgak, or Kipgak. P. 611. l. 23. dele that. l. 36. for sive, r. sour. P. 632. l. 17. for all, r. also. P. 667. l. 6. for in, r. at. P. 669. l. 15. after Russians close the Crotchets. P. 688. l. 32. after Province, insert of. P. 706. l. 24. for Iarn, r. Irân. P. 730. l. 18. for Industry, r. Art. P. 748. l. 13. for Diaro, r. Derya. P. 754. l. 27. for Sebestebin, r. Sabektekin. P. 755. l. 24. for 1135. r. 1175. l. 33. r. Ala'l din.

